



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

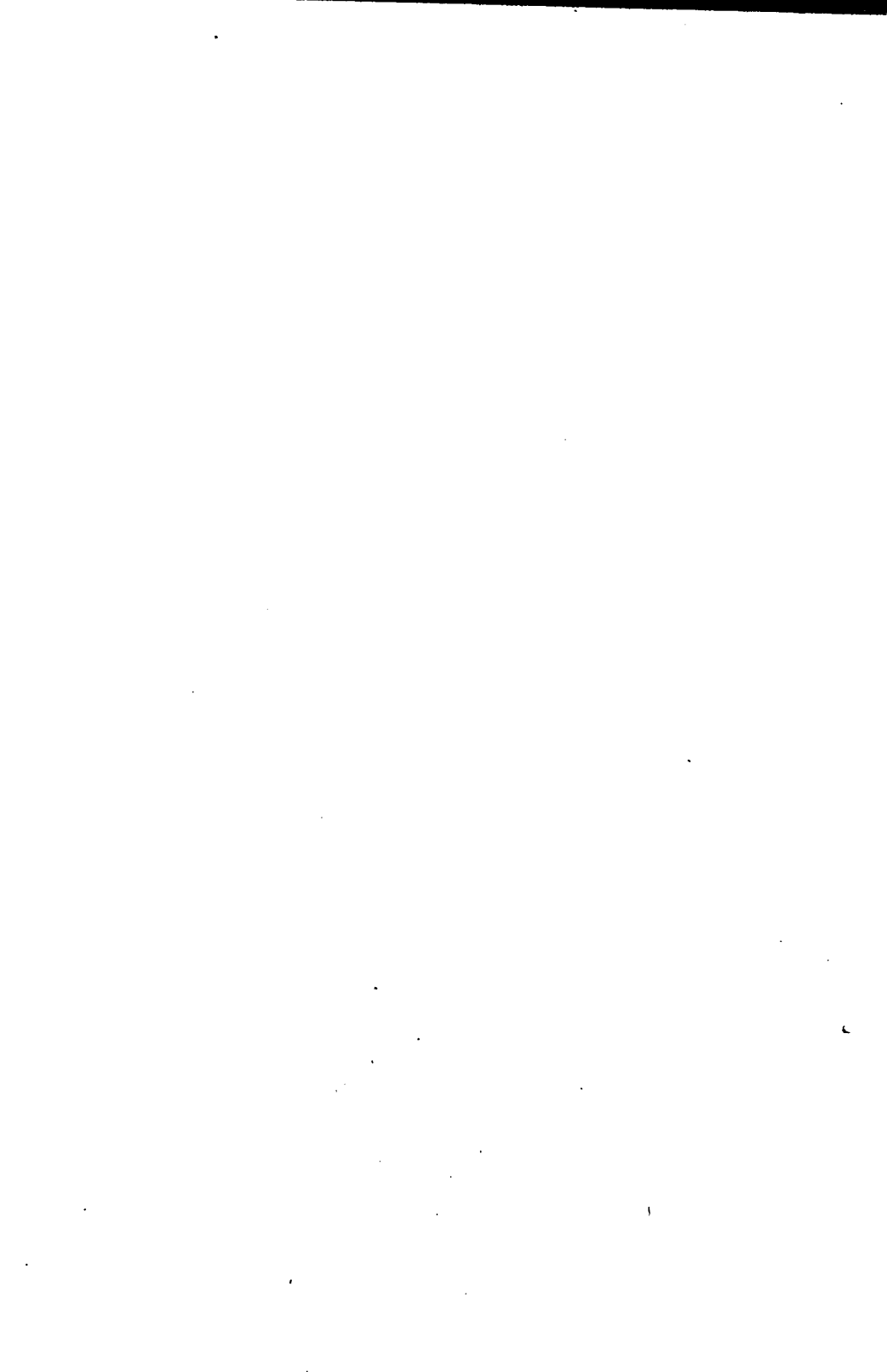
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

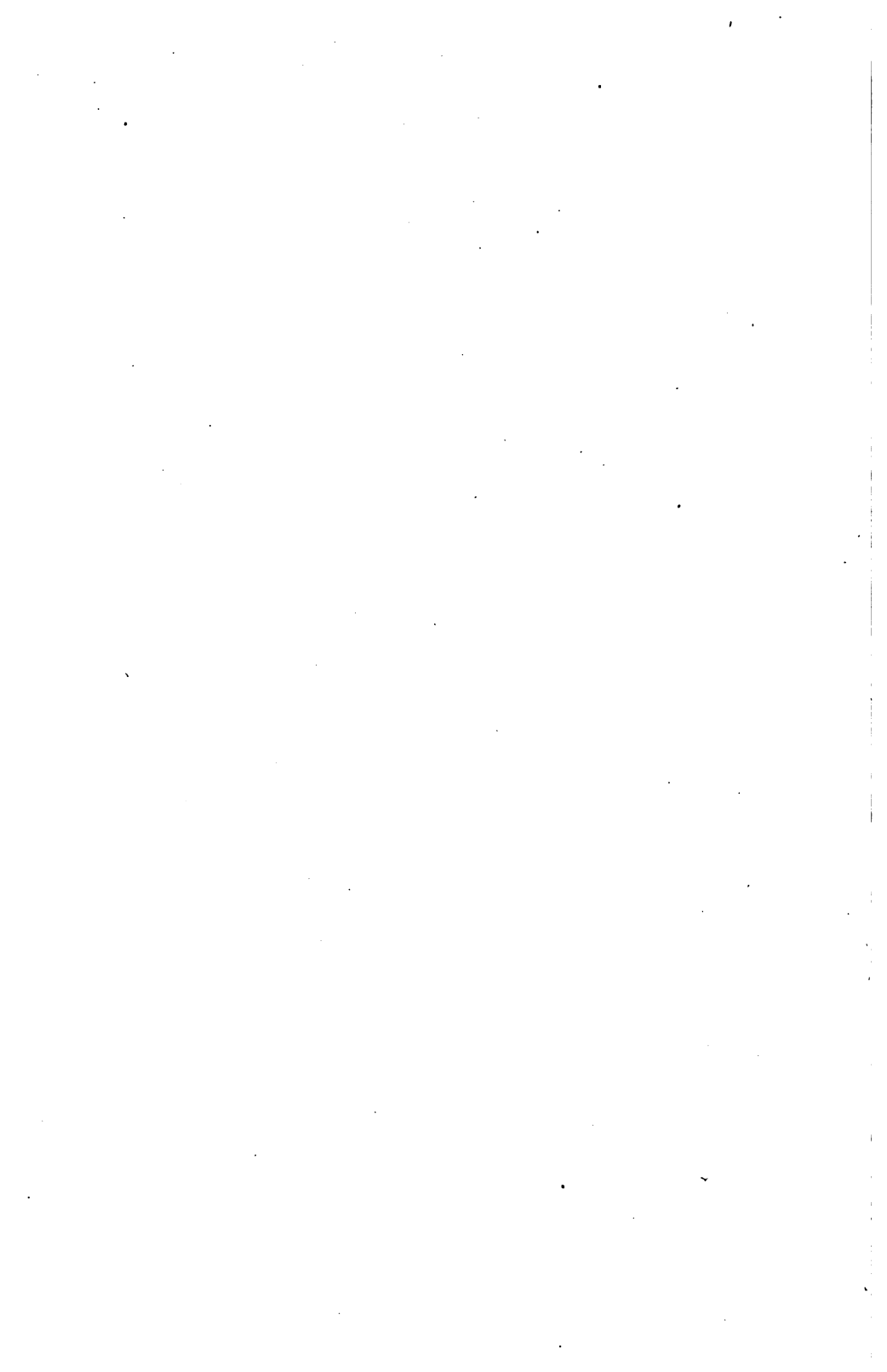
UC-NRLF



\$B 26 313







THE GLASGOW TEXT BOOKS OF CIVIL
ENGINEERING. EDITED BY G. MONCUR, B.Sc.,
M.I.C.E., *Professor of Civil Engineering at the Glasgow
and West of Scotland Technical College*

RAILWAY SIGNAL ENGINEERING
(MECHANICAL)



THE GLASGOW TEXT BOOKS.

Edited by G. MONCUR.

RAILWAY SIGNAL ENGINEERING (MECHANICAL)

BY

LEONARD P. LEWIS

OF THE CALEDONIAN RAILWAY

LECTURER ON RAILWAY SIGNALLING AT THE GLASGOW AND
WEST OF SCOTLAND TECHNICAL COLLEGE



LIBRARY OF
THE UNIVERSITY OF
GLASGOW

NEW YORK

D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY

23 MURRAY AND 27 WARREN STREETS

1912

TF615
L5

TO MMU
AIRPORT

EDITOR'S PREFACE

THE signalling of railways has developed rapidly, more especially during comparatively recent years, until it is now one of the most important branches of the Engineering Department. On its efficiency depends to a large extent the safety of the travelling public. That the Board of Trade recognises this fact is evidenced by the strict supervision which it exercises over the signalling of railways and the careful inspection made of new signalling installations.

The demand of the public for greater facilities both for travelling and for merchandise, involving a greater density of traffic, has added to the complexity of railway working, while the modern necessity for speed and for heavier and longer trains has still further increased the difficulties which beset the signal engineer in providing immunity from accident. The advance in signal engineering practice has, however, been commensurate with the advance of railways. The efficiency of the system adopted on British railways may be gauged by the few accidents which occur compared with the enormous number of train movements, and of these accidents the majority are due not so much to any deficiency in the system as to the personal equation, which unfortunately cannot be entirely eliminated.

The present volume is designed to provide at a reasonable cost a full and at the same time concise description of British practice in mechanical railway signalling. The text is copiously illustrated by diagrams, but reference letters have

been intentionally almost entirely avoided as adding to the difficulty of reading, and the author has preferably increased the descriptive matter.

It is hoped that the book will prove useful not only to signal engineers, but to all railway engineers and other railway men who are concerned in working traffic and who must of necessity have a good working knowledge of signalling.

G. M.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

THE object of this book is to provide a brief outline of the general principles of Mechanical Railway Signal Engineering (excluding power-worked signals, etc.), with examples of their practical application, in a form suitable for men who are engaged in railway work, but not necessarily in connection with the Signalling Engineer's Department.

In order to assist readers who may not be familiar with the terms and names of apparatus employed in railway signalling most of the technical terms have been explained and the apparatus illustrated, as they occur, but in a few cases the description of apparatus is given later in the book ; reference to the index will enable readers to find the description required.

No attempt has been made to describe every piece of apparatus employed on British Railways, nor yet to give the signalling practice of every railway company ; as far as possible, however, the *average* practice of British railways is given.

Railway signalling practice in Great Britain has not yet been rigidly standardised, and there has been no serious attempt on the part of the various railway companies to adopt the same standard materials and apparatus.

Every railway company carrying passengers is subject to the regulations of the Board of Trade, and all important railways have adopted the Block Telegraph Rules of the Railway Clearing House (with slight modifications), so to that extent the main principles of British railway signalling have been standardised. In minor details each company employs its own particular practice.

In arranging the order of the chapters it has been thought

preferable to describe the apparatus employed in signalling installations before giving examples of signalling schemes, so that when these are considered, the reader may better understand the working of the various articles which have to be indicated on the signalling plans.

L. P. L.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

	PAGE
General Ideas	1
Early Types of Signals	2
Early Methods of Forwarding Trains	5

CHAPTER II

BOARD OF TRADE RULES

Block Instruments Required	8
Signals	8
Points	9
Locking Frames	10
Interlocking	11
Clearances	11—12
Gradient Limit for Catch Points	11
Diamond Crossing Angle	12
Level Crossings	13
Single Line Working	13

CHAPTER III

CLASSES AND USES OF SIGNALS

Movable Signals	17
Fixed Signals	17
Semaphore Signals	17
Distant Signals	18
Home Signals	35
Calling-on Signals	42
Starting Signals	46
Advanced Starting Signals	46
Shunting Signals	47

CONTENTS

CHAPTER IV

CONSTRUCTIONAL DETAILS OF SIGNALS

	PAGE
Posts	54
Brackets	57
Bridges	59
Ladders	62
Landings	62
Arms	63
Spectacles	63
Counterbalance Levers	70
Slots	73
Lamps	79
Disc Signals	84
Wires and Pulleys	89

CHAPTER V

POINT CONNECTIONS

Stretcher Rods	95
Rods	97
Rollers	99
Joints	100
Cranks	102
Facing Points	104
Locks	104
Bars	109
Detectors	113
Connecting up Points	117
Movable Diamond Crossings	123
Compensators	123

CHAPTER VI

INTERLOCKING APPARATUS

Levers	137
Bearings	138
Catches	139
Locking	141
Wedge or Tappett (Stevens and Sons')	142
Cam Motion (McKenzie and Holland's)	150
Slotted Plate Motion (G. W. R.)	152
Rack and Pinion Motion (Sykes')	152
Catch Handle Locking	159

CONTENTS

xi

	PAGE
Saxby and Farmer's Rocker Motion	160
Saxby and Farmer's Double Plunger	162
Dutton's Slot Motion	163
Fitting of Locking	167

CHAPTER VII

SIGNAL BOX ARRANGEMENTS

Size of Box	169
Brick Box	170
Support for Locking Frame	172
Wood Box	173
Equipment of Box	175
Signal Wire Regulators	179

CHAPTER VIII

MISCELLANEOUS APPARATUS

Level Crossings	182
Connections for Gates	184
Gate Stops	185
Wickets	193
Gate Gearing	193
Locks for Ground Frames	197
Annett's Key	199
Rod Lock	201
Electric Lock	202
Staff Lock	207
Tablet Lock	207
Repeaters	209
Reversers	215
Treadles	220
Fouling Bars	222
Electric Detectors	224

CHAPTER IX

SIGNALLING SCHEMES

"Set" of Points	228
Wayside Stations	229
Wayside Station with Level Crossing Gates	238
Station with Two Signal Boxes	244
Running Junctions	246
Terminal Station	247
Single Line Stations	255

	PAGE
Numbering Schemes	258
Detection	266
Naming Signals and Points	267
B. O. T. Plans	268

CHAPTER X

INTERLOCKING TABLES, DIAGRAMS, ETC.

Types of Tables	270
Releasings	272
Conflicting Signal Locking	274
Points and Signal Locking	275
Point Locking	276
" Holding the Road "	276
Distant Signal Releasing	277
Wayside Station	277
Junctions	278
Single Line Stations	292
Locking Diagrams	294
Testing Locking	299
Lever Colours	301
Releasing Numbers	302
Direction Boards	304
Signal Diagrams	304
Signal Notices	306
Estimates	310

CHAPTER XI

METHODS OF WORKING TRAINS

Absolute Block on Double Lines	312
Accepting Trains	317
Switching Out	324
Lock-and-Block Working	325
Recording Instrument for Goods Lines	329
Single Line Working	331
Train Staff and Tickets	331
Electric Tablet or Electric Train Staff	333
Reversible Line Working	339

APPENDIX

Fog Signalling	341
Swing Bridge Controls	344
Track Circuits	348
Reminders for Signalmen	350

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	PAINTED BOARD FOR SIGNAL	2
2.	DISC AND CROSS-BAR SIGNAL	2
3.	L. & S. W. R. DISC SIGNAL	3
4.	HAND LEVER	3
5.	POINT CAPSTAN	4
6.	POINT INDICATOR	4
7.	SEMAPHORE SIGNAL	6
8.	UPWARD MOVING SEMAPHORE	18
9.	G. N. R. PATTERN SEMAPHORE	18
10.	WAYSIDE STATION SIGNALLED	19
11.	DISTANT ARM	19
12.	JUNCTIONS AND DISTANT SIGNALS	22
13.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	22
14.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	22
15.	TERMINAL STATION AND DISTANT SIGNALS	24
16.	LOOP LINE AND DISTANT SIGNALS	24
17.	DISTANT SIGNALS COMBINED WITH HOME OR STARTING SIGNALS	25
18.	Do. Do. Do. Do. Do.	25
19.	Do. Do. Do. Do. Do.	26
20.	METHOD OF INDICATING SLOTTED SIGNALS	27
21.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING DISTANT SLOTTING	28
22.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	28
23.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	29
24.	JUNCTION DISTANT SIGNALS	30
25.	JUNCTION DISTANT AND STOP SIGNALS	31
26.	JUNCTION STOP AND DISTANT SIGNALS	32
27.	L. & S. W. R. DISTANT SIGNAL	33
28.	INDIAN DISTANT	34
29.	LIGHTS FOR DO.	34
30.	STOP SIGNAL	35
31.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING INNER AND OUTER HOMES	36
32.	Do. Do. OUTER HOMES AT JUNCTIONS	37
33.	JUNCTION HOMES	38
34.	Do. Do.	39
35.	SIGNAL GANTRY	39
36.	ARRANGEMENT OF ARMS	40
37.	ANNETT'S SIGNAL	41
38.	REPEATER SIGNAL	42
39.	CALLING-ON SIGNALS	43

FIG.		PAGE
40.	CALLING-ON SIGNALS	43
41.	LEVEL CROSSING WITH CALLING-ON ARM	44
42.	CALLING-ON SIGNALS WITH HOME AND DISTANT	45
43.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	46
44.	SHUNTING SIGNAL	47
45.	GROUPS OF SIGNAL LIGHTS	48
46.	WRONG LINE SIGNAL	50
47.	RIGHT LINE <i>via</i> WRONG LINE SIGNAL	50
48.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING WRONG LINE SIGNAL	50
49.	BOTHWAYS SIGNAL	51
50.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING BOTHWAYS SIGNAL	51
51.	SIDING GROUND SIGNALS	52
52A.	Do. Do. Do.	52
52B.	SIDING SEMAPHORE SIGNAL	53
53.	BASE FOR WOOD POST	54
54.	BRACINGS FOR IRON POST	55
55.	BASE FOR IRON SIGNAL	56
56.	BRACKETS	58
57.	SIGNAL BRIDGE	60
58.	LEGS FOR SIGNAL BRIDGE	61
59.	SIGNAL AND LANDINGS	62
60.	SECTION OF STEEL ARM	63
61.	ARRANGEMENT OF ARM AND SPECTACLE	64
62.	Do. Do. Do.	64
63.	Do. Do. Do.	65
64.	ANGLES OF WORKING	66
65.	ARRANGEMENT OF ARM AND POST	68
66.	Do. Do. Do.	68
67.	Do. Do. Do.	68
68.	BACK-BLINDER	69
69.	ARM WITH CONNECTIONS COMPLETE	70
70A.	LEVER PLATE	72
70B.	Do.	73
71.	OLD PATTERN SLOT	73
72.	DROP-OFF SLOT	74
73.	Do.	75
74.	PUSH-OFF SLOT	77
75.	Do.	77
76.	Do.	78
77.	SLOTING BY WIRE AND PULLEYS	79
78.	LAMP CASE	81
79.	Do. INTERIOR	82
80.	DISC SIGNAL	85
81.	Do.	86
82.	Do.	86
83.	MINIATURE SEMAPHORE SIGNAL	87

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xv

FIG.		PAGE
84.	LOAD GAUGE	88
85.	PULLEY WHEELS	90
86.	Do.	90
87.	Do.	90
88.	TIMBERS FOR WHEELS AND CRANKS	91
89.	SMALL PULLEYS FOR WIRE	92
90.	FACING AND TRAILING POINTS	93
91.	4 FEET WAYS AND 6 FEET SPACE	94
92.	POINT BLADES	95
93.	STRETCHER RODS, ETC.	96
94.	POINT RODS	97
95.	Do. ROD COUPLINGS	98
96.	ROLLER FRAMES	99
97.	ROLLER POSTS	100
98.	JOINTS	101
99.	ADJUSTING SCREW	102
100.	CRANKS AND STANDS	103
101.	LOCKS AND STRETCHERS	105
102.	TIE PLATE	106
103.	INSIDE LOCK BAR	108
104.	OUTSIDE LOCK BAR	109
105.	LOCKBAR MOTION	110
106.	Do. RAIL CLIP WITH GUIDE	111
107.	OVER-SAIL	112
108.	OVER-SAIL BEARING	113
109.	CHECK-RAIL BAR	114
110.	WIRE DETECTOR	115
111.	ROD DETECTOR	115
112.	COUNTER-BALANCED WIRE DETECTOR	116
113.	POINT LAY-OUT	118
114.	Do.	118
115.	BOLT DETECTED	119
116.	ESCAPE CRANK FOR POINTS	121
117.	CAM MOTION Do.	121
118.	OUTSIDE LOCK BAR WITH DISENGAGER	122
119.	INSIDE LOCKBARS ON POINT BLADES	122
120.	MOVABLE CROSSING	124
121.	Do. Do.	124
122.	COMPENSATOR	125
123.	Do.	126
124.	Do.	127
125.	DIAGRAM SHOWING COMPENSATION	128
126.	Do. Do. Do.	130
127.	COMPENSATOR OFF CENTRE	133
128.	COVERING FOR RODS AND WIRES	134
129.	LEVERS FOR LOCKING FRAMES	137

FIG.		PAGE
130.	LEVER BEARINGS	138
131.	CATCH HANDLES	140
132.	STANDARDS FOR SUPPORTING LOCKING APPARATUS.	141
133.	HOOKE LOCKING	142
134.	EXAMPLE OF LOCKING	143
135.	Do. Do.	144
136.	Do. Do.	144
137.	Do. Do.	145
138.	STEVENS AND SONS' FRAME	146
139.	BRIDGE PIECES, ETC., FOR LOCKING	147
140.	ANTIFOULING DEVICES Do.	147
141.	N. E. R. FRAME	149
142.	Do. CHANNELS	150
143.	McKENZIE AND HOLLAND'S FRAME	151
144.	Do. Do. Do. LOCKING	152
145.	G. W. R. LOCKING FRAME	153
146.	SYKES' Do.	154
147.	SLIDING PLATE SPECIAL LOCKING.	155
148.	SWING TONGUE Do.	156
149.	ROTATION LOCKING	157
150.	SAXBY AND FARMER'S FRAME ROCKER PATTERN	159
151.	Do. Do. Do.	160
152.	Do. NEW PATTERN	161
153.	Do. DOUBLE PLUNGER	162
154.	DUTTON'S LOCKING FRAME	164
155.	Do. MOTIONS	165
156.	L. & N. W. R. LOCKING FRAME	166
157.	Do. MOTIONS	167
158.	SECTION OF SIGNAL BOX	171
159.	Do. Do.	174
160.	BRICK SIGNAL BOX, OUTSIDE VIEW	176
161.	WOOD BOX	177
162.	BLOCK SHELF STANDARD	178
163.	WIRE REGULATOR ON LEVER	179
164.	WALL REGULATOR AND FLOOR REGULATOR	180
165.	BACK BALANCE AND DRAUGHT WHEEL	181
166.	GATE LOCK FOR HAND WORKING	183
167.	GATE COLUMN AND BEARINGS	184
168.	GATE CONNECTIONS COMPLETE	186
169.	STOPS FOR GATES	187
170.	Do. Do.	189
171.	Do. Do.	190
172.	Do. Do.	191
173.	GATES ON SKEW COMPLETE CONNECTIONS	192
174.	GATE GEARING	194
175.	Do.	194

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xvii

FIG.		PAGE
176.	GATE GEARING	195
177.	GROUND FRAME WITH TABLET LOCK	198
178.	ANNETT'S KEY AND LOCK	199
179.	Do. ON LEVER	199
180.	LEVER WITH STAFF LOCK	200
181.	GROUND FRAME LOCK	201
182.	Do. Do.	202
183.	DISTANT SIGNAL LOCK	202
184.	ELECTRIC LOCK	203
185.	WIRING FOR ELECTRIC LOCK	204
186.	Do. Do. SYKES' PATTERN	206
187.	TYER'S TABLET LOCK	208
188.	STEVENS' TABLET LOCK	210
189.	ARM REPEATER	211
190.	LIGHT REPEATER	213
191.	MECHANICAL SIGNAL REVERSER	214
192.	SYKES' REVERSER ON POST	215
193.	DIAGRAM OF SYKES' REVERSER	216—217
194.	SEMI-ROTARY REVERSER	219
195.	TREADLES	221
196.	SIEMENS' TREADLE	222
197.	BALANCED BAR	223
198.	ELECTRIC DETECTION, DIAGRAM OF WIRING	225
199.	Do. WITH RELAYS	226
200.	ENGINEER'S PLAN	<i>Folding Plate</i>
201.	METHOD OF SHOWING "SET" OF POINTS ON PLAN	228
202.	Do. Do. Do. Do.	228
203.	Do. Do. SIGNALS ON PLAN	228
204.	Do. Do. DISC Do.	229
205.	Do. Do. LOCKBARS Do.	229
206.	PLAN TO BE SIGNALLED	<i>Folding Plate</i>
207.	LOAD GAUGE	234
208.	SIGNALLING FOR WAYSIDE STATION	<i>Folding Plate</i>
209.	METHOD OF "SETTING" SLIP POINTS	239
210.	SIGNALLING FOR JUNCTION	<i>Folding Plate</i>
211.	Do. STATION CONTROLLED BY TWO BOXES	244
212.	Do. INTERMEDIATE SIDING	245
213.	Do. TYPE OF THROUGH STATION	245
214.	Do. FOUR ROAD TRACK	246
215.	Do. Do. Do.	246
216.	Do. JUNCTION ON FOUR ROAD TRACK	<i>Folding Plate</i>
217.	Do. THROUGH STATION ON FAST LINE	246
218.	Do. STATION WITH REFUGE SIDINGS	<i>Folding Plate</i>
219.	Do. TERMINAL STATION	<i>Folding Plate</i>
220.	Do. SINGLE LINE SIDING WITH GROUND FRAME	255
221.	Do. SINGLE LINES	256, 292

FIG.		PAGE
222.	SIGNALLING FOR SINGLE LINES	256, 293
223.	Do. Do.	256
224.	Do. JUNCTION ON SINGLE LINE	257
225.	Do. SINGLE LINE WORKING DURING BRIDGE RENEWAL	258
226.	NUMBERING OF SLIPS	264
227.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING CONFLICTING SIGNALS	275
228.	Do. Do. CATCH POINTS	275
229.	Do. Do. FOULING BAR LOCKING	291
230.	LOCKING DIAGRAM.	295
231.	Do. Do.	296
232.	Do. Do.	298
233.	DIRECTION BOARD	305
234.	DIAGRAM ON SIGNALS	306
235.	SIGNAL OUT OF USE AND SIGNAL WITH NAMING THEREON	309
236.	NEEDLE BLOCK INSTRUMENT	315
237.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING BLOCK SECTIONS WITH NEEDLE INSTRUMENTS.	317
238.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING JUNCTION BLOCK WORKING	320
239.	TYER'S BLOCK INSTRUMENTS	322
240.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING BLOCK SECTION WITH TYER'S INSTRUMENTS	323
241.	SYKES' LOCK AND BLOCK INSTRUMENT	325
242.	RECORDING INSTRUMENT	330
243.	TRAIN STAFF	331
244.	SIGNALLING FOR SINGLE LINE WITH BLOCK INSTRUMENTS	332
245.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING TYER'S TABLET ON SINGLE LINE	332
246.	TYER'S TABLET INSTRUMENT	334
247.	ELECTRIC TRAIN STAFF	336
248.	SWING BRIDGE LOCKING	<i>Folding Plate</i>
249.	Do. ENGAGER FOR RODS.	346
250.	Do. CONNECTOR Do.	347

RAILWAY SIGNAL ENGINEERING (MECHANICAL)

CHAPTER I

GENERAL IDEAS

RAILWAYS are provided with signals for the purpose of controlling the running of the traffic, and before considering what form these signals take, it is necessary to understand the system adopted for running trains.

When considering a length of railway, the first requirement is to ascertain in which direction the trains run.

If there is only one pair of rails, as a rule trains will run over that piece of line in either direction, but precautions have to be taken that two trains shall not start from opposite ends of the line to collide with each other. Where there is more than one pair of rails it is usual to have one fixed direction in which the trains shall run over a particular pair. In railway terms, a line (that is a pair of rails) is for traffic going in the UP* or else in the DOWN direction. This, of course, only refers to running lines, not to sidings. In cases of emergency it is sometimes necessary for a train to run on the UP LINE in the DOWN direction; this is termed **WRONG LINE RUNNING**, but before this can be done important rules have to be rigidly carried out to ensure safety.

At stations, movements often have to be made in the **WRONG** direction over a short portion of line, but, as a general rule, a train moving say in the UP direction is turned on to a line used for traffic in that direction as soon as possible.

Where there are several lines running parallel to each other the UP LINES may be placed together and the DOWN LINES

* The Up line is, as a rule, the line for trains going towards London.

together, or they may be arranged alternately UP LINES and DOWN LINES.

The general notation in Great Britain is that trains run on

the left-hand side of the railway, and that a particular signal always refers to one line only, and never to more than one line. Before it is possible properly to understand present signalling practice it is necessary to glance at some of the early arrangements employed.

Whilst locomotives were employed in mineral working, and slow speeds were general, verbal instructions were ample to secure safety. With the increase of speed, and passenger traffic developing, it soon became evident that something more definite

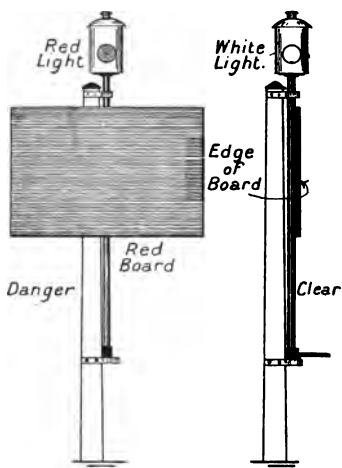


FIG. 1.—Red Board for Signal.

would have to be employed. As a first attempt, hand-signalmen were placed at important junctions to work the points and control the train running. The next advance was

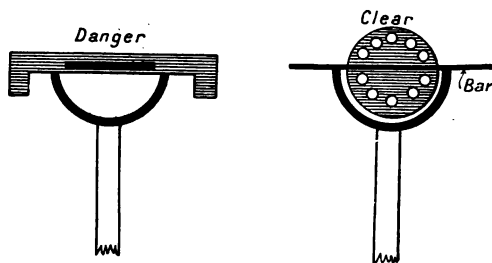


FIG. 2.—Disc and Crossbar Signal.

the use of a board, painted RED, fixed to a post. When a train was required to stop, the broad side of the board faced the driver, but when there was no necessity for stopping, the board was turned so that the edge of it faced the driver (Fig. 1).

This proved to be objectionable, as the indication for a clear line was the *absence* of the red board ; hence should the board have been destroyed by accident a *clear* signal was given.

This was followed by the adoption of a distinctive signal for CLEAR as well as for DANGER.

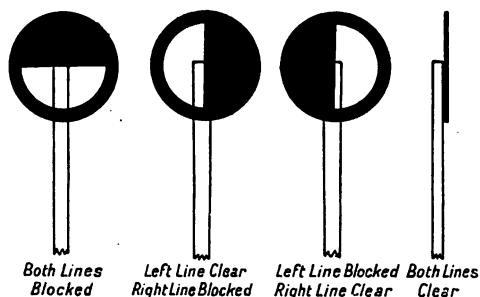


FIG. 3.—Signal for Both Lines.

The most common arrangement was the Disc and Crossbar signal (Fig. 2). When the crossbar faced the driver it indicated DANGER, and when the crossbar was turned edge-on the disc faced the driver indicating CLEAR. A pattern used by the London and South Western Railway is shown in Fig. 3.

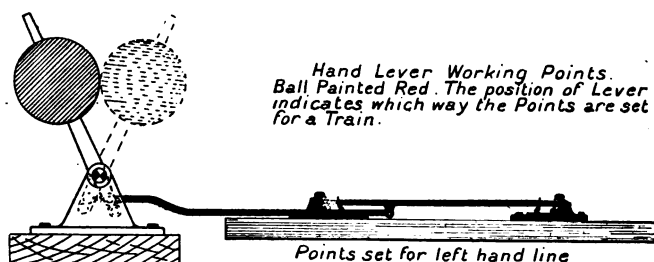


FIG. 4.—Point Lever with Painted Handle.

For night working a lamp was placed on the post with lights to show RED for DANGER and WHITE for CLEAR.

Besides telling a driver to stop or proceed, it was found necessary at a junction to inform him in which direction he was being sent.

At first the points were worked by hand levers fixed near

them (Fig. 4), and when the lever lay to the right hand, the points were set to run a train in that direction; similarly, when the lever lay to the left, the points were set for the left. To aid the driver in picking out the lever, it was painted red. Another arrangement was the Point Capstan (Fig. 5).

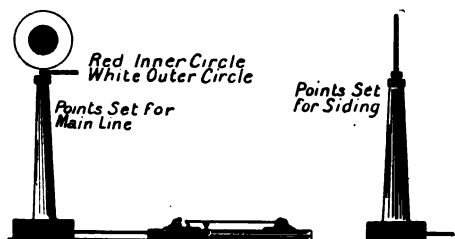


FIG. 5.—Point Capstan.

When the points were worked from levers some distance away, the idea of indicating the position of the points was retained by adopting an additional indicator lever working along with the points, termed a "Point Indicator." It was later fixed on a post, and there were coloured glasses and a

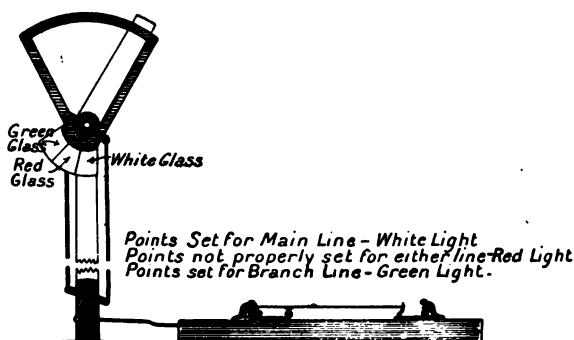


FIG. 6.—Point Indicator.

lamp fixed to show White when the points lay for the main line, Red when they were not properly set in either position, and Green when set for the branch line (Fig. 6).

The arrangement for forwarding one train after another on the same set of rails was to allow a certain interval of time to elapse before the second one was forwarded.

A very common arrangement at a station was to have two discs one above the other: as soon as a train passed, the top one, painted RED, was turned to face any following train; at the end of five minutes this board was turned on edge and the lower Green board was turned facing a following train, to indicate that such a train must proceed at caution; at the end of another five minutes both were turned to the clear position.

When the electric telegraph was invented it became possible to ascertain that a train had actually reached the station ahead before a second train was allowed to follow on the same set of rails. This arrangement was known as the SPACE INTERVAL SYSTEM, the old arrangement being termed the TIME INTERVAL SYSTEM.

One objection to the adoption of the space interval system was the great distance between some of the stations, as very often it took a train *more* than five minutes to reach the station ahead, and as until it did arrive no following train could be sent, it was obvious that the carrying capacity of the line would be decreased unless the distances between stations were shortened.

The line then had to be cut up into comparatively short sections (termed BLOCK SECTIONS) by means of small signal stations, which were generally termed BLOCK BOXES or BLOCK POSTS.

The usual equipment of a simple block box was a telegraph instrument for sending the requisite messages from one block box to the next, and out-door signals for each set of rails, one signal being fixed near the box, termed the HOME signal, which trains were not allowed to pass when at DANGER, and a signal fixed further out (nearer an approaching train) termed a DISTANT signal, which the driver could pass at danger, provided he so got his train under control as to be able to stop short of any obstruction either *before* or *at* the Home signal. Home signals were usually semaphore signals (Fig. 7), but it was quite common, even after the introduction of the semaphore signal, for the distant signal to be a disc signal.

The signal lights for junctions usually were Red for stop,

Green for the branch line when clear, and White for the main line when clear.

Even under these arrangements accidents were not uncommon, and on lines where the space interval was not in operation accidents were still more numerous. At junctions accidents sometimes occurred owing to two conflicting signals being in the clear position at the same time, thus allowing two trains to collide.

This turned the minds of inventors to the problem of making it *mechanically* impossible for the signalman to have con-

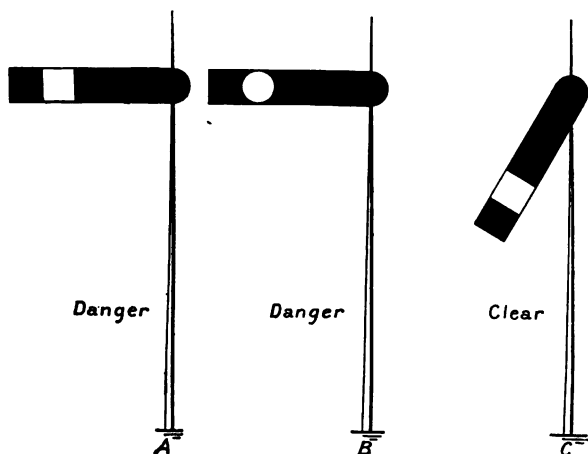


FIG. 7.—Semaphore Home Signals.

flicting signals pulled to the clear position at the same time. This was effected in two ways:—

(1) Interlocking the signal wires with the outdoor point connections.

(2) Interlocking the signal levers with each other, and by interlocking the signal levers with the point levers.

These inventions made it impossible for a signal to be pulled to the clear position unless the points were first in the correct position for the train to proceed.

In 1889 an Act of Parliament was passed compelling all railway companies to adopt safety appliances and SPACE

INTERVAL WORKING for passenger trains. The Board of Trade issued regulations stating certain requirements which would have to be complied with before new lines would be authorised for passenger traffic, and as these regulations form the basis of modern British signalling arrangements a copy of the present regulations, so far as railway signalling is affected thereby, is given in the next chapter.

CHAPTER II

REQUIREMENTS OF THE BOARD OF TRADE IN REGARD TO THE OPENING OF RAILWAYS

SECTION A.

DOCUMENTS to be sent to the Railway Department, Board of Trade, previously to the second notice of the intention to open a railway being given.

Clauses 1 to 10 refer to the viaducts, earthworks, &c., &c., with the exception of item 8, clause 10, which requires diagrams of the signalling arrangements at all junctions, stations, block posts, &c., to be submitted to the Board.

SECTION B.

Requirements.

1. The requisite apparatus for providing, by means of the block telegraph system, an adequate interval of space between following trains, and, in the case of junctions, between converging and crossing trains. In the case of single lines worked by one engine under steam (or two or more coupled together) carrying a staff no such apparatus will be required.

2. Home signals and distant signals for each direction to be fixed at stations and junctions, with extra signals for such dock or bay lines as are used either for the arrival, or for the departure of trains and starting signals for each direction at all passenger stations which are also block posts. On passenger lines all crossover roads and all connections for goods or mineral lines and sidings to be protected by home and distant signals, and, as a rule, at all important running junctions, a separate distant signal to be provided in connection with each home signal.

Signals may be dispensed with on single lines under the following conditions:—

(a) *At all stations and siding connections upon a line worked by one engine only (or two engines coupled together) carrying a staff, and when all points are locked by such staff.*

(b) *At any intermediate siding connection upon a line worked under the train staff and ticket system, or under the electric staff or tablet system, where the points are locked by the staff or tablet.*

(c) *At intermediate stations, which are not staff or tablet stations, upon a line worked under the Electric Staff or Tablet System: Sidings, if any, being locked as in (b).*

3. The signals at junctions to be on separate posts or on brackets; and the signals at stations, where there is more than one arm on one side of a post, to be made to apply,—the first or upper arm to the line on the left, the second arm to the line next in order from the left, and so on; but in cases where the main or more important line is not the one on the left, separate signal posts to be provided; or the arms to be on brackets. Distant signals to be distinguished by notches cut out of the ends of the arms, and to be controlled by home or starting signals for the same direction, when on the same post. A distant signal arm must not be placed above a home or starting signal arm on the same post for trains going in the same direction.

In the case of sidings, a low short arm and a small light, distinguishable from the arms or lights for the passenger lines, may be employed, but in such cases disc signals are, as a rule, preferable.

Every signal arm to be so weighted as to fly to, and remain at danger on the breaking at any point of the connection between the arm and the lever working it.

4. The signal lights to be green for all right, and red for danger; the back lights (visible only when the signals are at danger) to be white.

5. Facing-points to be placed as near as practicable to the levers by which they are worked or bolted. The limit of dis-

tance from levers working points to be 200 yards* in the case of facing-points, and 300 yards in the case of trailing-points on the main line, or safety-points of goods lines and sidings.

In order to ensure that the points are in their proper position before the signals are lowered, and to prevent the signalman from shifting them while a train is passing over them, all facing-points must be fitted with facing-point locks and locking bars, and with a means for detecting any failure in the connections between the signal box and points. The length of the locking bars to exceed the greatest wheel-base between any two pairs of wheels of the vehicles in use on the line, and the stock rails to be tied to gauge with iron or steel ties. All points, whether facing or trailing, to be worked or bolted by rods and not by wires, and to be fitted with two connecting rods.

6. The levers by which points and signals are worked to be interlocked, and, as a rule, brought close together, into the position most convenient for the person working them, in a signal box, or on a properly constructed stage. The signal box to be commodious, and to be supplied with a clock, and with a separate block instrument for signalling trains on each line of rails. The point-levers and signal-levers to be so placed in the box that the signalman when working them shall have the best possible view of the railway, and the box itself to be so situated as to enable the signalman to see the arms and lights of the signals, and the working of the points. The back lights of the signal lamps to be made as small as possible, having regard to efficiency, and when the front lights are visible to the signalman in his box no back lights to be provided. The fixed lights in the signal box to be screened off, so as not to be mistakable for the signals exhibited to control the running of trains. If, from any unavoidable cause, the arm and light of any signal cannot be seen by the signalman, they must, as a rule, be repeated in the box.

* In cases where facing-points are "power-worked," this distance has been extended provisionally to 300 yards. Also where the lock-bolt in addition to point switches is "detected," the distance has been extended provisionally to 250 yards with manual working.

7. The interlocking to be so arranged that the signalman shall be unable to lower a signal for the approach of a train until after he has set the points in the proper position for it to pass; that it shall not be possible for him to exhibit at the same moment any two signals that can lead to a collision between two trains; and that, after having lowered the signals to allow a train to pass, he shall not be able to move any points connected with, or leading to, the line on which the train is moving. Points also, if possible, to be so interlocked as to avoid the risk of a collision.

Home or starting signals, next in advance of trailing points, when lowered, to lock such points in either position, unless such locking will unduly interfere with the traffic.

A distant signal must not be capable of being lowered unless the home and starting signals in advance of it have been lowered.

8. Sidings to be so arranged that shunting operations upon them shall cause the least possible obstruction to the passenger lines. Safety points to be provided upon goods and mineral lines and sidings, at their junctions with passenger lines, with the points closed against the passenger lines and interlocked with the signals.

Clauses 9, 10, 11 and portion of 12 refer to the arrangements of lines at passenger stations, &c.

12. . . . Pillars for the support of roofs and *other fixed works* not to be less than 6 ft. from the edges of platforms. . . .

Clauses 13, 14 and 15 refer to the equipment of stations.

16. No station to be constructed, and no siding to join a passenger line, on a steeper gradient than 1 in 260, except where it is unavoidable. When the line is double, and the gradient at a station or siding-junction is necessarily steeper than 1 in 260, and when danger is to be apprehended from vehicles running back, a catch-siding with points weighted for the siding, or a throw-off switch, to be provided to intercept runaway vehicles, at a distance, outside the home signal for the ascending line, greater than the length of the longest train running upon the line.

Under similar circumstances, when the line is single, provision for averting danger from runaway vehicles to be made—

(1) At a station in one of the following manners:—

(a) A second line to be laid down, a second platform to be constructed, and a catch-siding or a throw-off switch to be provided on the ascending line inside the loop points.

(b) A loop line to be constructed lower down the incline than the station platform, with a similarly placed catch-siding or throw-off switch.

(2) At a siding junction, in one of the following manners, except where it is possible to work the traffic with the engine at the lower end of a goods or mineral train, in which case an undertaking to do so, given by the company, will be accepted as sufficient:—

(a) A similar loop to be constructed as in the case of a station.

(b) Means to be provided for placing the whole train on sidings clear of the main line before any shunting operations are commenced.

Clauses 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23 and 24 refer chiefly to bridges and viaducts, and details of the permanent way.

25. Diamond crossings, as a rule, not to be flatter than 1 in 8.

26. No standing work (other than a passenger platform) to be nearer to the side of the widest carriage in use on the line than 2 ft. 4 ins., at any point between the level of 3 ft. above the rails and the level of the upper parts of the highest carriage doors. This applies to all arches, abutments, piers, supports, girders, tunnels, bridges, roofs, walls, posts, tanks, signals, fences, and other works, and to all projections at the side of a railway constructed to any gauge.

27. The intervals between adjacent lines of rails, where there are two lines only, not to be less than 6 ft. Where additional running lines of rails are alongside the main lines, an interval of not less than 10 ft. to be provided, if possible, between such additional lines and the main lines. The interval between running lines and sidings to be not less than 8 ft.

28. At all level crossings of public roads the gates to be so constructed that they may be closed either across the railway or across the road at each side of the crossing, and a lodge, or in the case of a station, a gate-keeper's box, to be provided, unless the gates are worked from a signal box. The gates must not be capable of being opened at the same time for the road and the railway, and must be so hung as not to admit of being opened outwards across the road. Stops to be provided to keep the gates in position across the road or railway. Wooden gates are considered preferable to iron gates, and single gates on each side to double gates. Red discs or targets must be fixed on the gates, with lamps for night use; or semaphore signals in one or both directions interlocked with the gates may be required. At all level crossings of public roads or footpaths a footbridge or subway may be required.

At occupation or field crossings the gates must be hung so as to open outwards from the line.

29. Sidings connected with main lines near a public road level crossing to be so placed that shunting may be carried on with as little interference as possible with the level crossing; and, as a rule, the points of the sidings to be not less than 100 yards from the crossing.

30. At public road level crossings in or near populous places the lower portions of the gates to be either close barred or covered with wire netting.

Clauses 31, 32 and 33 refer to the equipment of the line with mile posts, refuges in tunnels, &c., also the provision of automatic brakes on passenger trains.

34. Any undertaking furnished by a railway company to be under the seal, and signed by the Chairman and Secretary of the company.

SECTION C.

Modes of Working Single Lines.

In the case of a line being single, an undertaking must be sent to the Board of Trade, through the Inspecting Officer, to the effect that one of the three following modes of working single lines will be adopted, namely:—

I. By train-staff and train-tickets in the mode described in the following rules, combined with the absolute block-telegraph system.

Rules for working the single line between A., B., C., &c. :—

1. Either a train-staff or a train-ticket is to be carried with each engine or train to and fro, and for this purpose (one, two or more) train-staffs and sets of train-tickets will be employed, *e.g.* :—

				Colour of Staff and Ticket.	Form of Staff and Ticket.
One between A. and B.	...	...		Red	Square.
One between B. and C.	...	...		Blue.	Round.
&c.	&c.	...	...	&c.	&c.

2. No engine or train is to be permitted to leave or pass either of the staff stations, A., B., C., unless the staff for the portion of the line over which it is to travel is then at the station; and no engine driver is on any account to leave or pass a staff-station without seeing such train-staff.

3. If no second engine or train is intended to follow, the staff is to be given to the engine driver.

4. If other engines or trains are intended to follow before the staff can be returned, a train-ticket, stating "staff following," is to be given to the engine driver of the first engine, and so on with any other except the last, the train-staff itself being sent with the last. After the staff has been sent away, no other engine or train is to leave the staff-station under any circumstances whatever until the return of the staff.

5. The train-tickets are to be kept in a box fastened by an inside spring, and the key to open the box must be the train-staff, so that a ticket cannot be obtained without the train-staff. The removal of the train-staff must lock the box.

6. The train-staffs, the train-tickets, and the ticket boxes are to be painted or printed in different colours, *e.g.*, red for the line between A. and B.; blue for that between B. and

C., &c., the inside springs and the keys being so arranged that the red staff cannot open the blue box, or the blue staff the red box, and so forth.

7. The ticket boxes are to be kept in the signal boxes or in the booking offices at the staff-stations.

8. The sole person authorised to receive, exhibit, or deliver the staff or ticket is either the station-master, the inspector, the signalman, or the person in charge for the time at a staff-station.

9. The usual special train-signal, "engine or train following," must be used by every engine or train carrying a ticket, for the information of the platelayers, gatekeepers and others.

10. When a ballast train has to do work on the line, the staff only and no tickets to be used by such train. This will close the line whilst the ballast train is at work. The ballast train must proceed to one of the two staff-stations in order to open the line before the ordinary traffic can be resumed.

11. In the event of an engine or a train breaking down between two staff-stations, the fireman or guard is to take the train-staff, if with the train, to the staff-station in the direction whence assistance may be expected, so that the staff may be at that station on the arrival of an engine. Should the engine or train that fails be in possession of a train-ticket instead of the staff, assistance can only come from the station at which the train-staff has been left. The fireman will accompany any assisting engine to the place where the engine or train broke down.

II. With only one engine in steam, or two or more engines coupled together, upon the single line, or any section thereof at one and the same time. Such engine or engines to carry the staff belonging to the line or section on which the train is travelling.

(N.B.—No tickets to be allowed under this mode of working.)

III. By the electric tablet or electric staff system, under

which only one of the tablets (or staffs) applying to any section can be in use at the same time.

(N.B.—*The approval of the Board of Trade to be obtained for the apparatus to be used, and for the rules of working, which should be of a somewhat similar character to those detailed under mode of working No. 1.*)

The foregoing requirements, which were issued by the Board of Trade (Railway Department) in 1905, are generally strictly enforced: if, however, any of the rules are found to be very inconvenient to carry out, the Board of Trade may—on the recommendation of the Inspecting Officer—grant provisional sanction for the rules complained of being modified, *provided that some equivalent precaution is adopted to ensure the safe working of passenger traffic.* The chief concern of the Board is the safety of the travelling public. For instance, although the regulations limit the catch-points on goods lines at 300 yards from the signal box, under exceptional circumstances provisional sanction was obtained by a railway company for working the safety-points of a goods line at a greater distance; but to ensure the safety of the passenger lines, the goods line catch-points were fitted with lock-bars and bolts and were detected by the *passenger line signals*. In all cases where exemption from a particular regulation is desired the complete scheme should be sent to the Board of Trade for approval before commencing the work.

CHAPTER III

CLASSES AND USES OF SIGNALS

THE signals now employed for controlling the movements of trains can be roughly divided into two main classes, viz. :—

1. Signals which are not fixed in any one place but are exhibited only when required to control some particular movement of a train or engine. Such signals take the form of flags and lamp lights of different colours, Red, White or Green. They are chiefly used for shunting purposes, and are carried by the shunter, or shown out of the signal box window by the signalman when required. These shunting signals are sometimes assisted by whistles or blasts from a shunting horn.

2. Signals which are erected at some particular place, are commonly called "FIXED" signals. These are so fitted as to be capable of exhibiting different indications, as required by the signalman, and usually take the form of SEMAPHORE signals for the main lines, and small SEMAPHORES or DISCS for sidings.

The Semaphore.

The semaphore signal is, by Board of Trade Rules, the universal signal for main line working. It consists of a post on which an arm is fitted, capable of being shown with the arm horizontal or inclined downwards.

On some of the Continental railways, and also some American lines, the arm moves upward (Fig. 8); the universal ruling being, the arm horizontal indicating DANGER—STOP, and the arm inclined CLEAR—PROCEED.

In Great Britain the arm is generally about 5 ft. long, and about 12 ins. broad. Usually it is fitted with a spindle at one end, on which it swings. On a few railways the spindle is

fitted at about the centre of the arm (Fig. 9), but the indications are the same as when the arm is fitted with the spindle at the end. The arm is fitted to project on the left-hand side of the post.

The face of the arm (that is, facing drivers) is painted

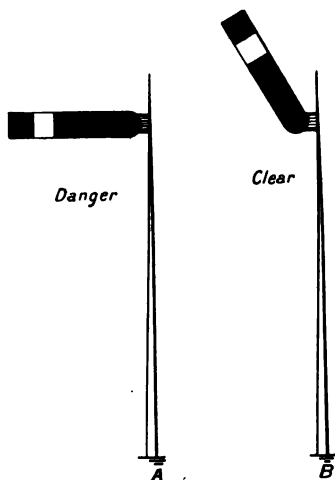


FIG. 8.—Continental and American Semaphore.

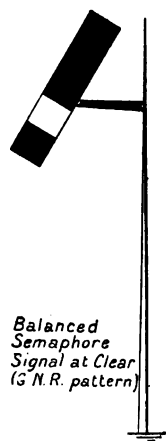


FIG. 9.

RED with a band of WHITE. The reverse side of the arm is painted WHITE with a black band across it.

Distant Signals.

Taking the main line signals as they are seen by a driver approaching an ordinary block box (see Fig. 10), the first signal is the Distant signal.

This signal is a CAUTION signal, warning the driver, when it is in the horizontal position, that he may be required to stop at the next signal applying to the line on which he is running.

To distinguish this signal from a signal which must be treated as a STOP signal, and not passed at danger without the special authority of the signalman, the end is shaped with a V notch (Fig. 11). All STOP signals have square ended arms. Several companies paint the white band on the face side

of the signal in the form of a V to correspond with the notch in the arm. This is a great assistance in enabling the signal to be recognised at a distance when there is a bad back-ground.

With high speed running it is imperative that a driver shall be informed in ample time if he is required to stop; accordingly the distant signal has to be placed some distance from the first Stop

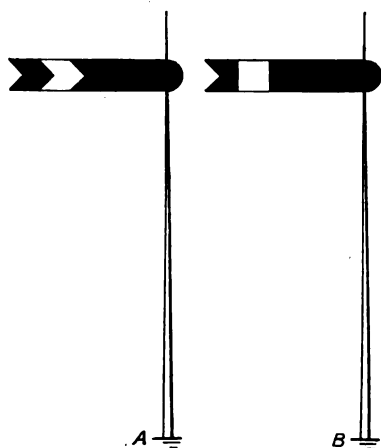


FIG. 11.—Distant Signals.

signal. The precise distance depends on many circumstances. The essential requirement is that the driver shall be warned in *sufficient* time to enable him to bring his train to a stand at the Stop signal without difficulty. The distance in which a driver can bring his train to a stand depends on the speed he is running at, the gradient of the line on which he is running, the state of the rails—whether greasy or dry—and the power of his brakes relatively to the weight of the train.

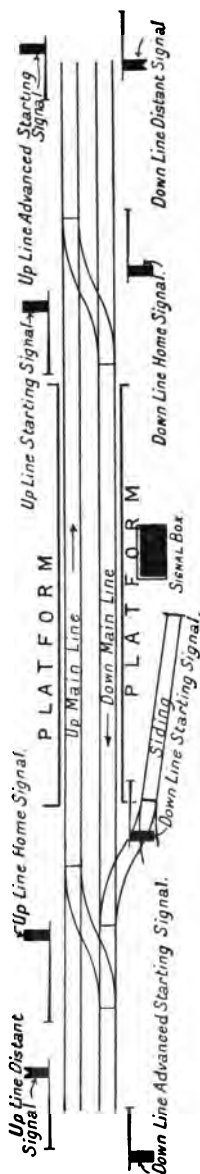


FIG. 10.—Main Line Signals at a typical Station which is also a Block Box.

Trains fitted with either the automatic air or automatic vacuum brake, with brake blocks on every wheel, running at about 55 miles per hour have been brought to a stand less than 400 yards from the place where the brakes were first applied.

It is usual to place the distant signal at least 800 yards out from the first STOP signal, where the line is approximately level, and ordinary express train running is the rule. With a falling gradient the distance should be greater, and may be 1,000 yards or more; with a stiff rising gradient the distance may safely be reduced to not less than 600 yards.

Besides placing the distant signal at the correct distance from the first STOP signal, it is essential that the drivers shall have a good view of it for some distance before reaching it. The great importance of this will be recognised when it is remembered that half a mile of distance *may* correspond to less than 30 seconds of time, and should steam from a passing train or anything else obscure the view of the signal for only a few seconds the driver runs the chance of getting nothing but a glimpse of the distant signal as he passes it.

The distant signal is not lowered to CLEAR unless all the STOP signals ahead (controlled by the same signal box as the distant signal referred to) are also at CLEAR. Hence when a driver sees the distant signal at CLEAR he takes it as an indication that he has a clear run through the station limits * into the section ahead. The distant signal being at CLEAR does not relieve the driver of the responsibility of keeping a sharp lookout for the STOP signals, and bringing his train to a stand at them if possible, should they be at DANGER, as it is quite possible for the line to have become blocked by accident after the distant signal has been passed at CLEAR, and the signalman to have put his STOP signals to DANGER before the driver reaches them.

Generally speaking, high speed running chiefly depends on the DISTANT signal, and the modern tendency seems to be that of regarding this signal as a SPEED INDICATOR, whereas

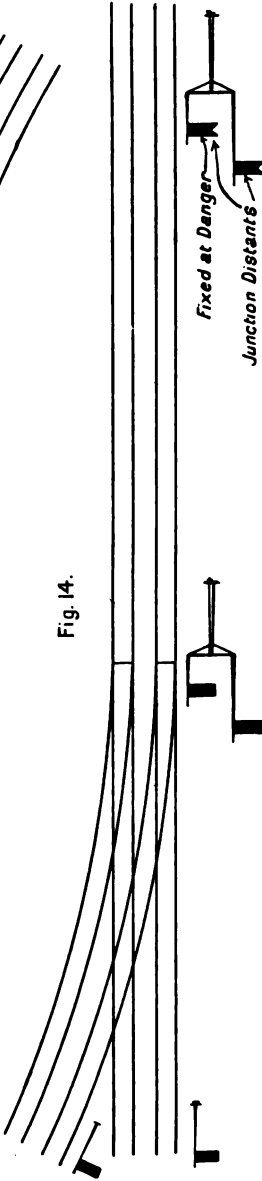
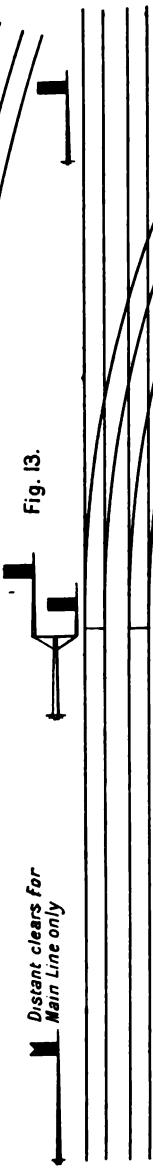
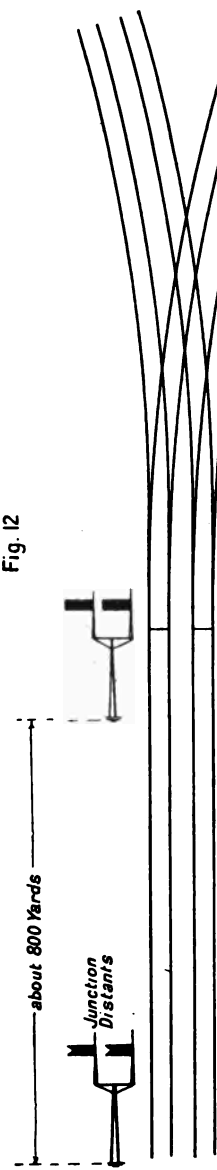
* See p. 314 for definition.

the earliest idea was to regard the distant signal as being a **REPEATER** of the first **STOP** signal. When the distant signal is regarded as a speed indicator, it is taken to read: Arm horizontal—Reduce speed, and be prepared to bring train to a stand at the **STOP** signal. Arm inclined—Continue at **SPEED** through the station limits into the block section ahead.

Should there, however, be any reason why it is not safe for a driver to proceed at speed, quite apart from the question of the line not being clear, the tendency of modern practice is to keep the distant signal in the horizontal position. Authorities are not yet quite agreed as to the advisability of adopting this idea. The common practice was, and to a great extent is, to regard the **FIXED** signals as indicating whether, from a purely block working point of view, the *signalman* can allow the train to proceed or whether he requires it to stop. If this ruling is adopted a distant signal would be lowered to the inclined position although the nature of the line over which the train is required to run might require very *slow* speed for safety.

On a strip of line without junctions of any sort, should there be a very bad curve which requires to be run over at slow speed, or any other arrangement of the line permanently requiring a reduced speed it is usual to fix warning boards stating the speed allowed. Should the portion requiring a reduction of speed occur immediately after a stop signal, it would be possible to keep the distant signal permanently at danger, as a reminder of the speed restriction. This, however, is seldom done, as it would not be practicable so to warn the drivers of every portion of the line requiring reduced speed, because the slow speed portion might occur in the middle of a section, a mile or more away from a signal.

Where there is a junction, giving more than one direction (Fig. 12) for a train to run, it is usual to provide a separate distant signal for each direction. At the junction itself there are as many stop signals as there are diverging lines. These signals then act as **ROUTE** Indicators, telling the driver not only that he can proceed, but also the direction in which the



points have been set for him to go. It is necessary for the driver to know in which direction he is going as soon as possible, as sometimes by error a train may be wrongly described to the signalman, and the points set to send the train to an incorrect destination. Should the driver not be made aware of the direction in which he is being sent until he sees the stop signals at the junction, and should he be running at high speed, it is more than likely that he would be unable to stop until he had passed the junction, when he would have to propel his train back (after obtaining proper authority) to enable the signalman to set the points for the correct direction. If, however, a separate distant signal is provided for each direction, the driver has time in which to bring his train to a stand at the junction signals, and inform the signalman of the direction he requires to take.

At many junctions, however, it is unsafe for a train to run at high speed over the points and crossings in one direction, but quite safe in the other direction. This chiefly occurs with a junction running off a straight line, it being unsafe owing to the curve, and lack of super-elevation, to run at high speed on to the branch line, but quite safe to run at high speed along the straight line. In a case of this sort the modern tendency is to erect only one distant signal (Fig. 13), this signal to be lowered only when the line is clear along the main line. Should the branch line be clear, and the points set that way, with all the corresponding stop signals also clear, the distant signal would *not* be lowered. The driver approaching the distant signal would not then know in which direction he was being sent, but he would know that he had to REDUCE speed, and be prepared to stop at the junction home signals should they be at danger. If the line were clear for him to proceed on to the branch line, he would see the STOP signal at the junction applying to the branch in the clear position, and instead of stopping dead he would run on over the junction at the required slow speed.

A slight variation on the above practice is to provide a distant signal for the branch line, but to *fasten* it in the horizontal position so that it cannot be lowered (Fig. 14).

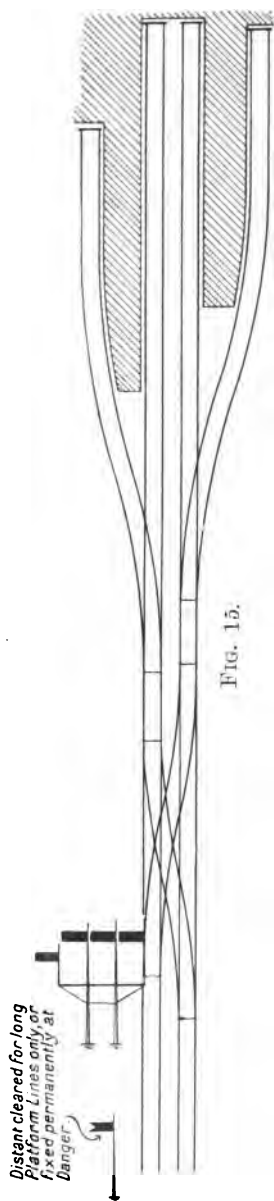


FIG. 15.

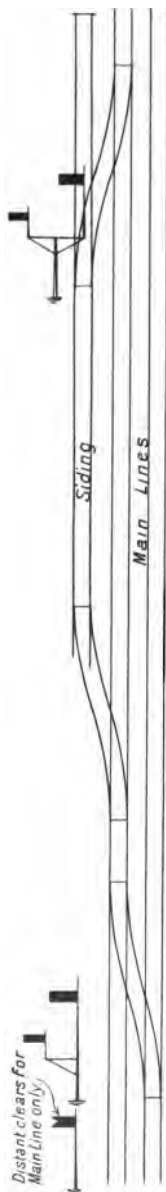


FIG. 16.

The only advantage of this is that it reminds the driver that he is approaching a junction.

In the case of a line approaching a terminal station the common practice is to provide only *one* distant signal for *all* the platform lines; that is, the distant signal is lowered if the line is clear to the buffer stops of the platform, the same signal applying to all the platforms. Should there, however, be platform lines of different lengths (Fig. 15) the distant signal should only be cleared for the long lines and *not* on any account be lowered for short ones. It is considered safer in all cases to **FIX** the distant signal in the horizontal position approaching terminal stations.

Where there is a facing connection into a loop line or siding

(Fig. 16), no distant signal should be given for the loop line or siding, a distant signal for the main line only being provided.

COMBINING DISTANT SIGNAL AND STOP SIGNAL ON ONE POST.

Where two signal boxes come close together, it very often happens that in attempting to carry the distant signal of the one box out to its correct distance, one of the Stop signals of the box in the rear is very near the position for the distant signal. In such cases the stop signal of the rear box is

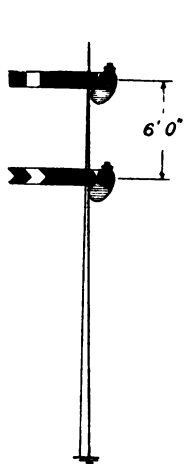


FIG. 17.—Distant Signal on same post as Stop Signal.

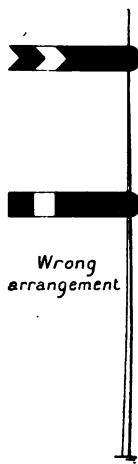


FIG. 18.

placed on the top of the post, and the distant signal placed lower down on the same post (Fig. 17). In order to allow proper clearance for the signal arms, and to ensure that the two lights at night shall be quite distinct, it is usual to place the distant signal 6 ft. below the stop signal. According to the Board of Trade Rules the distant signal must *not* be placed higher up the post than the stop signal as in Fig. 18. It is necessary to equip the post in such a manner that it shall be impossible for the distant signal to be lowered until the stop signal has first been lowered, and should the stop signal be put to danger before the distant signal is returned to its

normal position by the signaller working it, the mechanism on the post must put it to the horizontal position along with the stop signal (Fig. 19). Thus the top arm is said to "control" the lower or distant signal. The mechanical arrangement is termed a "Slot," and where one signal is controlled from more than one signal box, the signal is said to be "SLOTTED." To indicate a slotted signal on a plan or sketch, the usual convention is to show it with the arm in two positions, horizontal and inclined as in Fig. 20.

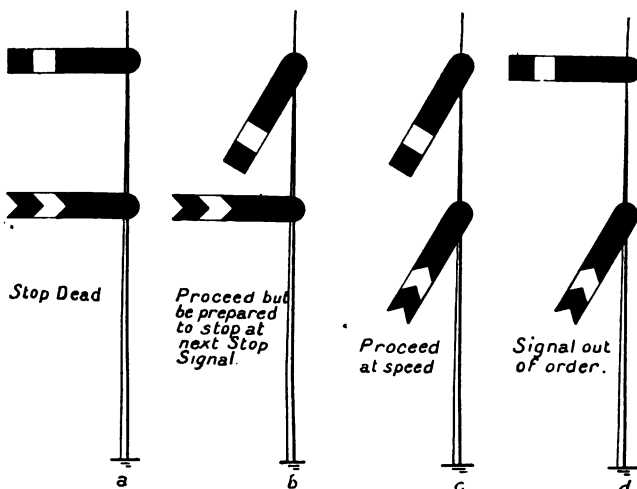


FIG. 19.

Sometimes where the distance between the signal boxes is very short, and when the distant signal has been combined on the same post as the stop signal of the box in the rear, it is still not sufficiently far away from its corresponding stop signal. If the rear box happens to have another stop signal in the rear of the first one mentioned, the distant signal may also be combined with that stop signal on the same post. In this case there will be two distant signals, the furthest out being termed the OUTER distant, and the other the INNER distant signal. (The naming of these signals differs on some railways, the outer signal being sometimes termed the dis-

tant signal, and the inner one termed an AUXILIARY or REPEATER distant signal.)

It might appear to be sufficient if the distant signal were carried back to the rear stop signal, without fitting a distant below the first stop signal as described, but there are one or two reasons why both signals are fitted. When a driver passes a distant signal it is usual for him to expect the next stop signal to belong to the same box as the distant signal; if, however, there is a repeater distant signal below the next stop signal it is evident that this stop signal does not belong

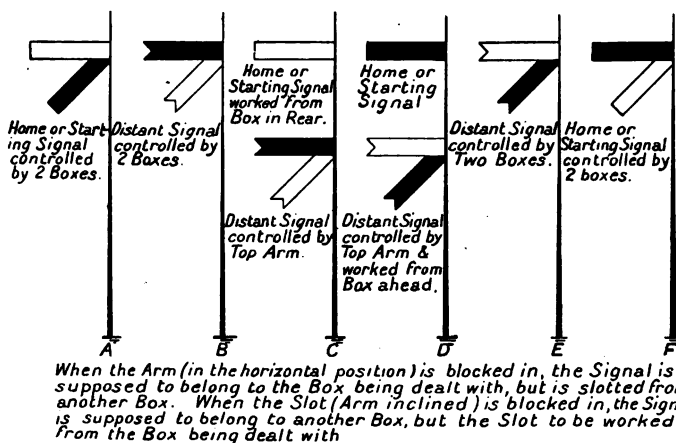
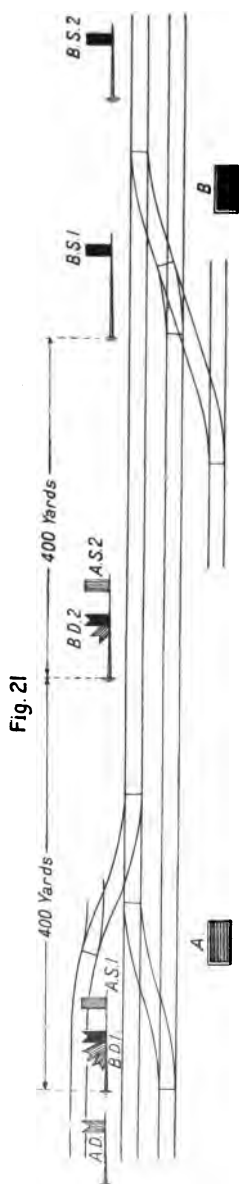


FIG. 20.

to the same box as the distant signal. This arrangement consequently tends to avoid any ambiguity in the mind of the driver as to which signal box works the signals.

Placing a distant signal below the first stop signal is an advantage from a running point of view, as it is quite possible for the distant signal on the rear post to have been at CAUTION when the driver passed it, but that the signalman ahead might have cleared the line just as the driver was passing, so that when the second distant signal is seen it would be at CLEAR, allowing the driver to proceed at speed. The reverse also holds good, the OUTER DISTANT signal might have been at CLEAR when the driver passed it, but owing to



some accident the signalman ahead might wish to stop the train, and have put all his signals to danger; the driver on approaching the INNER distant signal would see it at CAUTION, and receive earlier warning that he is required to bring his train to a stand at the stop signal.

Where there are two distant signals as in Fig. 21, both distant signals, BD_1 and BD_2 , are controlled (or slotted) by stop signal AS_2 , the outer distant signal BD_1 , being slotted by stop signal AS_1 and stop signal AS_2 . This is a case of double slotting, and is shown on a plan as in Fig. 22.

The necessity for this double slotting will be obvious when it is observed that without this provision it is possible for B (Fig. 21) to pull his distant signal levers before A has cleared any of his signals; assuming that B has done this, and that A

wishes to lower his starting signal AS_1 to send the train to stand at AS_2 , the distant signal BD_1 would move to the clear position when AS_1 was lowered, and the driver would be justified in expecting that with the distant lowered he was required to run through the section, whereas he is actually required to

stop at the next signal AS_2 . With the double (or back) slotting, unless both AS_1 and AS_2 are lowered, BD_1 cannot be lowered.

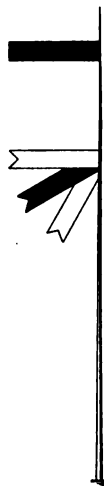


FIG. 22.—
Symbol for
Double Slot.

In some cases, however, it is not sufficient even when the distant signal has been combined with two of the stop signals belonging to the rear box; but it is very unusual to carry the distant signal back to three stop signals of the rear box. The most common arrangement is simply to fit the distant signal on the *nearest* stop signal post (Fig. 23), and to make a rule to the effect that the signalman of the rear box shall not pull his distant signal to clear until the signalman of the box ahead has first pulled his distant signal slot lever to clear. To enable the rear signalman "A" to ascertain when the signalman ahead, "B," has pulled his slot lever (to clear), it is necessary to fit some repeating device in the rear box "A" to work in conjunction with "B's" slot lever. In addition to this it is the general practice to lock up mechanically the distant signal of the box in the rear, so that it is impossible for that signalman to pull it to clear until the signalman ahead has pulled his distant signal slot lever to clear, and released the lock on the distant signal of the rear box. This makes it mechanically impossible for the rear signalman to disobey the rule.

In arranging distant signals for a junction, they are, as a rule, placed on brackets, but the precise arrangement of the bracket is of no importance (Fig. 24), the relative positions of the arms being the essential item. Signals for the more im-



portant lines are placed higher than signals for less important lines. Where lines are both of equal importance their corresponding distant signals are placed on the same level. Where two or more junction distant signals have to be combined with a stop signal in the rear, the stop signal must be placed over the distant signal for the *most important* line. Where the junction distant signals are of equal value, it is not possible to give a ruling as to which distant signal the stop signal should be placed above. If there is a distant signal on the main post, it would, as a rule, be placed above that signal;

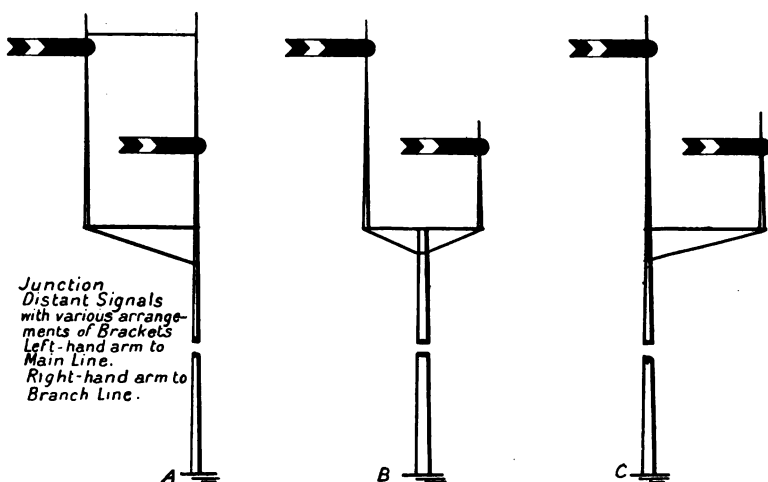


FIG. 24.

but in a case where it would improve the view of the signal were it placed to the extreme right or left, that would be done (Fig. 25).

In combining a distant signal with a set of junction stop signals, it would have to be placed below the signal referring to its own line. In arranging a group of junction stop signals with combined distant signals, care should be taken that the stop signals are placed *higher* than the distant signals; especially does this apply to adjacent posts on the brackets (Fig. 26). With a little care it is possible to arrange groups of signals with very little ambiguity in their reading. Re-

membering that signals at night only show as small dots of light, and as in this country the code of signal lights does not give any distinction between stop and distant signals,

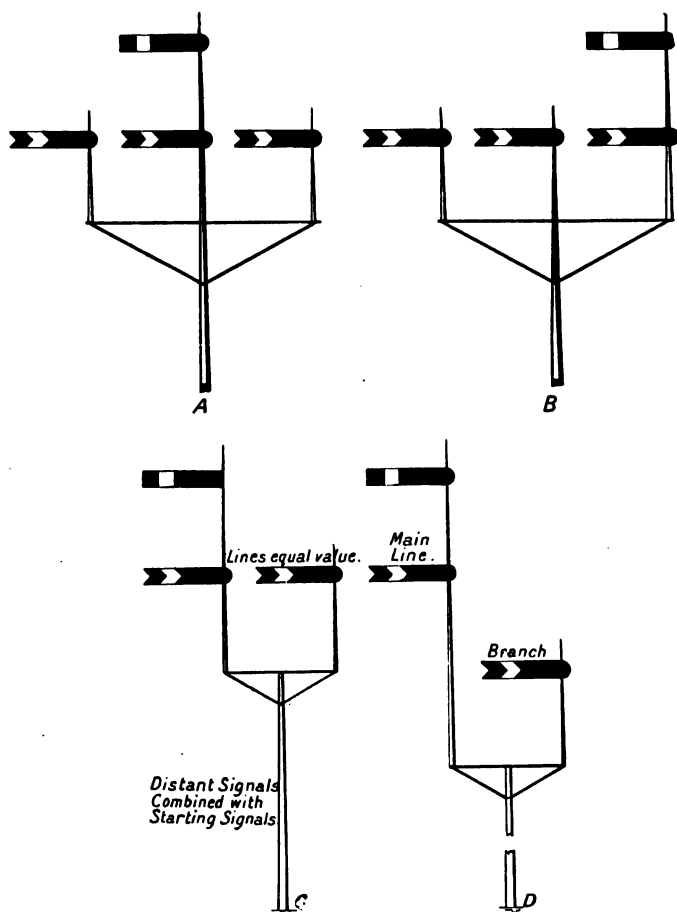


FIG. 25.—Stop Signals combined with Junction Distant Signals.

it is desirable so to arrange groups of signals that there shall be no doubt as to which are stop and which are distant signals.

Where there is only one distant signal *not* combined with a stop signal there is, of course, simply one dot of light, RED when CAUTION is indicated, and GREEN when CLEAR.

There is nothing in general use to distinguish this red dot from the red light of a stop signal. Several attempts have

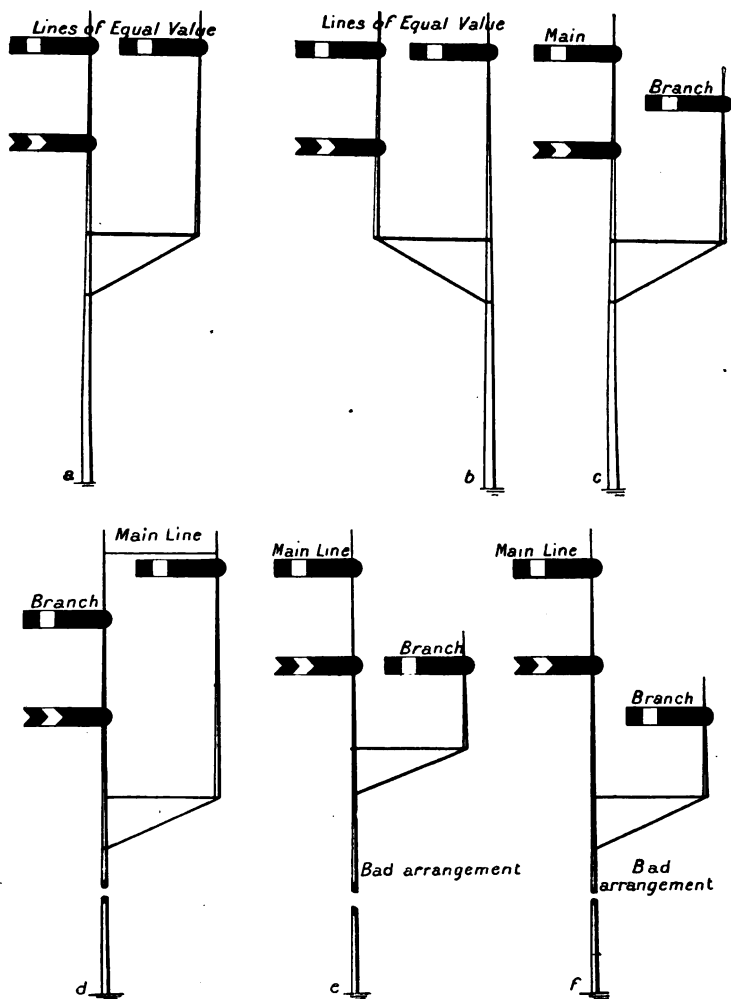


FIG. 26.—Distant Signals combined with Junction Stop Signals.

been made to give some distinction, one device being to design a lamp which gives a V-shaped white light by the side of the red or green light (Fig. 27). This is employed on the London

and South Western Railway. In America, and on some of the London underground lines, a yellow light is used for the normal or caution position of the signal equivalent to the distant signal. The first mentioned arrangement would solve the difficulty if the reflectors and glasses could be maintained in a good clean condition in service; if not, the white V cannot be distinguished at a sufficient distance to make it effective enough for all railway companies to adopt it. Whilst a yellow light is very efficient on underground lines it is not regarded in this country as being sufficiently distinct from a so-called *white* light as seen in the open country. Especially is this the case where a smoky oil lamp is used, and in certain states of the atmosphere such as fog.

If yellow is taken to indicate caution, and the red glass of a stop signal is broken, a white light instead of a red light would be shown. This white might be mistaken for yellow, and consequently the driver might take his train past the signal instead of stopping. The ruling at present is that a white light must be regarded as a *danger* signal, as it generally indicates a broken signal glass, and there is nothing to distinguish a broken red from a broken green glass.

Another idea (largely adopted in India) is to place a green light 6 ft. above the distant signal light, where there is a distant signal not combined with a stop signal (Fig. 28). The ruling then given to drivers is, "never pass a red light unless there is a green light showing on the same post," the indications given by this arrangement at night being as in Fig. 29.

The only objection to this arrangement is the additional cost of the longer post required, the cost of an additional lamp, and the cost of keeping it burning, &c.

As practically no inconvenience is caused to drivers in this country by the present arrangement, each driver having to

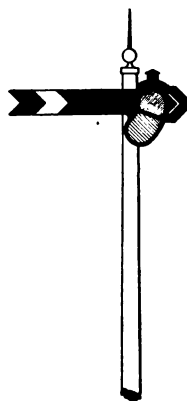


FIG. 27. — Lamp with white V notch for Distant Signals.

know his length of line thoroughly, it is not likely that any serious attempt will be made to provide on all railways a distinctive distant signal for night working.

The distant signal has been dispensed with on certain branch lines of the Great Western Railway (with the approval of the Board of Trade), and an apparatus has been installed in the driver's cab for indicating the necessary warning. A ramp is fixed in the 4-ft. space at the position where the

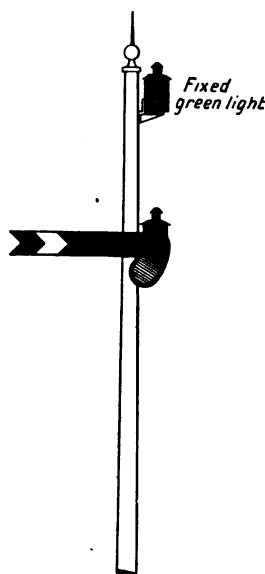


FIG. 28.

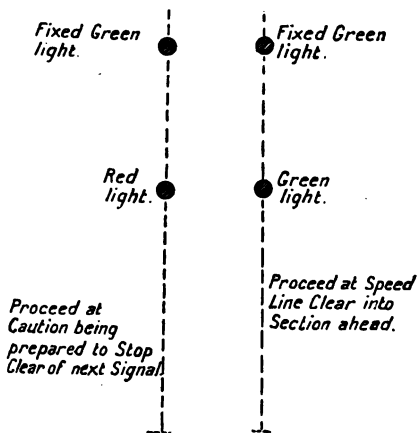


FIG. 29.

Indian System for distinguishing Distant Signal at night.

warning is required to be given; if the driver is required to slow down preparatory to stopping at a signal at danger, an indicator in his cab shows DANGER, and a whistle blows to attract his attention as his engine runs over the ramp. If the section ahead is clear, the driver is informed that he can run on at speed, by the closing of an electric circuit as his engine runs over the ramp; the current suppresses the DANGER indication and shows CLEAR instead, at the same time ringing a bell to attract his attention.

The electric circuit is controlled by the lever in the interlocking frame which would work the distant signal if such were provided. The connection between the engine and the ramp is by means of a shoe, this shoe being attached to the engine. In running over the ramp the shoe lifts slightly breaking a closed local circuit on the engine to give the danger indication.

HOME SIGNALS.

After passing the distant signal (see Fig. 10), the driver next meets the first stop signal. This signal is generally termed the Home signal, it being near to the signal box or station. Being a Stop signal it has a square end to the arm, distinguishing it in daylight from the CAUTION or distant signal (Fig. 30).

The function of the home signal is to protect a train when standing at a platform, or at a block box, from a following train, and to protect level crossing gates, point connections (cross-over roads or siding connections), or junctions.

A home signal (in fact any stop signal) in order to protect a point connection, junction, or set of level crossing gates, must be erected well clear of the exact position it is required to protect. Where a siding joins a main line the home signal must be placed in the rear of the siding connection, so that a train standing at the home signal will not interfere with the use of the siding. A space of 6 ft. between the rails of a main line and a siding is considered to be a working clearance; anything less than 6 ft. is regarded as *fouling* the main line; the point where the siding connection approaches the main line to within a distance of less than 6 ft. is said to be the *fouling point*, and all signals must be placed in the rear of the fouling point which they protect.

At a facing junction the home signals also act as DIRECTING

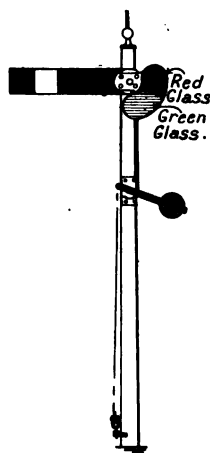


FIG. 30.—Stop Signal.

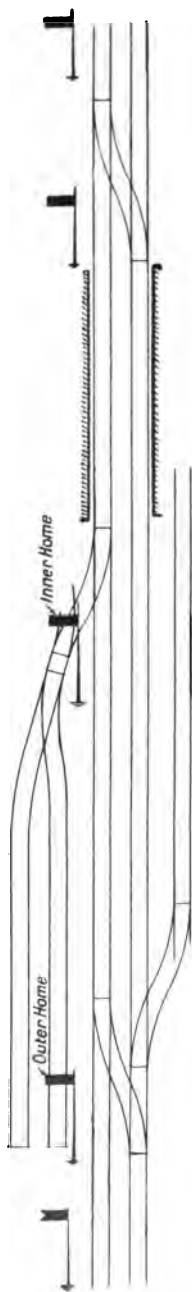


FIG 31.

signals, informing the driver as to the direction in which he is being sent. Some companies treat directing signals as being in a class of their own, and do not term them "Home" signals.

At a place where there are very many point connections it is possible for more than one home signal to be erected, and in this case the first signal encountered by the driver is called the OUTER home signal, being the furthest from the signal box; the next home signal is termed the INNER home signal (Fig. 31).

It is sometimes advantageous where the inner home signals protect the fouling point of a junction to place outer home signals $\frac{1}{4}$ mile in the rear of the inner home signals (Fig. 32). This is to allow two trains to be accepted simultaneously on the converging lines. (See "Block Telegraph Rules," p. 320.) It seldom happens that the signalman can obtain a good view of both his outer home signals at a junction of this sort, and where the signals cannot be seen, they must be repeated electrically. If the train standing at the outer home signal cannot be clearly seen, its presence must be indicated to the signalman in his box, either by means of electric bars or by what is known as TRACK CIRCUITING in conjunction with a "Vehicles on Line" indicator.

Where junction splitting signals are provided they must be placed either on independent posts,—the posts being separate from each other—or they can be on short posts carried by a bracket

or signal gantry (Fig. 33). (Short posts carried by brackets or gantries in this manner are usually termed "dolls.") At a *station* where lines diverge, the Board of Trade Rules allow the signals to be placed one below the other on the condition that the top arm reads to the *left* (Fig. 34), and that the line to the left is the most important. This arrangement is seldom employed: it is an undesirable arrangement and is only resorted to when it is impossible to find sufficient width for all the signal arms being set out horizontally. In arranging signal arms on a bracket or gantry, "stepping" is employed as much as possible, the heights

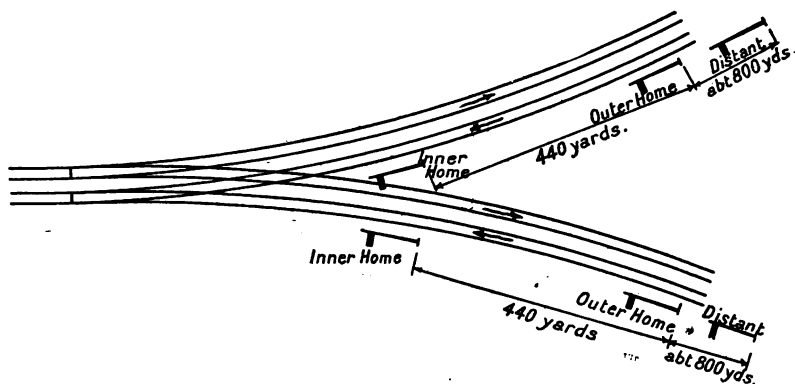


FIG. 32.

being so arranged that the more important signals are higher than the less important ones (Fig. 35). This "stepping" of signal arms is a great advantage in enabling a driver to pick out his signals, as should there be a row of lights all on the same level, it is by no means easy to decide at first glance to what direction any one particular signal reads.

In "stepping" signals a difference in height of about 6 ft. should be given where it is a case of main line and branch signals. Where, however, there are many signals to deal with, to give 6 ft. between each grade of signal would often make the most important signal far too high; in such a case a distance of 3 ft. makes a very good distinction; even such a

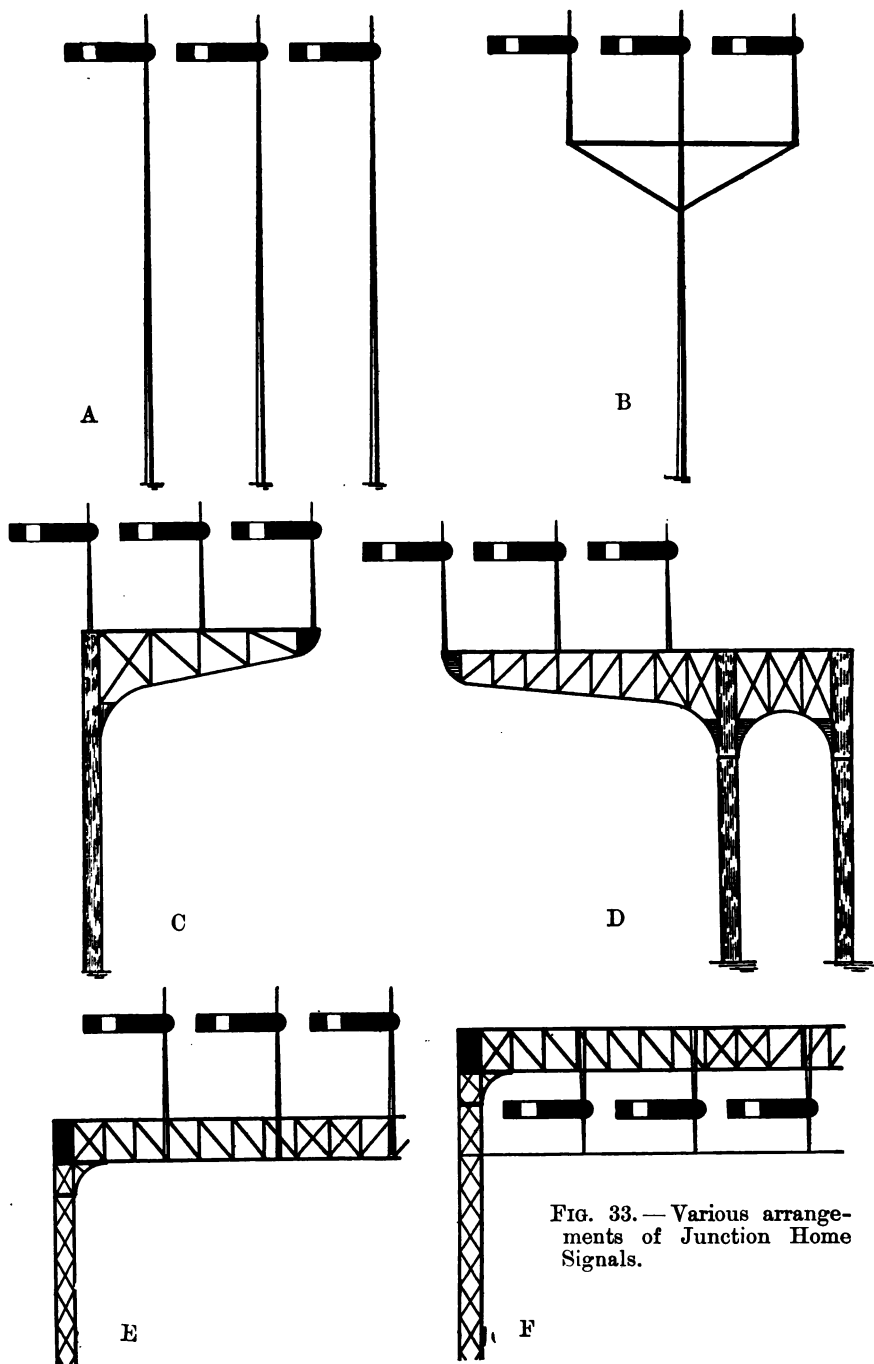


FIG. 33.— Various arrangements of Junction Home Signals.

slight difference in height as 18 ins. can easily be picked out. Some distinction is generally made by making the signal arms of subsidiary lines shorter than main line signal arms (Fig. 36).

INDICATING signals have recently been employed at terminal stations to indicate the line or platform to which a train is going. In this device, only one arm is used for the main line from which the platform lines diverge. This arm is lowered for ALL the platform lines. Below this arm a box is fixed which shows a number or letter to the driver, thus informing him to which platform or line he is running (Fig. 37). The numbers are about 18 ins. high, illuminated at night, and can be distinguished at a distance of about 200 to 300 yards, depending, of course, very much on the state of the atmosphere. It is not desirable to employ

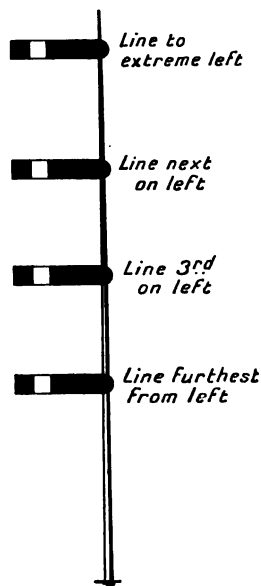


FIG. 34.

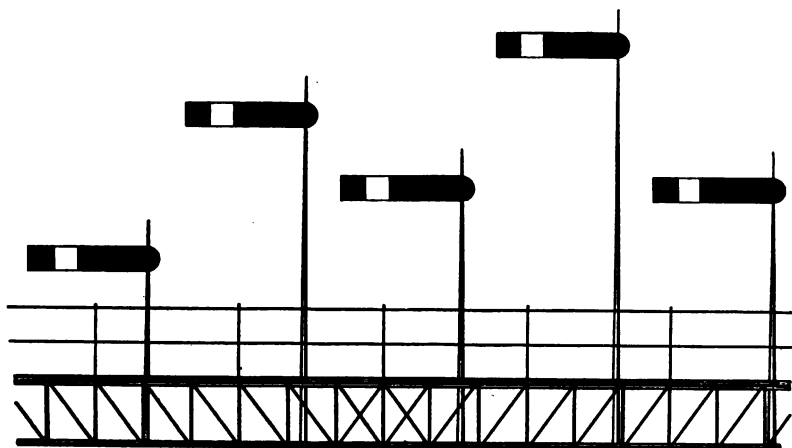


FIG. 35.—Higher Signals refer to more important Lines.

indicating signals at fast running junctions, as a number can be easily mistaken, and cannot be picked up so readily as the position of a light or signal arm; but at terminal stations, where there is a speed restriction of about 15 miles per hour, indicating signals are very convenient, as they save a large number of signal arms, and allow the signal to be placed over the line to which it refers.

A home signal should always be within sight of the signalman, and a train standing at it should be clearly seen from the signal box. If the signal cannot be seen it must be repeated

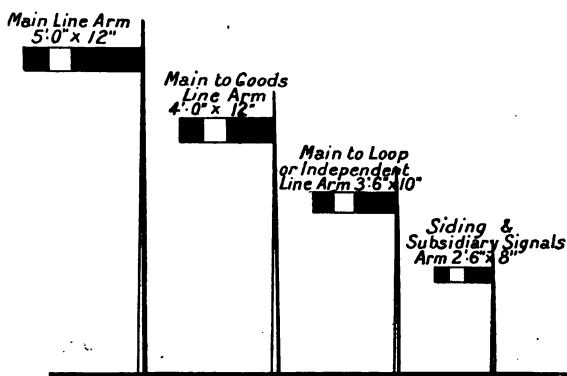


FIG. 36.

in the signal box (this is usually done electrically); and if for any reason the train standing at the signal cannot be seen, some arrangement must be adopted to indicate the presence of the train standing at the signal to the signalman in the box. It is very dangerous for a train to be out of sight of the signalman, as should he forget it even momentarily, he might allow another train to approach from the box in the rear, with the risk of a collision. Where a bridge intervenes and hides the view of the arm from the signalman a repeater arm is sometimes fixed lower down the post. This is commonly done to improve the view for drivers, allowing the signal to be seen first *over* and then *under* the bridge (Fig. 38).

REPEATER SIGNAL.

It occasionally happens, owing to curves and cuttings, a home signal must be placed in such a position that approach-

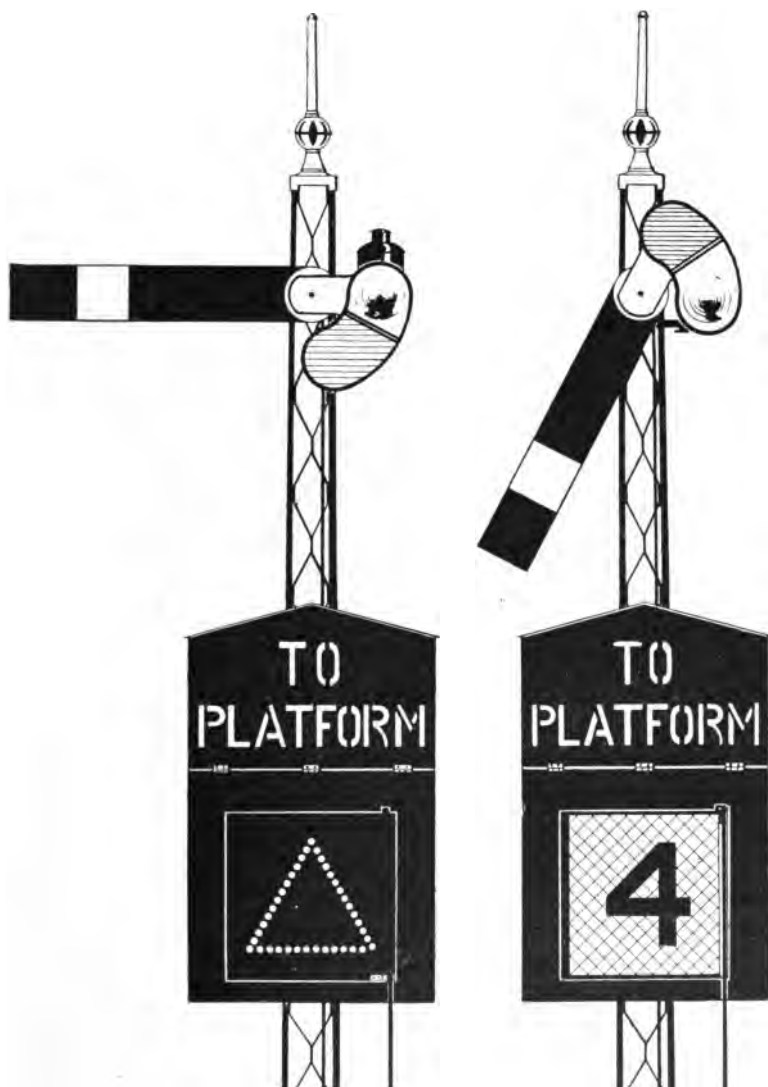


FIG. 37.

ing drivers do not obtain a good view of it; under these conditions an additional signal may be placed further out to a position which gives a better view to the drivers. This additional signal acts as a *repeater* of the home signal, and when the repeater signal shows danger, drivers may proceed past it (as in the case of a distant signal) but must stop at the home signal should it not be at clear when they arrive at it. This is an undesirable arrangement and is only adopted in very unfavourable circumstances.

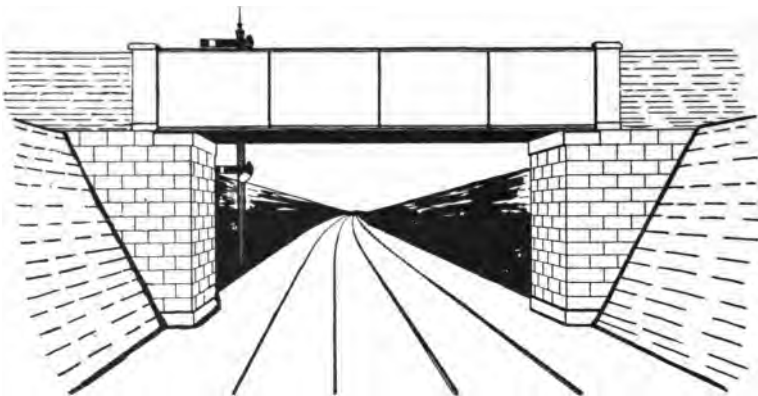


FIG. 38.—Repeater Arm.

CALLING-ON SIGNALS.

The Calling-on signal usually takes the form of a small arm about 3 ft. long and about 8 ins. wide, fixed about 6 ft. lower down on the same post as a home signal. The light at night should be smaller than the home signal light. There are several ways of treating this signal. Some companies arrange that the home arm and the calling-on arm *cannot both* be lowered at the same instant (Fig. 39), while other companies arrange that the calling-on arm must first be lowered before it is possible for the home arm to be lowered (Fig. 40). Some of the companies which adopt the arrangement that the calling-on and home arms cannot both be lowered at the same time do not exhibit any light for the horizontal position of the calling-on signal, but give a small green light when it is lowered.

The function of the calling-on signal is to allow a train to draw past the home signal at DANGER. It is used when the line is not clear far enough ahead to allow of the home arm being lowered, and it only gives the driver permission to proceed past the home signal slowly *as far as the line is clear*, stopping short of any obstruction that may be met after passing the signal.

Its chief use is to save the signalman, after stopping the train at the home signal, and then lowering it for the driver to proceed, from again stopping the train at the signal box to inform the driver verbally that he can proceed, but with his

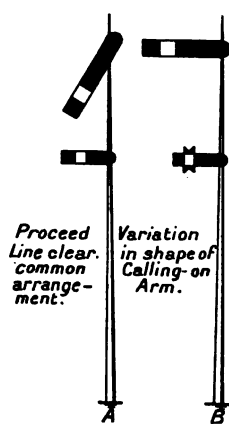


FIG. 39.

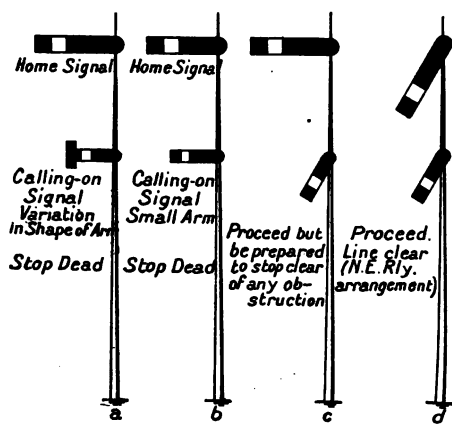


FIG. 40.

train under such control as to be able to stop clear of any obstruction. This signal is only provided at places where the working of traffic is such that the signalman has to stop and caution a great number of trains per day. This is the case at many stations where the platforms are sufficiently long to accommodate more than one train. Should there be a train already occupying the platform, the second train would be brought to a stand or nearly so, and the calling-on signal then lowered to warn the driver that he has not a clear line to run on, but that there is already a train on the line ahead of him, and he must be prepared to stop clear of it. The calling-on signal is generally provided at terminal stations, even

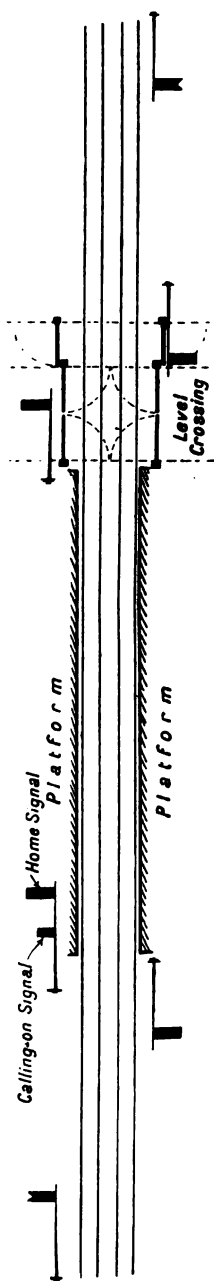


FIG. 41.

though the platforms may not be long enough to accommodate more than one train, as it is sometimes necessary to leave a vehicle at the buffer ends, in which case the calling-on signal would be given for a train running into that platform. The calling-on signal is also employed when backing an engine on to its train at a terminal station.

Calling-on signals are sometimes provided at level crossings where there is a station. At a place as in Fig. 41, the home signal would not be lowered unless the level crossing gates were so placed as to keep back the road traffic. Thus, to allow a train to run alongside the platform, all the road traffic would have to be stopped. If, however, the train is stopped at the platform for two or three minutes, and should it happen to be a busy crossing, road traffic would be seriously delayed unless the signalman replaces the gates across the railway to allow the road traffic to proceed. Then, before the train could be allowed to proceed, the gates would again have to be placed across the roadway. To avoid these additional movements of the gates, a calling-on arm is fixed lower down on the home signal post, and this signal can be lowered to allow the train to draw up to the platform, although the crossing gates be across the railway and road traffic in operation.

Referring back to the different arrangements of working the calling-on

signal by the various companies, and taking the arrangement in which the home and the calling-on signal cannot be lowered at one and the same time, it is assumed that each arm, when lowered, conveys a different meaning. The home arm indicates "PROCEED, line is CLEAR;" the calling-on arm indicates "PROCEED AT CAUTION, line is already OCCUPIED." The home arm in each case acts as the STOP signal, while the small calling-on signal gives permission to move past it slowly. With night working, the large RED home light is first seen plainly indicating STOP, and when the train has come practically to rest, the small GREEN light gives the permission to pass. When the home arm is lowered for a clear line there is still the small RED light of the calling-on signal which is *not* required, hence some companies (as mentioned before) do not show any light for the horizontal position.

Where only one signal is given at one time, should it be found necessary to provide a calling-on signal on a post which has a distant signal combined with the home signal, the calling-on signal is placed *below* the distant signal (Fig. 42).

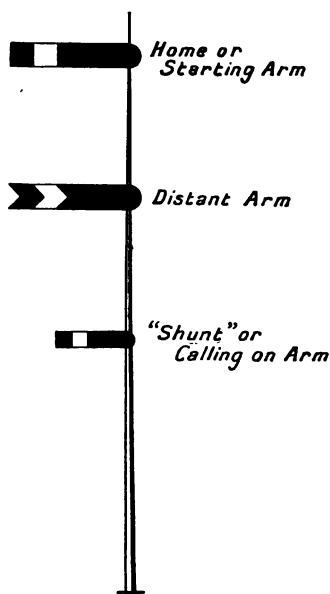


FIG. 42.

With the arrangement where the calling-on signal is lowered before the home signal, the *whole* combination, instead of the individual arms, is taken as giving the indications to the drivers. Thus when the line is clear right through, both the small calling-on and the large home signals are lowered; at night this, of course, shows two green lights for clear. With this arrangement should it be found [necessary to provide a calling-on signal on the same post as a home and distant signal, the calling-on

signal is placed *between* the home and distant signals (Fig. 48).

STARTING SIGNALS.

The starting signal is a STOP signal, and is usually placed at the end of a platform, the idea being that should a train have been allowed to pass the home signal in order to stand at the platform, it will hold the train at the station until the signalman has permission for it to proceed into the next section. Should there be another signal ahead of it, the starting

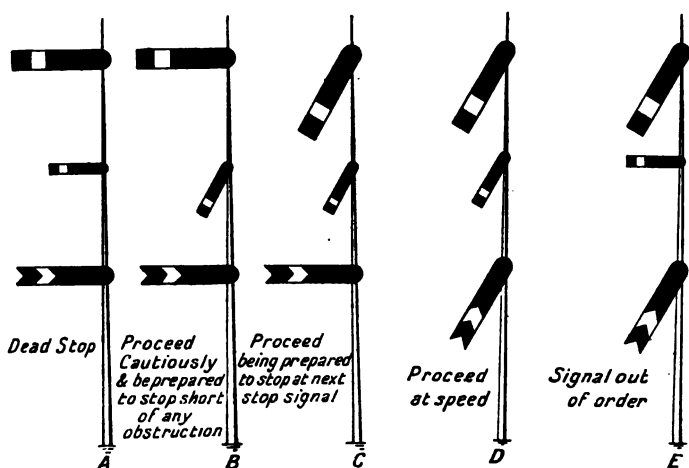


FIG. 43.

signal loses its importance and then simply becomes an *inter-mediate* STOP signal.

ADVANCED STARTING SIGNALS.

The advanced starting signal is also a STOP signal, and always controls the entrance of a train into the section ahead. A train having passed the advanced starting signal (except for shunting purposes) is out of the control of the signalman working that signal, and it comes under the direction of the signalman ahead.

The advanced starting signal (sometimes referred to as the

ADVANCE signal) is usually placed beyond the furthest out set of point connections. The distance it is out from these points depends largely on the nature of the traffic working, but, if possible, sufficient head room is given for the longest train using the sidings to draw up to the signal with the rear vehicle clear of the points, to allow of the train being backed into the siding if required. Sometimes only an engine length is sufficient at one place, whereas 400 yards may be required at another station. This signal should never be out of sight from the signal box, and it is essential that a train or light engine standing at the signal should be clearly seen.* If, at a place where it is necessary to provide an advanced starting signal, owing to tunnels or other unavoidable causes an engine or train standing at the signal cannot be seen, some device must be adopted to indicate the presence of the train to the signaller in the signal box.

SHUNTING SIGNALS.

The shunting signal is a small arm fixed lower down on the same post as a starting or advanced starting signal, and its function is to give permission for a train to pass the STOP signal, when that signal is at danger, for SHUNTING purposes only (Fig. 44). This signal is used when it is not possible to place the starting (or advanced starting) signal sufficiently far out from siding points to enable a train to draw up to the latter with the rear vehicle clear of the points. The lowering of the shunting signal authorises the driver to pass the starting or advanced starting signal at danger

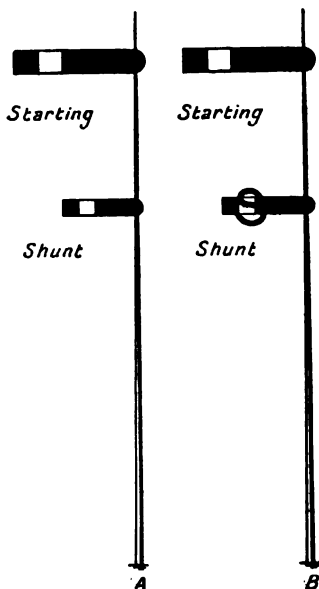


FIG. 44.

* In foggy weather, trains must not be forwarded to the advanced starting signal, except for shunting purposes.

into the section ahead far enough to allow the last vehicle to clear the siding points, but on no account must a driver go

	Stop or Distant Signals	Stop Signal placed over Distant Signals	Distant Signal placed below Junction Stop Signals.	Combinations of Junction Stop and Junction Distant Signals.	Shunt or calling on Signals com- bined with Stop or Distant Signals.
Main Line	ML ●	● S ● D			● .
Junction of Two Main Lines	ML1 ML2 ● ●	ML3 ● MLD ML2D ● ●	ML1S ML2S ● ● MLD ●	ML1S ML2S ● ● ML1 to BD ML1D ● ●	● .
Main Line with Branch to Left.	ML ● BL ●	MLS ● MLD ● BLD ●	MLS ● BLS ● MLD ●	MLS ● BLS ● MLD ● ML to BD ●	● ● .
Junction of Three Main Lines	ML1 ML2 ML3 ● ● ●	ML3 ● ML1D ML2D ML3D ● ● ●	ML1S ML2S ML3S ● ● ● ML3D ●	ML1S ML2S ML3S ● ● ● ML2D ML2 to BD ● ●	● .
Junction of two Main Lines & Branch to Left	ML1 ML2 ● ● BL ●	ML1S ● ML1D ML2D ● ● BLD ●	ML1S ML2S ● ● BLS ● ML1D ●	ML1S ML2S ● ● BLS ● ML2 to BD ML2D ● ●	ML = Main Line BL = Branch Line S = Stop Signal D = Distant Signal 1) Refer to No. 3) of Line.
Main Line with Branches to Right and Left	ML ● BL1 BL2 ● ●	MLS ● MLD ● BL1D BL2D ● ●	MLS ● ML1S BL2S ● ● MLD ●	MLS ● BL1S BL2S ● ● MLD ● BL2D BL2 to BD ● ●	
Main Line with two Branches to Right	ML ● BL1 BL2 ● ●	MLS ● MLD ● BL1D BL2D ● ●	MLS ● BL1S BL2S ● ● MLD ●	MLS ● BL1S BL2S ● ● MLD ● ML to BD ● ●	

Groups of Combined Signals as seen at night.

FIG. 45.

on to the next signal box until the starting or advanced starting signal has been lowered. At night, red is usually

the light for the horizontal position, with green for the inclined position. Where there is a distant signal on the post with the starting signal, the shunt signal is treated in the same manner as the calling-on signal.

The foregoing are the signals commonly used for main line working. At very complicated junctions and stations the names used, viz., Outer Distant, Inner Distant, Outer Home, Inner Home, Starting and Advanced Starting, are not sufficient to classify all the signals employed. In such cases special names have to be assigned to the signals to meet the situation.

On some railways, where there are duplicate or loop lines, the signals for these lines are distinguished from main line signals—for daylight working—by having rings attached to the arms.

Fig. 45 shows the appearance at night of the various signals which are commonly encountered.

SIGNALS FOR CONTROLLING SHUNTING MOVEMENTS, &c., BETWEEN SIDINGS AND RUNNING LINES.

(1) *Shunting from a Siding over a Running Line in the Wrong Direction on to a line in the Right Direction.*

An ordinary ground disc signal, or a small semaphore signal, is generally used for this movement; some companies, however, employ a semaphore signal of distinctive shape as in Figs. 46 and 47.

(2) *Shunting from a Siding on to a Running Line in the Wrong Direction.*

It is very unusual to employ a signal of any sort for a shunting movement of this description,* and a signal should not be provided unless, in the event of the train running away, there is some means of *ensuring* that the train will not proceed on the running line in the **WRONG** direction beyond the home signal.

* The Railway Companies' Rules state:—"Trains moving in the wrong direction on any running line must be signalled by hand lamp or flag."

The ordinary method of ensuring this is to compel the signalman to set either the trailing points to run it to a siding, or the cross-over road points to run it on to a right line (should such exist) *before* the WRONG LINE signal can be lowered. If it is not possible to turn the train into a siding, or on to the right line, or if it would seriously hamper traffic to set the points for the train to go on to the right



FIG. 46.

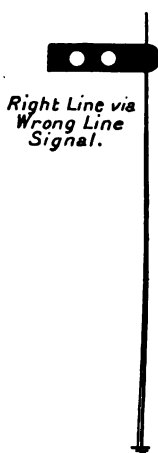


FIG. 47.

line, then catch-points should be placed on the line used in the wrong direction, at a position beyond which shunting *must not* proceed, in order to derail the train should it attempt to run away on the wrong line. A signal permanently fixed at danger should be placed to mark the position of the catch-points in this case, and it will also be necessary to fix a home signal outside the catch-points to hold back trains whilst shunting is in operation (see Sketch 48).

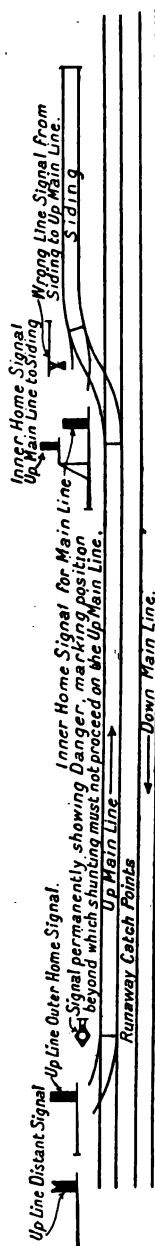


FIG. 48.

The wrong line signal should be of a very distinctive shape for day-light working; sometimes it takes the form of a skeleton semaphore arm, as shown in Fig. 46.

(3) *Shunting to and from Sidings and Shunting Neck.*

A signal is employed on some railways to indicate to a shunter when it is safe to shunt in and out of a group of sidings to the shunting neck; as this signal allows the train to shunt in *both* directions it is called a **BOTHWAYS** signal (Fig. 49). Both sides of the arm are painted **RED** with white stripe, and it has a lamp and glasses to show red and green in *both* directions.

FIG. 49.

To distinguish it by day a circle is attached to the arm, which is a small one. When the signal is at **DANGER** the shunter must keep his train clear of the points giving access to the sidings, but so long as the signal is at **CLEAR** he is assured that the signalman cannot move the points to let a train into the sidings, or move the points in any way to interfere with shunting operations (see Fig. 50).

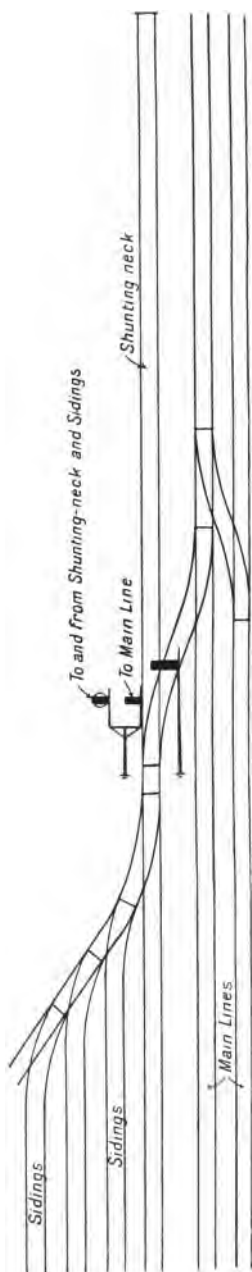
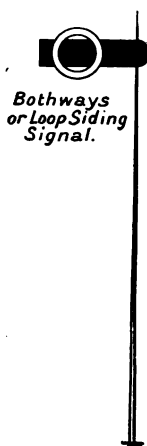


FIG. 50.

- (4) *Shunting from a Main Line to Sidings, from Sidings to Main Line, and from one Main Line to another by means of Cross-over roads.*

Signals for these movements are generally Disc signals, or very small semaphore signals fixed low down (Figs. 51, 52A);

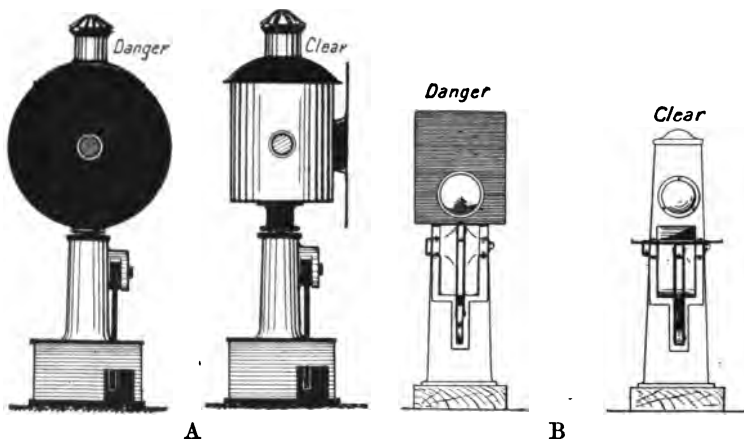


FIG. 51.—Ground Disc Signals.

whether they are disc signals or small semaphore signals they are usually termed **GROUND** signals (sometimes referred to as *dollies* or *dummies*). It sometimes happens that the ground

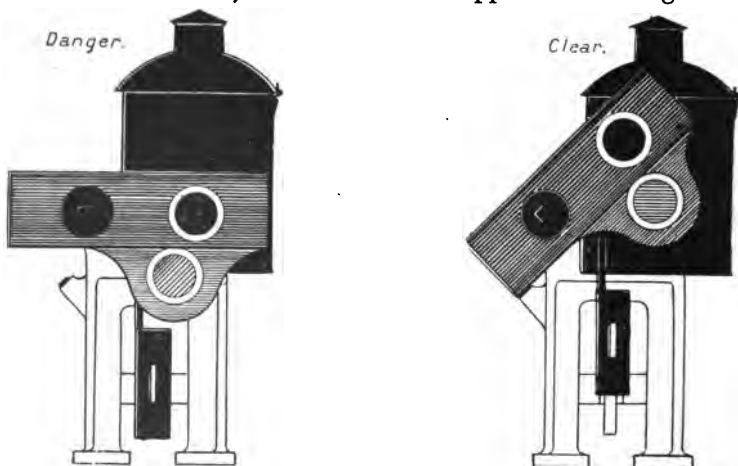


FIG. 52A.—Ground Semaphore Signals.

signals cannot be seen from the signal box owing to their being too low down; in this case it is usual to raise them on posts, or to fix small semaphore signals of calling-on or shunt type on posts about 12 ft. high (Fig. 52B). If the signal has to be placed in a space of less than 10 ft. between the running lines, it is necessary that it should *not* be more than 3 ft. above rail level to meet the Board of Trade requirements.

When a DISC signal is at "DANGER" a RED disc faces the driver, and when the signal indicates ALL RIGHT the disc is either turned to one side, with the edge (or a small green disc) facing the driver, or the red disc is lowered on a hinge to a horizontal position showing only its edge.

For night working various arrangements are in use. Some companies use a small RED for danger, others use PURPLE, and others WHITE, whilst some companies give no light at all; for ALL RIGHT green is used.

The use of the white light for the danger position seems to be rapidly winning favour amongst the railway companies, as several have recently changed their RED or PURPLE lights to WHITE, for danger.

There is some objection to a large number of BIG RED lights facing a driver when he is running through a station yard at night. When close to the signals it is quite easy to see that they are ground disc signals, but at a distance it is difficult to decide which are running signals and which are siding signals, especially if the line is on a curve and the disc signals not well placed.

Purple being a composite colour is very difficult to obtain without showing too much red or too much blue, the latter with a *very* yellow light closely resembles GREEN. A white light cannot be mistaken for either red or green, and meets the case very well. If, however, the RED lights of shunting disc signals are made small enough (say about $1\frac{1}{2}$ -in. lens) there is practically no possibility of a driver mistaking them for 6-in. main line signals.



FIG. 52B. — Semaphore Siding Signal (short arm, small light).

CHAPTER IV

CONSTRUCTIONAL DETAILS OF SIGNALS

SIGNAL POSTS.

SIGNAL posts are commonly made of wood or of iron lattice-work. Some posts are made of hollow tubing; these, however, are not common, and are chiefly of American manufacture, and used in connection with power-worked signals.

There is very little to choose between a wood post and a lattice iron one. For first cost the iron post is dearer than the

wooden one, but its life is correspondingly greater. The precise life of a post depends largely on the soil and atmosphere surrounding the post.

Taking an average, a good wood post might in this country last from 25 to 30 years, whilst under favourable circumstances an iron post might last from 30 to 35 years, or even longer. A wood post is heavier to handle than a lattice iron one, and offers a larger area to the wind. It is, however, slightly

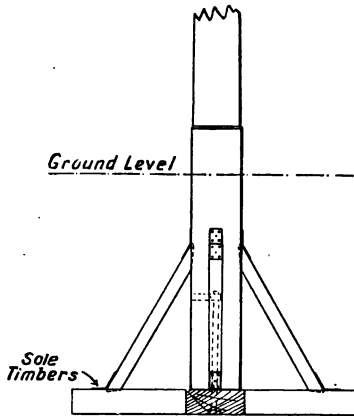


FIG. 53.—Base of Wood Post.

more conspicuous than an iron one, and on that account is preferred by some companies.

A wood post is usually made of red pine or other similar timber, which must be sound, free from sap and straight grown. The timber is trimmed from the log to be about 10 or 12 in. square at ground level (depending on the height of the signal) to about 6 in. square at the top. The

end of the post to be let into the ground is fixed to 12 in. by 6 in. cross timbers with struts and through bolt; and depth of the signal in the ground varying with the height (Fig. 53).

The length of the sole cross-timbers also depends on the height of the signal, a good average being as follows:—

Height of Signal.	Base in Ground.	Length of Sole Timbers.
	About	About
20 ft.	4 ft. 6 in.	4 ft. 6 in.
30 "	5 " 0 "	5 " 0 "
40 "	6 " 0 "	6 " 0 "

The whole of the base, and up to 2 ft. above ground level, should be dressed with hot gas tar. The top of the post requires to be fitted with a cap or pinnacle to keep out the wet. All fittings on the post are either fastened with through bolts or with coach screws. One of the disadvantages of the wood post is the tendency for rot to set up at the coach screws and bolts, also at a point just about ground level. To prevent this as much as possible, the post should be very thoroughly painted or tarred before and after erection.

Iron posts are usually built up from angle-iron and flats, a common size of angle-iron being $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. by $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. by $\frac{1}{4}$ in., the flats $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. by $\frac{3}{16}$ in., and the rivets $\frac{5}{16}$ in. snap heads. For posts up to 25 ft. high single bracing (Fig. 54) is used, but for all posts above that height double bracing is resorted to, with a double set of angles up to about

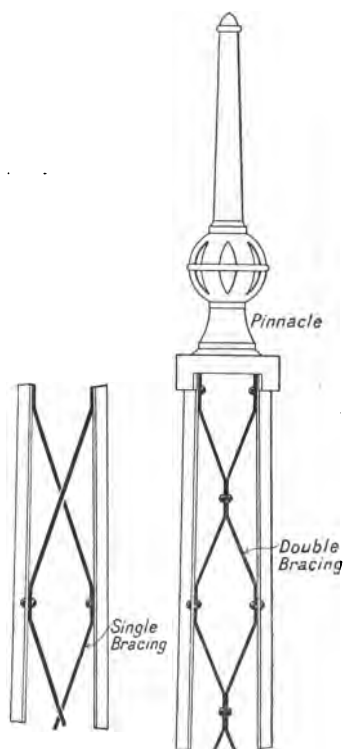


FIG. 54.—Lattice Post.

20 to 25 ft. Where brackets have to be attached to the posts double bracing is always employed, and double angles up to the brackets. The ends of the angles are fastened to a cast-iron base by hoops which are forced on and hold by friction, the post and base having a slight taper.

Where the rings are forced on the angles are strengthened by $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. by $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. square iron (Fig. 55). The top of the post is either fitted with a cap or a pinnacle in order to give it a good appearance. The cast-iron base is set on timbers at the bottom of the post hole in order to give it a

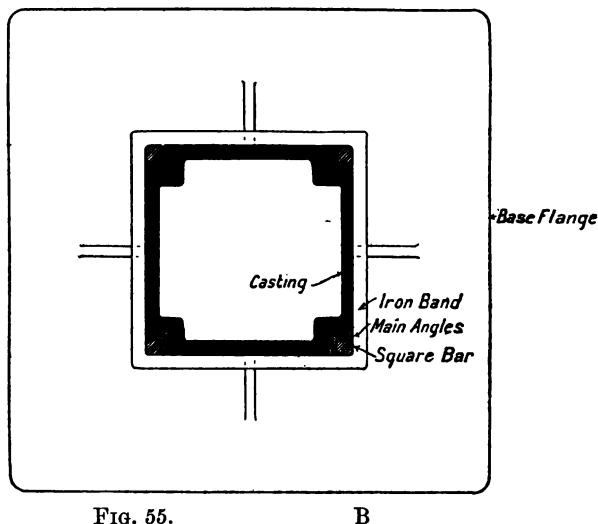
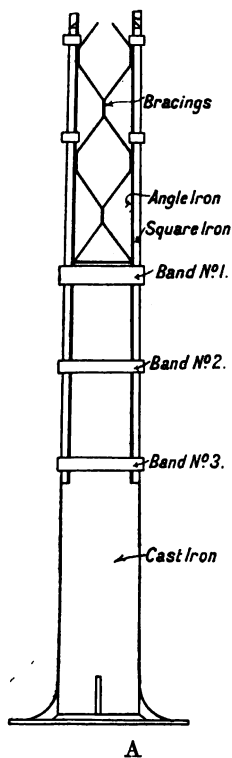


FIG. 55.

good even bedding. All fittings on a lattice iron post are, as a rule, held on by friction, the parts being clamped on with straps and bolts. Once the post is in service there is little or no trouble experienced from the fittings slipping if they have been properly tightened up to commence with. The post must be carefully painted to preserve it from rust. Unless the joints are well coated with paint sufficient to keep the wet out they are usually attacked by the rust forcing apart the bracing from the angle-irons. Signal posts are generally

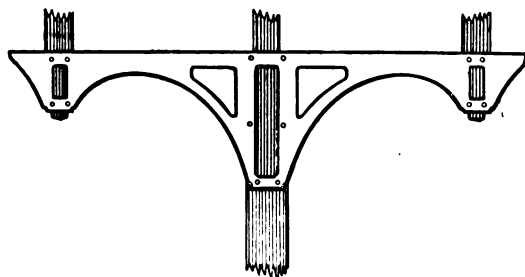
made in standard heights, the height being measured from the rail level to the centre of the arm. Where posts are placed on the side of an embankment or cutting the height is taken from a point above ground level which would be equivalent to rail level under ordinary conditions. The usual standard heights are: 15 ft. (chiefly siding signals, or where signal has to be seen below a bridge), 20 ft., 25 ft., 30 ft., 35 ft., 40 ft., 45 ft., 50 ft., the average being 25 ft. Above 40 ft. is exceptional.

The standard height for a main post carrying a double bracket is 20 ft. from rail level to top of bracket, adding some multiple of 5 ft. if a greater height is required. All posts higher than 25 ft. should be guyed to give stability. It is essential that the guy wires be fixed so as not to cause any obstruction to persons who have to pass the signal. If the signal is placed in such a position that men are constantly passing it, the guy wires must not be fixed direct to the usual anchor bolts in the ground, but should be fixed to stay posts instead; the reason for this being that a man in the dark can keep clear of a post more easily than a wire.

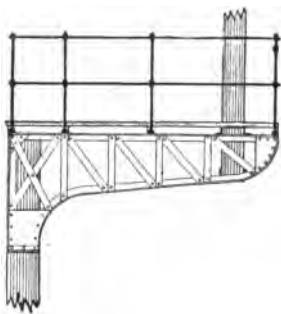
BRACKET SIGNALS.

Many signals are carried on brackets fixed to a main post. For wood posts these brackets are usually made of cast iron, or if the bracket has to be made very long, or carry a great weight, a bracket of the lattice iron pattern is built up. For iron posts a plain bracket of angle and flat iron is generally employed (Fig. 56). The length of bracket varies with the length of arm to be carried, or cleared, as the case may be. The usual lengths are 5 ft., 6 ft. and for full sized main line arms 6 ft. 6 ins. Sometimes the bracket is made longer to clear some obstruction hiding the signal, in which case a special bracket is made up to suit the circumstances. Brackets are constructed to carry one short post or doll, double brackets to carry two dolls—one on either side of the main post—and triple brackets to carry three dolls—one on the centre line of the main post and one on either side of it. To the top of the bracket a landing or gangway is fixed for the

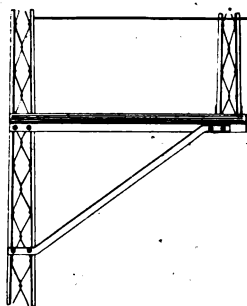
convenience of mechanics, signal lighters and cleaners. All brackets should have a uniform method of fixing the dolls, so that the ends of the dolls can be made to standard pattern. The dolls are made either of wood or iron, but generally



A. Triple Bracket for Wood Post.



B. Special Bracket.



C. Single Bracket for Lattice Post.

FIG. 56.

of the same material as the main post. It is usual to arrange for the dolls being made to standard heights:—

For one arm	5 ft.	8 ft.	11 ft.	14 ft.	17 ft.
For two arms	—	—	11 ft.	14 ft.	17 ft.
Home and Distant ..					

This allows for stepping the heights of the signal arms 3 ft. per step. With dolls above 11 ft. they should be stayed across to the main post or to any other dolls in the group, and the bracket itself should be guyed to anchor bolts in the ground or to stay posts.

SIGNAL BRIDGES.

It is frequently necessary to erect signal bridges to carry a group of signals—which may be too many to be accommodated on brackets—and this arrangement has also the advantage of placing the signals near the lines to which they apply.

Any sort of bridge can be utilised, but it is preferable to have a bridge built specially for the place and purpose. One of the best types of signal bridge is a common lattice girder fastened to strong upright posts. For bridges spanning not more than four sets of lines (about 50 ft. long) a girder 3 ft. deep is suitable (Fig. 57). The sizes of the angles, &c., vary with the span, but for a bridge up to about 50 ft. span the dimensions would be as follows: Main angles 3 ins. by 3 ins. by $\frac{1}{2}$ in., vertical angles and cross bearers $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in., flat braces $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{1}{2}$ in., rivets $\frac{5}{8}$ in.

The posts are built of angles and flats, the angles being about $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in., and the flats $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{1}{2}$ in. The base is made of cast iron with the angles of the post wedged firmly with three bands. The angles at the base should be strengthened with outer angles 3 ins. by 3 ins. by $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (Fig. 58).

The posts of a standard pattern bridge should not be wider than 12 ins. to enable them to be set down in a space of 10 ft. or 11 ft. between the running lines to clear the structure gauge; the size parallel to the lines being not less than 18 ins. A bracket is generally fitted to the top for the purpose of supporting the girder, but in some designs the bottom angles of the girder are bent into the main posts, and bolted or riveted to them. The bridges are fitted with landings and hand-rails, similar in design to those used for bracket signals. If wood dolls are to be erected, sockets should be made and fastened to the girder to receive the ends of the dolls, these sockets being the same as for the standard pattern bracket doll. The ends of iron lattice dolls are fitted either with a plate for bolting on to the girder, or made with ends

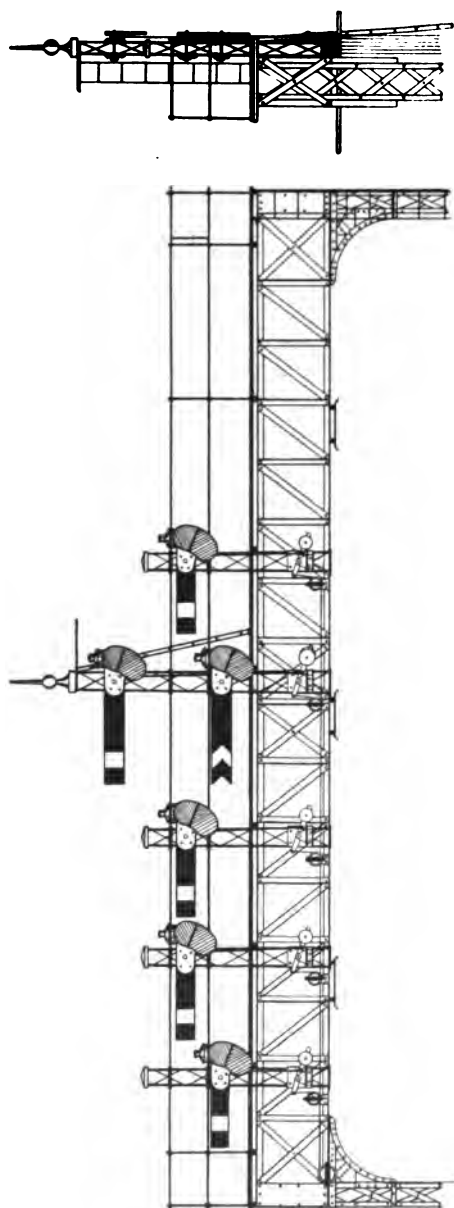


FIG. 57.—Girder for Signal Bridge (General Arrangement).

to receive bolts, in which case a plate is riveted to the girder to receive the dolls.

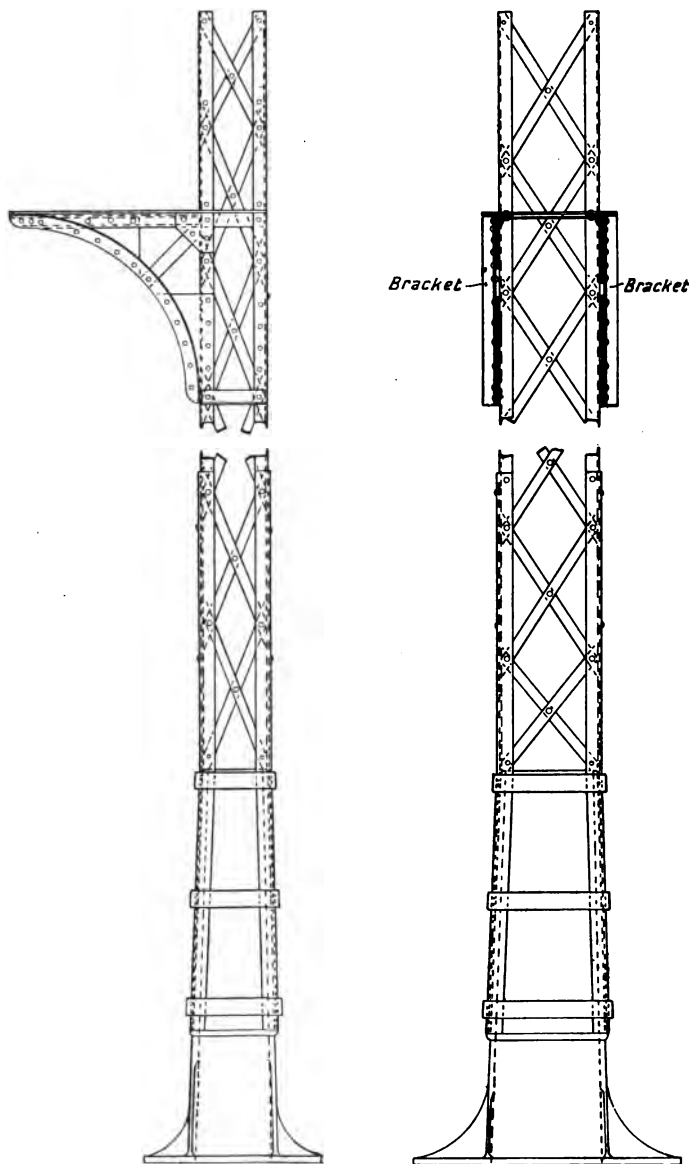


FIG. 58.—Leg and Base for Signal Bridge.

LADDERS.

Ladders have to be fitted to all signal bridges and bracket signals to enable workmen to get to the landings. All posts and dolls higher than 6 ft. should be fitted with ladders up to the arms (Fig. 59), with landings about 3 ft. below the arms to enable the lamps and glasses to be cleaned easily. Sometimes, instead of landings at the top of the post, the ladder is carried to the top, with a ring or bow on it to prevent men falling when reaching round to the opposite face of the signal for cleaning, oiling, or repair purposes.

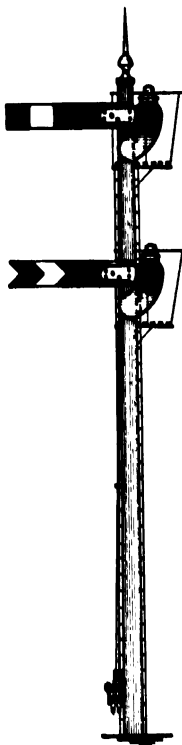


FIG. 59.—Landings for Signal Post.

With ordinary main posts some companies provide winding gear for letting down the lamps for trimming, and in this case do not always provide ladders.

There is some diversity of opinion as to which side of a post the ladder should be fixed, but the usual practice is to place the ladder so that a man in climbing down would face an approaching train. This would, as a rule, place the ladder at the back of the post. There is, however, some objection to this as when a man is at the back of the post he cannot see if the face side is clean and in good condition unless he takes the trouble to lean round. If the ladder is placed on the face side, a man can easily see the condition of the spectacle glasses, and without having to reach round the post, can make an examination of the signal.

The usual size for ladders for main posts is 12 ins. wide, and the pitch of the rungs $11\frac{3}{4}$ ins. For short posts and dolls the ladders usually are about 10 ins. wide and about $9\frac{1}{2}$ ins. pitch for the rungs. The sides of the ladder are made of $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. flats, and the rungs of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. round iron.

SIGNAL ARMS AND SPECTACLES.

Signal arms are usually made of wood (generally cedar or mahogany, occasionally of pine). Some companies, notably the London and North Western Railway, use steel. The tip of a wood arm is about $\frac{3}{8}$ in. thick, and the head about 1 in. thick. The thickness of the steel arm is about $\frac{3}{32}$ in., and the corrugations shown are to impart sufficient stiffness to prevent its being bent in a gale (Fig. 60).

The lengths of signal arms generally employed are as follows:—

Main Line.	Main Line to Goods Line.	Main Line to Siding.	Sidings.
5 ft. 0 in. \times 12 in. or 4 ft. 6 in. \times 10 in.	4 ft. 0 in. \times 12 in. or 3 ft. 6 in. \times 10 in.	3 ft. 0 in. \times 9 in. or 2 ft. 6 in. \times 7 in.	2 ft. 6 in. \times 8 in. or 2 ft. 6 in. \times 7 in.

These dimensions are from the centre of the signal post to tip of arm. Some companies have the sizes of the arms made proportional to the height of the signal post, a high post having a longer and broader arm than a short post. As a rule the arms on brackets are made shorter than the arms on single posts, in order to keep the brackets as short as possible.

A common method of fitting the arm to the post is to bolt it to a cast-iron plate, this plate being keyed on to a spindle. The spindle turns in a cast-iron bearing which is fixed to the signal post.

Generally the spindle is fitted at the head of the arm in such a way that if an arm is 5 ft. over-all, the tip of the arm will swing with a radius of 4 ft. 6 ins. This necessitates the spindle being fitted through the centre of the signal post

FIG. 60. —
Section of
Steel Arm.

(Fig. 61). If the spindle is fitted with its bearing just clear of the post, then the spindle would be so placed on the arm that

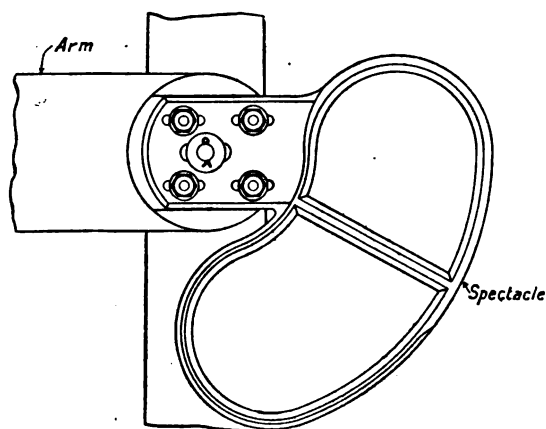


FIG. 61.—Spindle through centre of post.

the tip of the arm would swing with a radius of about 3 ft. 10 ins. (Fig. 62). One or two companies fix the spindle approximately in the centre of the arm, in a position slightly

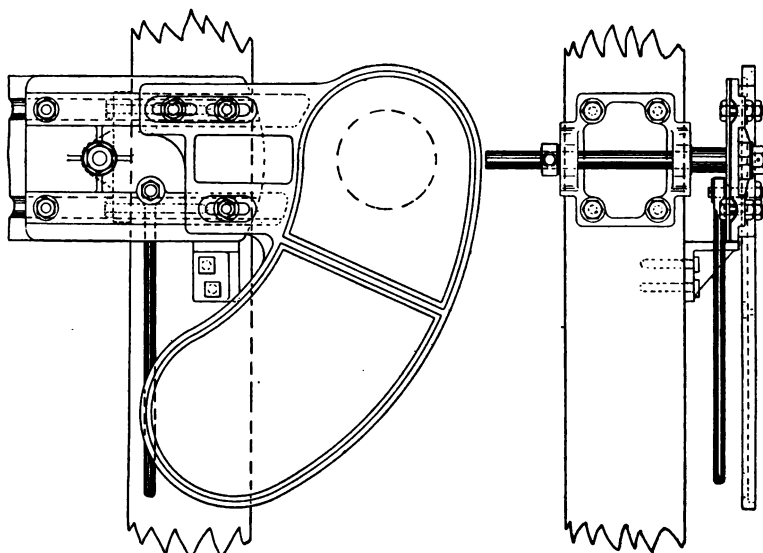


FIG. 62.—Spindle clear of post.

above the centre line, so that the arm balances itself (Fig. 63). This type of arm requires a long bracketted bearing to carry the spindle at a distance of about 2 ft. from the edge of the post.

If the spindle is fitted at the head of the arm, it is, of course, necessary to counterbalance the arm, so that in the event of the connections between the arm and the lever breaking, the arm will not droop, and should it be in the CLEAR position when the failure takes place, it must instantly go to the DANGER position (see Board of Trade, rule 3). This is effected by fitting the SPECTACLE on to the same casting to which the spindle is keyed, and making the spectacle sufficiently heavy

to counterbalance the arm. In several types of signals the spectacle is fitted separately to the spindle. In designing the spectacle for counterbalancing purposes, it is necessary to give a good margin of safety in favour of the spectacle, as it is possible that although the spectacle easily puts the arm to DANGER when the signal is first erected, the

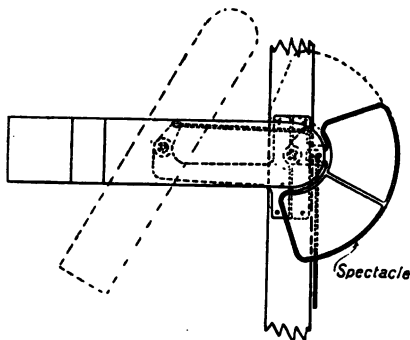


FIG. 63.—Spindle carried on Long Bracket.

coatings of heavy paint received by the arm during years of service may eventually make it too heavy for the spectacle. In a snowstorm also, a thick layer of snow might give the balance in favour of the arm. To allow for these contingencies the original counterbalancing effort of the spectacle should not be less than equivalent to 100 in.-lbs. in excess of the turning moment of the arm. That is equivalent to a weight of 5 lbs. at 20 ins. from the centre of the spindle.

For these weights the spectacle casting, *without* the glasses in it, should be taken, and the turning moments should be calculated when the arm is in the DANGER position. When it is lowered the counterbalancing effort becomes greater, and as

a rule, is at a maximum at an inclination of 60 degrees depending on the precise positions of the centres of gravity of the arm and spectacle. It is necessary to fit a stop of some sort on the post so that the arm will not fly beyond the horizontal position should the connecting-rod break. This stop is either fitted to engage with the wood arm itself, by being placed immediately above it near the bearing, or some portion of the spectacle casting comes in contact with a projection fastened to the post. If the stop engages with the arm direct, the arm soon becomes very badly worn and unsightly at the point of contact.

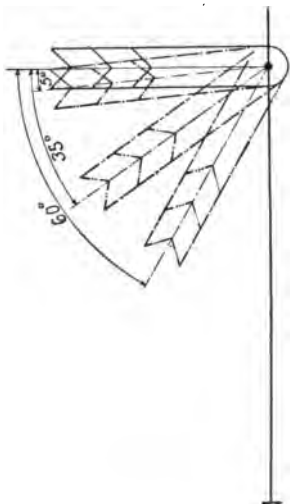


FIG. 64.—Angles of Working.

If a metal-to-metal stop is employed no such trouble occurs, but a rather severe blow is liable to be given. Probably the best practice is to provide a wood or other soft material stop to engage with a portion of the spindle casting or spectacle, so arranged that the stop can easily be renewed when worn.

The angle to which the arm moves when in the CLEAR position varies with different companies, but a very fair average is about 60 degrees. It is generally taken that the greatest permissible droop an arm can have, and still be considered a proper DANGER indication, is about 5 degrees; from this angle until the arm moves to about 35 degrees the signal should be considered as *indistinct*, and from 35 degrees to about 60 degrees a correct CLEAR signal is given (Fig. 64).

In arranging the proportions of the red and green glasses, it is necessary to keep the above angles in view, so that there shall be a good RED light until the arm has drooped *more* than 5 degrees (usually 10 or 15 degrees in practice), and that there shall be a clear GREEN light when the arm has moved to 35 degrees. Although the RED is the more important light, it is desirable to allow a greater margin of GREEN than RED,

because with a signal worked by wire a long distance from the signal box, it is not always possible to make the arm, when pulled to clear, move to the same angle, whereas in going to danger, the arm always moves as far as the stop will allow. With power worked signals it is usual to make the red larger than the green, as there is no trouble in bringing the arm always to the same angle.

It is current practice to have two standard sizes of spectacles only; one the full size for MAIN LINE signals, and the other small to suit small arms of about 3 ft. length. The green glass used in spectacles should be of a decidedly blue shade, and as the ordinary light used is yellow, this gives a very good green signal. If the glass is a light green, the yellow light produces a *very* poor signal light.

The glasses are held in the casting by means of putty, but putty alone is not sufficient, and it is necessary that holes should be drilled round the edge of the spectacle, and either wood plugs driven in or small split pins used.

There are three common arrangements for placing the arm with relation to the post: 1st. The arm is fitted to work *inside* the post, a slot being cut in the post for that purpose, and the spindle going through the centre of the post (Fig. 65). This involves a costly post and tends to weaken it. It also involves two plate bearings one on either side of the post for the spindle to work in. Moreover, the spectacle has to be fitted separately to the spindle, and has a tendency to work loose.

2nd. The arm works *outside* the post, but the spindle goes through the centre of the post. This involves two plate bearings for the spindle (Fig. 66), but allows the spectacle to be fitted with bolts to the main signal arm casting to which the spindle is keyed. With this arrangement the spectacle must be comparatively heavy to counterbalance the arm, as the spectacle has its centre of gravity close to the spindle, whereas the arm has its centre of gravity nearly half way along the arm (see Fig. 61).

3rd. The arm works *outside* the post as in the last case, but the spindle is fixed clear of the post (Fig. 67). This has

all the advantages of the 2nd arrangement; and it not only allows the bearing to be in one casting, but has the advantage that the centre of gravity of the spectacle is further from the spindle, whilst the centre of gravity of the arm is nearer thus allowing a lighter casting for the spectacle (see Fig. 62).

With this arrangement the areas on each side of the spindle are about equal, and any snow collecting on the arm would be partially counterbalanced by the snow on the spectacle; so



FIG. 65.

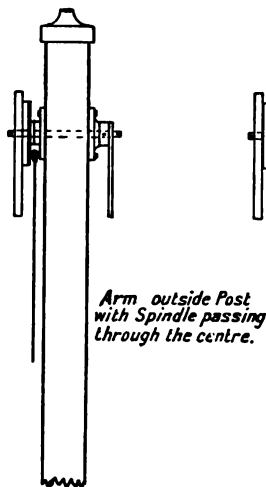


FIG. 66.

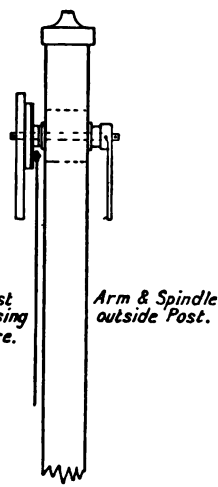


FIG. 67.

that it would be practically impossible for the snow on the arm to overcome the counterbalancing effort of the spectacle.* The only drawback is that the spectacle glasses have to be rather large owing to the distance of the centre of the lamp from the spindle.

* With an arm 4 ft. 6 in. from centre of spindle to tip, and 12 in. wide, the spindle being hung in this manner, it would require a layer of snow rather more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. thick distributed over one face of the arm and spectacle before the counterbalancing would be sufficient to overcome the weight of the spectacle, supposing the spectacle to have an original excess counterbalancing effort of 100 in.-lbs. over the arm. This assumes that the down rod of the signal is disconnected, and that the weight of snow is about 10 lbs. per cub. ft.

When a spindle is situated approximately at the centre of gravity of the arm, the spectacle must be fitted to a separate spindle bolted to the signal post, with a connecting-rod between the arm and the spectacle (see Fig. 68). This arrangement makes it absolutely impossible for any weight of snow on the arm to cause it to droop, but there are more moving parts, and consequently this type costs more to manufacture and maintain, and is slightly harder to work.

In addition to equipping the signal with a front spectacle to show red and green lights, a back spectacle (or "Blinder" as it is sometimes called) requires to be fitted (Fig. 68). This is simply a piece of sheet iron (or a casting) fitted to the spindle so that when the arm is at Danger a small white back light can be seen by the signalman, but when the arm is lowered to more than about 5 degrees the light is obscured. The back light arrangement is only used when the face of the signal cannot be seen from the signal box. The reason why the back light is made visible only when the signal is at danger, is because it is essential that the signalman shall be able to satisfy himself that a proper danger signal is being exhibited. Should the light go out when the arm is horizontal the signalman, not seeing the

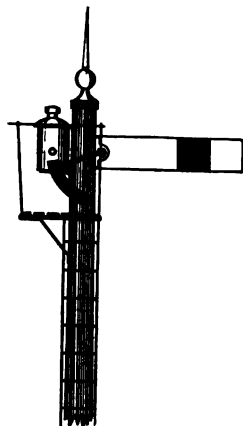


FIG. 68.—Back-blinder.

light, knows either that the light is out, or that the arm is drooping beyond 5 degrees, and in either case the signal needs instant attention. Should the light go out when the arm is lowered for the "Clear" signal the signalman is not informed of it, but if a driver overlooks the signal owing to the light being out, he simply proceeds, which is exactly what he is told to do by the arm being lowered. Should he notice that the light is out, he would take means to inform the signalman, and the worst that could happen would be the stopping of the train when not required, which is on the side of safety.

COUNTERBALANCE LEVERS.

The connection between the signal box and the signal itself is made of wire, and arranged so that pulling the wire lowers the signal to the CLEAR position. The usual method adopted is to attach the wire to one end of a lever fitted to the signal

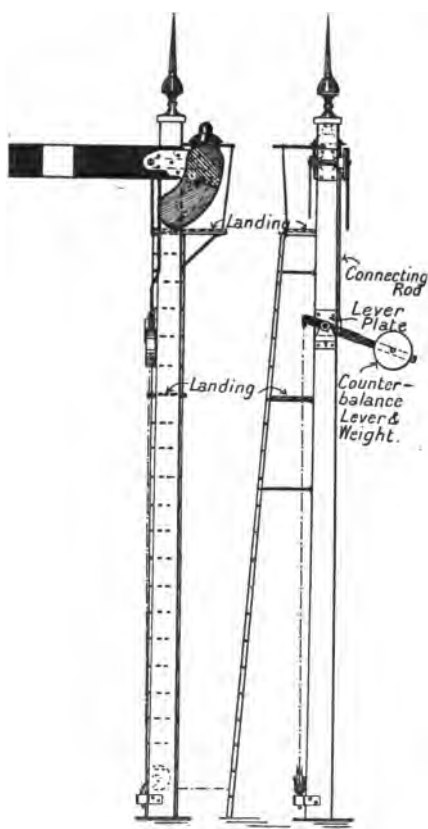


FIG. 69.

post (Fig. 69). From the lever a rod is taken to a pin or stud on the signal arm, so arranged that when the wire is pulled the rod moves up, and being connected to the right-hand side of the signal arm spindle, the arm is thereby lowered. When the wire is loosened again the arm should go to danger and the wire is at the same time dragged back. The weight of the down rod and lever alone is not always sufficient to drag back the wire, so it is usual to place a weight on the tail of the lever to assist in dragging back the wire. It should be observed that the true function of the weight is to pull the wire back to its normal position, and not to put the signal to

danger. The spectacle should always be sufficiently heavy to put the arm to danger even when loaded with snow, but unless the counterbalance weight is sufficiently heavy to pull back the wire, the arm will, of course, remain in the CLEAR position. When the wires are loaded with snow, and

every pulley wheel between the signal box and the signal partially choked with snow also, the weight on the counterbalance lever is not always sufficient to overcome the additional friction introduced, and then, of course, the signal never properly goes to danger. The further the signal is from the signal box the greater is the effect of the snow on the wires and round the pulley wheels. When a very severe storm is encountered the effect is too great for any reasonable amount of weight to overcome. Under these conditions the only practical thing to do, is to arrange for the signal being tied, or otherwise secured, in the danger position.

The usual sizes for the counterbalance levers, &c., are as follows:—

Length from centre of lever bearing to centre of pin connected to wire, $5\frac{1}{2}$ ins.; this gives about $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. travel for the signal wire; from centre of bearing to extreme end of lever, 20 in. The weight of the counterbalance casting varies from 20 lbs. for signals about 300 yards from the signal box, up to 40 lbs. for signals about 1,000 yards from the signal box, but this depends very much on the run of the wire. Several holes are drilled in the lever to allow of the distance of the counterbalance weight from the centre being adjusted after the signal has been erected and the wire connected up. The size of the connecting-rod (commonly called the *down-rod*) varies from $\frac{5}{8}$ in. for short rods to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. for long rods. If the rods are long it is necessary to fit guides on the post to prevent their bending.

The position of the counterbalance lever on the post varies on different railways. They are in many cases fixed close to the bottom of the post, within easy reach of the signal line-men for examination and cleaning purposes. This, of course, necessitates a long down-rod, and should the post be a very high one the down-rod becomes very heavy. It is, however, sometimes possible to connect the wire direct on to the lever, and so save a pulley wheel at the foot of the post.

If the lever is placed about 4 ft. 6 ins. below the arm, it is possible to adopt a standard length of down-rod, and there is no friction incidental to the use of rod guides. This arrange-

ment on the whole gives a very good working signal when first erected, but unfortunately when the counterbalance levers are high up the post, they are not easily accessible for inspection, and the lineman has to climb the post every time the bearings require oiling. If the bearings cannot be easily reached from the ladder a small landing should be fitted at a convenient height to enable oiling and cleaning to be carried out in safety (see Fig. 69).

There are many different types of bearing plates for the levers, and if only one lever has to be accommodated there is no special difficulty in obtaining a good design. The plate must be fitted with two stops, in addition to the bearing, to prevent the counterbalance lever moving too far in either direction. Possibly the most convenient pattern to adopt is

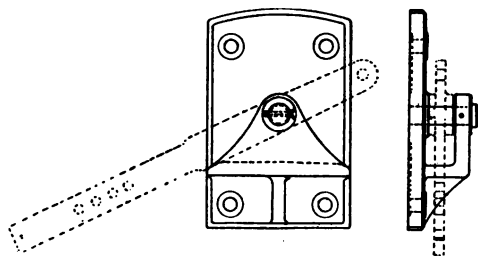


FIG. 70A.—Lever Plate.

one with the pin for the bearing in double shear (Fig. 70A), and not overhung. In this pattern the stops are formed by the lever striking the body of the casting. With the pin overhung the stops take the form of projections from the face of the plate (Fig. 70B), and unless these are very massive there is a liability of their breaking off.

Where there are two arms on one post, such as in the case of a starting and shunt signal, with both signals reading in the same direction, the lever plate, as a rule, is made so as to receive the counterbalance levers for both arms with a washer between them. In the case of home and distant signals on the same post, it is necessary to control the distant arm so that it cannot be lowered until the home arm has been lowered; this arrangement being termed "SLOTING the Distant Signal."

SLOTING.

The term *slot* is a survival from the time when the signal arms were not counterbalanced by their spectacles; an

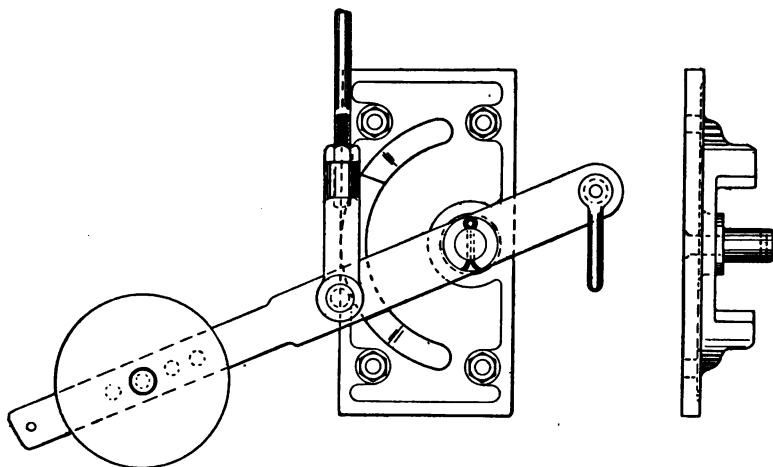


FIG. 70B.—Lever Plate.

early device for controlling the distant arm being as follows (Fig. 71):—

The distant signal down-rod, instead of having a common single joint to fit on to the distant arm driving stud, has a slotted joint so arranged that when the counterbalance lever is normal the arm is at danger; but when the counterbalance lever is raised the slot moves up, and if there is nothing in addition to this slotted joint to prevent the arm from lowering, it will move down as the down-rod moves up; but if the arm is held by any other means in the danger position, the slot simply moves up without affecting the arm. The down-rod of the home arm also has a slot formed in it to fit on to the same driving stud as the distant signal down-

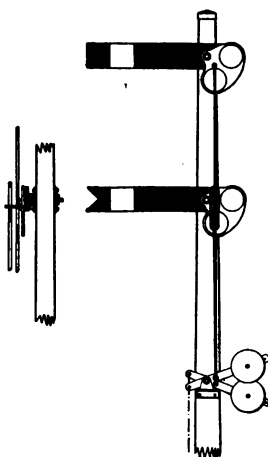


FIG. 71.—Early Slot.

rod, in such a way that unless the home arm is lowered the slot in the down-rod of that signal prevents the distant arm from falling to the OFF or clear position, although the distant signal counterbalance lever be raised. It will be seen that with this arrangement of slotting both counterbalance levers have to be up before the arm can be lowered, and either of the counterbalance levers going back to the normal position carries the distant arm with it.

When the Board of Trade made the ruling requiring the spectacles to counterbalance the arms, this method of slotting was no longer admissible, as it relied on the *weight of the*

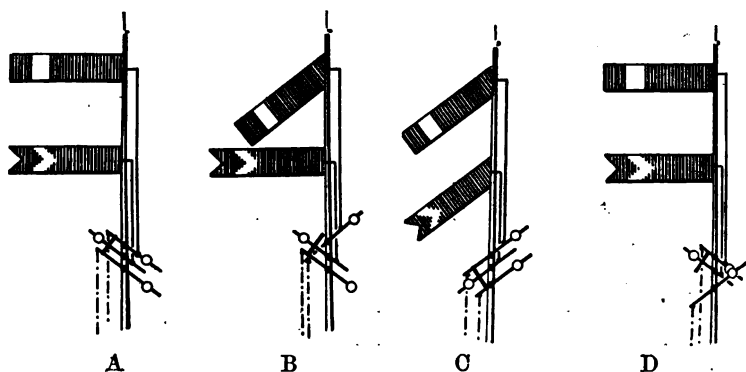


FIG. 72.—Common Slot for Home and Distant Signals.

arm to put the signal to the OFF position, and for the *weight of the counterbalance weight* and lever to put it to *danger*.

The device generally in use is a modification of the above system. The spectacles are made of the standard pattern and effectively counterbalance the arm. There are no slots in the down-rods, but an additional so-called "SLOT" lever is placed between the ordinary counterbalance levers with the long end pointing away from the other levers. The down-rod of the distant arm is connected to this lever, so that when the long end moves *down* the arm follows and takes up the CLEAR position (Fig. 72). A small counterbalance weight is fitted to this lever, sufficient to overcome the weight of the distant arm and spectacle. A stud or cross-piece is fastened or welded to the

slot lever, and lies across the counterbalance levers, in such a way that unless both these levers are raised it is impossible for the slot lever to fall and pull the distant signal arm with it. If the cross-piece (Fig. 73) is on the same side of the bearing as the down-rod it is placed *below* the levers, so that it can only rise when both are up. If, however, it is on the opposite side of the bearing, it is placed *above* the levers, so that it bears down on them, and cannot fall unless both ends are down.

Should the distant signal require to be controlled by more than the top arm, all that is necessary is to place another ordinary counterbalance lever on the same bearing as the

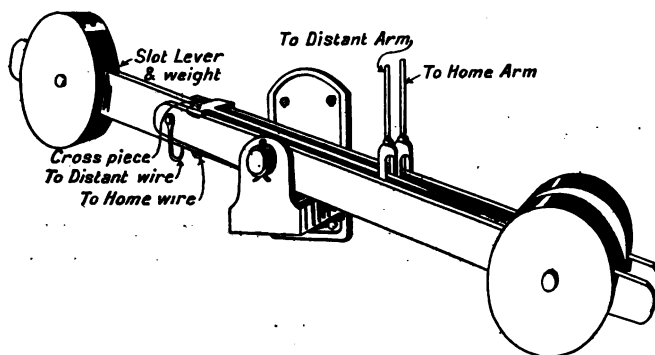


FIG. 73.—Common Slot.

others, and arrange that the cross-piece of the SLOT LEVER bears across all the counterbalance levers. There must be as many counterbalance levers as there are controls required, with the slot-lever cross-piece bearing on each one. With this method there is, theoretically, no limit to the number of controls which can be effected. Practically the limit is determined by the size of the lever plate and the feasibility of making a strong cross-piece to lie across *all the counterbalance levers*.

This type of slot is the most convenient to fit up and the easiest to work, and if the type of lever plate is such that the bearing pin is in double shear, and the stops for the levers

a part of the main casting and not mere projections therefrom, four separate controlling levers (five levers including the slot lever) can be employed without difficulty. If, however, the bearing pin is in single shear, and the stops for the counterbalance levers are projections from the main casting with more than three controlling levers (four including the slot-lever), the pin bearing becomes rather long, and the stops are liable to fracture in service.

There is one theoretical objection to this type of slotting, viz., should the cross-piece on the slot-lever *break*, the lever would fall and carry the distant signal arm with it, so that in this case a *failure of connections* would cause the signal to go to CLEAR, which is *not* in accordance with Board of Trade rules. In practice, therefore, great care is taken in designing the slot-lever and cross-piece so that it will be so strong that whatever portion may break the slot-lever cross-piece will *not* fail. This type of slot is commonly called a "DROP-OFF" SLOT owing to the fact that the weight on the slot-lever in falling or dropping pulls the distant arm to the CLEAR, or off position.

There are several types of "PUSH-OFF" SLOTS which are sometimes used. They have not the theoretical objection of the DROP-OFF slot, but they have the practical objection that they do not work so easily, and it is not easy to arrange for more than two controlling levers. Should more than two be required they have to be arranged one above the other in series.

The general principle of most "PUSH-OFF" slots is as follows:—

Taking a two-lever control as before, three levers are required, a slot-lever being placed between the two control-levers, with the weight (if any) assisting to put the arm to danger. In addition to the cross-piece fixed to the slot-lever, a movable crank (Fig. 74) is fitted, with the ends of the crank resting on the control-levers situated on either side. When one control-lever is pulled, it simply pushes over the small crank on to the other control-lever. When that control-lever is in turn pulled, it tries to force the crank back on to the first

lever, but as this lever is already pulled up, the effect is for the crank to rise with the second lever and carry the slot lever with it. Whichever lever is put back first it allows the crank,

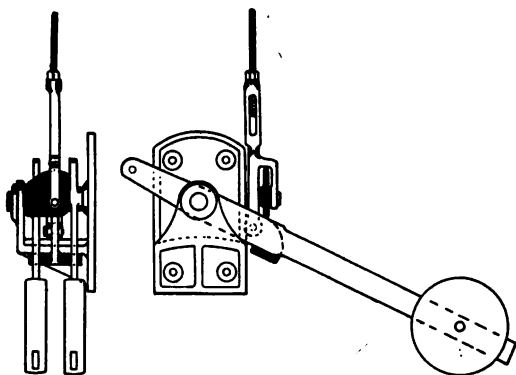


FIG. 74.—“ Push-off ” Slot.

and consequently the slot-lever, to go back to the normal position along with it. In some varieties of this slot, instead of the small moving crank being fitted directly on to the slot-lever, it is fitted to a sliding rod (Fig. 75), which in turn is fitted to the slot-lever; then, instead of the crank resting directly on the control-levers, it rests on studs riveted to two slides which are driven by the control-levers. The action is precisely the same, as whichever lever is pulled up first drives its sliding-piece, and by means of the stud riveted thereto forces the crank on to the other stud. When the next lever is pulled up, it drives its sliding-piece up, and its stud, not being able to force the crank over against the first stud, raises the crank, which pulls up the sliding-piece attached to the slot-lever, so

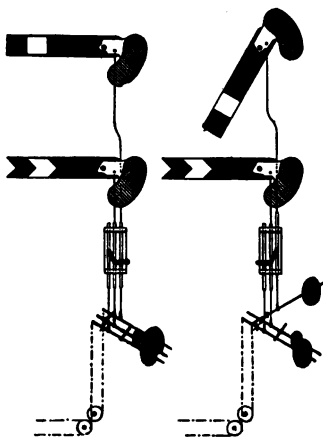


FIG. 75.—“ Push-off ” Slot.

lowering the arm. Fig 76 shows another variety of "push-off" slot.

The objection to any of these arrangements is that the friction of the moving parts is comparatively great. The lever first pulled does little work on the slot, as it simply moves the crank or roller over, but the second lever pulled has the whole slotting device to operate, and the signal arm to move in addition. If the first lever to be pulled is the one working the distant lever, little difficulty is experienced, as generally the starting signal is sufficiently near the box to enable the signalman to pull off both it and the slotting without much trouble. If

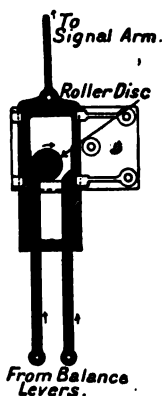


FIG. 76.—"Push-off" Slot.

however, the starting signal lever is first pulled, when the signalman comes to pull the distant lever (especially if the signal is at its usual 1,000 yards or so from the box), it is almost impossible for him to operate the control lever. Where more than two control levers are required, it is quite impossible for a signalman 1,000 yards away to pull the signal off should he be the last man to pull, owing to the amount of friction involved in the arrangement.

With either of these types of slotting, should only one arm be on the signal post, and that arm required to be controlled from two signal boxes, the same apparatus would be fitted as for a home and distant signal on one post, with the difference that the down-rod from the one counterbalance lever would be omitted; thus none of the counterbalance levers would be connected directly to the signal arm, the down-rod from the signal arm being connected to the slot-lever.

Another method of effecting a slot is by means of pulleys and the signal wires. Instead of the signal wire being taken direct from the signal box to the counterbalance lever on the signal post, the wire from one box is led round a pulley wheel (which pulley wheel is allowed to slide) back to the other box (Fig. 77). From the sliding pulley wheel a wire is taken to the counterbalance lever of the signal requiring to be con-

trolled. The method of working is as follows: the wires are left slack, so that when the first man pulls his end of the wire, he simply tightens the wire, but not sufficiently to pull off the signal. When the second man pulls, the motion is sufficient to operate the signal. It will be seen that it takes two men to pull off the signal, the first man simply taking up the slack wire, and the second man actually working the signal; then whichever man lets out the wire first, it causes the signal to go back to the danger position. This device would be a very convenient method of carrying out slotting, if it were not for the difficulty experienced in regulating the length

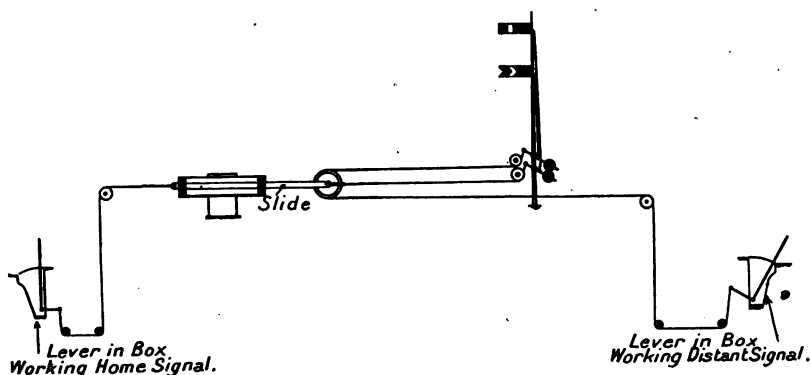


FIG. 77.—“Wire” Slotting.

of the wires owing to expansion and contraction due to varying temperatures during the course of a day and night. Unless the length of the wires is carefully regulated it would be possible with an abnormally tight wire for the first man pulling to cause the arm to move out of the correct danger position.

SIGNAL LAMPS.

The majority of signals are lighted by oil at present, although near large towns either gas or electric lighting is often used.

It is impossible to give a general statement as to whether gas or electric light is the cheaper to install and maintain, everything depends on the rates charged. If the rates for

simple lighting by the two systems came out equal, electricity would be much cheaper in the long run, as gas very soon causes the lamp cases to deteriorate. With electric light it is possible to switch in or out just when and as required, and it is thus possible to have fewer hours burning with this system than with any other. The lamps also need less cleaning and general attention, so that the labour costs are very much less.

For general use, however, oil lighting is the most economical, and if lamps of the long burning type are employed at busy places the labour costs for attention can be kept very low. Generally speaking, at ordinary country or way-side stations common oil lamps, attended by the station staff, are the most serviceable.

Whatever the system of lighting employed, there must be an outside lamp case attached to the signal post. This lamp case encloses the light and contains a lens, or curved reflector, to concentrate the rays.

The lamp case must be made strong enough to withstand all weathers, and if a flame light is used, it must provide adequate ventilation for supplying air and preventing sweating; at the same time it must be so constructed as to prevent a strong gust of wind from extinguishing the light (Fig. 78).

The lamp cases generally are made of either sheet copper, sheet iron, or cast iron. The sheet-iron cases wear out more quickly than those made of copper, but they are cheaper for first cost. The cast-iron cases (providing they are not damaged by ill usage) last indefinitely. A lid is provided, to allow the interior to be put in, and the cases must be fitted with some attachment for fixing to the signal post. Some lamp cases for electric light are made with the lid to open at the ends, and the inside of the lamp case is only large enough to accommodate the electric globes at the proper distance from the lens. Usually, however, the lamp cases are made so that in the event of emergency, oil interiors can be fitted and the signals lighted by oil. This also has the advantage of keeping a standard lamp for all systems of lighting on the line, as the lamps for gas lighting have the burners arranged to lie flat

so that an oil interior can be put in should the gas be cut off in case of accident.

The interior case for oil burning contains an oil reservoir and burner, with a means for adjusting the height of the wick when the interior case is closed. Two sides of the case at least must be of glass, as a lamp is fitted with front and back lights. The shape of the interior case should not be square but rectangular (unless some other method is adopted) to prevent the possibility of its being inserted in the outside case

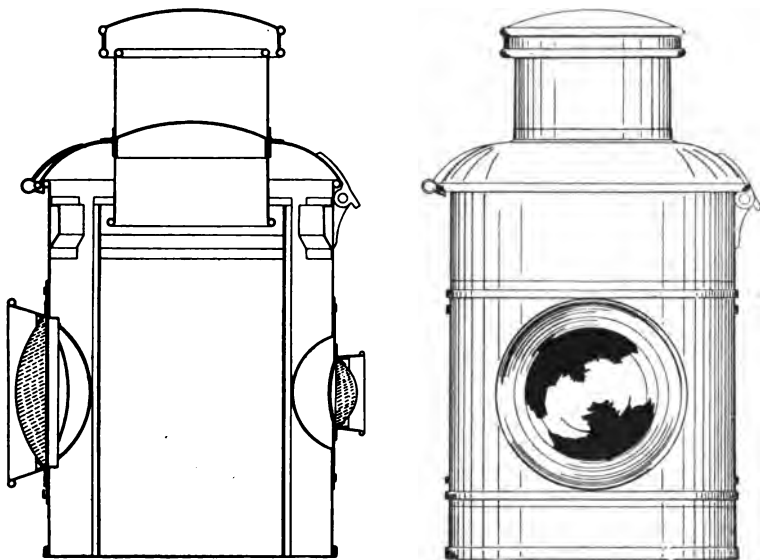


FIG. 78.—Lamp Case (Sheet Metal).

with its metal side facing the lenses (Fig. 79). The inner case must be strong enough to allow of its being carried from the lamp room at a station to the signals, which are often about three-quarters of a mile away, in the case of distant signals.

Ample ventilation must be provided, and a lid is fitted on top of a short chimney to prevent the light being blown out when being carried from the lamp room to the signal. It is usually arranged that it is impossible for the lid of the exterior case to be shut down until the lid of the interior case has been opened up, thus ensuring good air circulation. This is effected

by making the carrying handle of the inner case to lift the lid when it is pressed down, and unless the handle is pressed down it prevents the lid of the outer case from being closed.

The interior cases are made of No. 24 Standard Wire Gauge, charcoal tin plates, or copper sheets of about the same gauge.

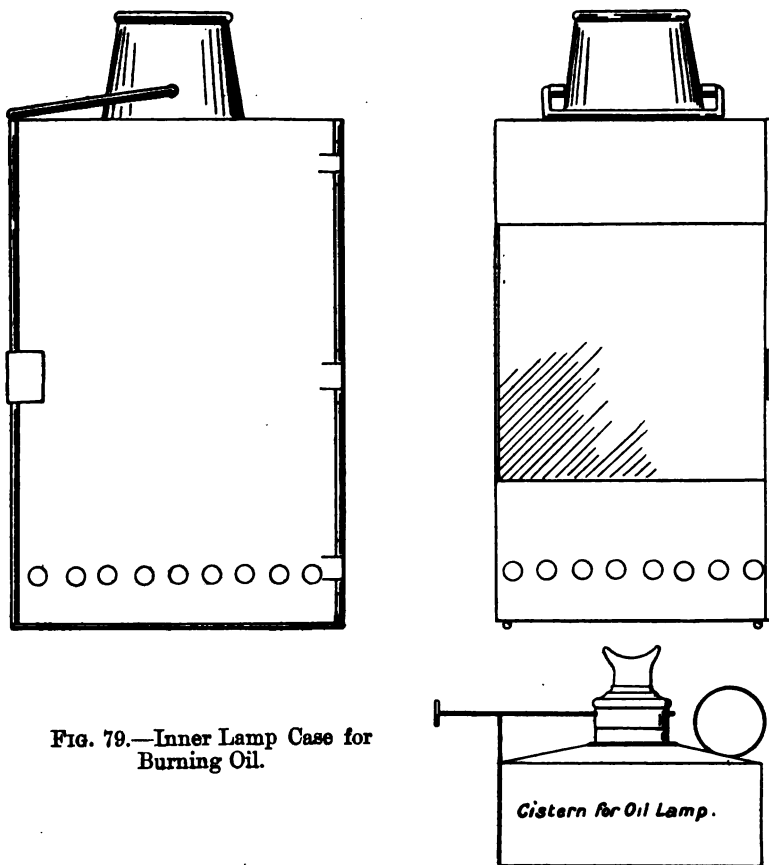


FIG. 79.—Inner Lamp Case for Burning Oil.

Common paraffin oil is used, and the cistern or reservoir usually holds about $1\frac{1}{4}$ pints. The size of the wick is usually $\frac{3}{8}$ in., and burns slightly less than one-third of an ounce per hour (16 ozs. = 1 pint) with a "Barton" vapour burner. The flame gives from 1 to 2 candle power.

In common lamps a 6-in. plano-convex lens with $3\frac{1}{2}$ ins. radius of curvature is generally employed, the correct distance for the flame from the plane of the lens being about 6 ins. If the signal is very high the flame of the lamp is raised above the centre of the lens in order to throw the light down. In the case of a ground signal the centre of the flame is placed below the centre of the lens to throw the rays upwards.

This size of lens suits main line signals, but where short arms are employed it is usual to keep the body and interior of the lamp the standard size, and fit a smaller lens about 3 ins. or 4 ins. diameter. If the standard size main line lamp is very large, it would look very much out of proportion if placed on a post carrying a short arm, in which case a smaller lamp should be adopted.

Of recent years several firms have placed on the market what are known as "Long Burning Lamps." These lamps are intended to burn for about seven days *continuously* without attention. A good quality oil is required, costing more than common paraffin, but the burners are designed to consume less oil than the ordinary $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. wick, although the long burning lamp consumes oil continuously, and the ordinary lamp only burns about fifteen hours per day on an average all the year round. The long burning lamps, when of good design, have been found to be less costly in upkeep so far as the oil bill is concerned; and where a large number of signals can be grouped in a convenient area, a man and a boy can be set apart to trim and keep them burning, visiting each lamp once per week, at a less labour cost than where each lamp has to be attended to each day. In addition to this, should a sudden darkness come on the lamps are always burning, and there is no necessity for sending out men to light the signal lamps.

The chief features of the long burning lamp are:—

1st. A burner which will give out an efficient light for seven days without the wick requiring attention.

2nd. A burner which will give out a good light on a *very* small consumption of oil.

3rd. A lens or reflector which will grasp the maximum amount of light rays and send them through the spectacle glass.

So far as the third item is concerned, it is obvious that with a common plano-convex lens, the nearer the flat side is to the flame the greater will the number of rays be that are grasped by the lens. But the nearer the lens is to the flame the shorter is the radius of curvature to suit the correct focal length. In practice it is not advisable to use a lens of less focal length than 8 ins. where the diameter of the flat is 6 ins., otherwise the thickness of the lens greatly retards the light. This can be partly obviated by using *stepped* lenses, but these again are more difficult to keep clean.

Items 2 and 1 are more difficult of solution, and existing burners are covered by the inventors' patents.

In all signal lamps a small lens for a back light is fitted, the lens being about $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. diameter. Should the face side of the signal be visible from the signal box the lens is generally covered up with a piece of metal. Where reflectors are used a small hole must be left in them to allow of this lens being illuminated.

It is usual to make the lens-holders capable of being moved slightly out of centre laterally, to allow the lamp to be set so as to show the light at an angle to the signal. This is often required where the line is on a curve. The angle of the cone of light sent out from a lens is not very great (with some lamps about 15 degrees), and the cone must be set to show across the curve to give the driver the best possible view of the light. The lens is adjusted to suit the conditions after the signal has been erected.

GROUND SIGNALS.

There are three types of ground signals commonly in use.

1st. Discs which partially revolve, showing red or green to the driver as required.

2nd. Discs which are arranged to move downwards hiding the red target from the driver when showing clear.

3rd. A miniature semaphore arm, which properly speaking should not be termed a disc, but which serves the same purpose as a ground shunting signal.

The first class consists of a lamp case fitted with lenses

and round targets, showing red and green. (Some recent ones show white *or no light* for the danger position, with green for clear.)

The lamp case can be the same as used for the standard main line semaphore signals, and can be illuminated in the same manner, and with the same interior case and cistern if oil is adopted. The outer case is bolted to a face plate which is capable of moving through 90 degrees, and is operated by a

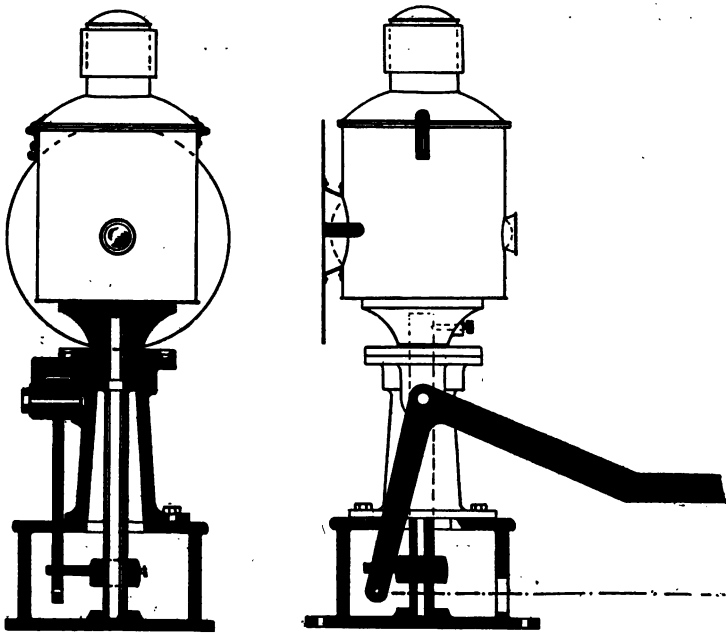


FIG. 80.—Ground Disc Signal.

crank and a counterbalance lever. When the counterbalance lever with weight attached is in its normal position, the red (or white) lens and target (Fig. 80) faces the driver; when the signal wire is pulled, the lever engages with the crank and moves the lamp round through 90 degrees; and in so doing moves the green lens and target to face the driver, the other target, of course, being moved away at the same time. In one variety of this signal, the body of the lamp is fixed immovably, and the targets are fastened to a framing which revolves.

This framing carries coloured glasses, there being a common white lens fixed in the stationary case (Fig. 81).

The stand to which the lamp and moving parts are fitted is made of cast iron with bearings and stops formed to suit the case.

In the 2nd type, the target is fixed to a casting, one end of which is free to move up and down, the opposite end being held in a bearing. This casting is connected by links to the counterbalance lever, so that when normal the target is up and faces the driver, when the signal wire is pulled the casting and target move down and the driver then sees the



FIG. 81.—Ground Disc Signal with Stationary Lamp Case.



FIG. 82.—Ground Disc Signal.

body of the signal and the *edge* of the target. The body is made of cast iron, and is fitted with the necessary bearings, &c., for the moving parts. Inside the cast-iron body a small interior lamp (if oil lighting is adopted) is placed. The lens is carried by the cast-iron body. The red glass is fitted to the moving target, and the green glass is fitted to a sliding carrier inside the body which is forced up by the target casting as the target is lowered. When the target is raised to its normal position the green slide falls down below the level of the lens (Fig. 82).

The target is counterbalanced, so that should the pins of

the connecting link come out, the target will automatically go to the danger position.

The lens of the back light is fitted to the main body casting, and the same slide, which carries the green glass, obscures the back light when the signal shows clear.

The 3rd type consists of a lamp, which may be the standard semaphore lamp, fixed on a casting. This casting is fitted with the necessary bearings and stops for the counterbalance weight lever, and provision made for fixing a small semaphore

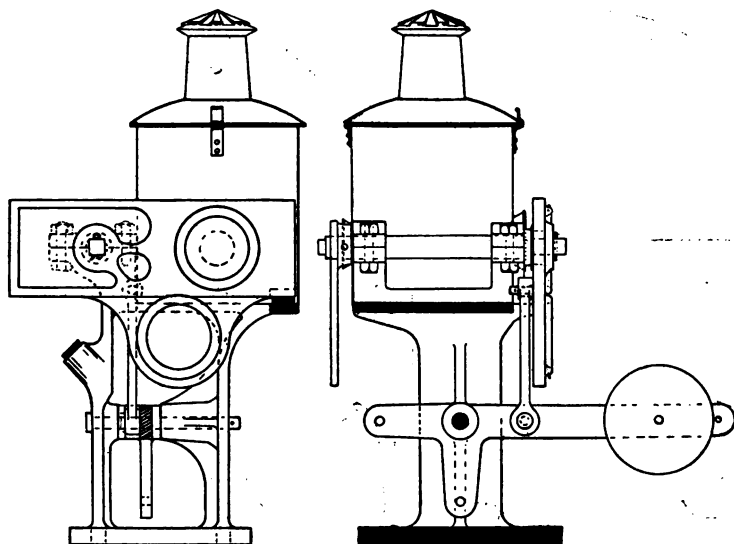


FIG. 83.—Ground Semaphore Signal.

arm to it. The arm is usually a casting with a small spectacle combined in the same casting (Fig. 83). Occasionally the portion of the semaphore projecting to the left is made of wood and hinged, so that it can be bent round against the lamp without being damaged. Springs are provided to bring the end of the semaphore back in line with the spectacle again, should it be so bent round by accident. The miniature semaphore signal possesses the following good points:—

1st. The *position* of the arm denotes the indication to be conveyed. In the others the *colour* of the target, or the

absence of the target, is the indication for clear, and the *colour* or *presence* of the target the indication for danger.

2nd. Standard pattern lamp cases and interiors can be adopted, and the lamps are stationary.

3rd. The moving parts are few and of light weight, consequently it is mechanically efficient.

Some of the target signals can lay claim to one or even two of the above items, but no one type can lay claim to them all.

In all the types of shunting ground-signals the following

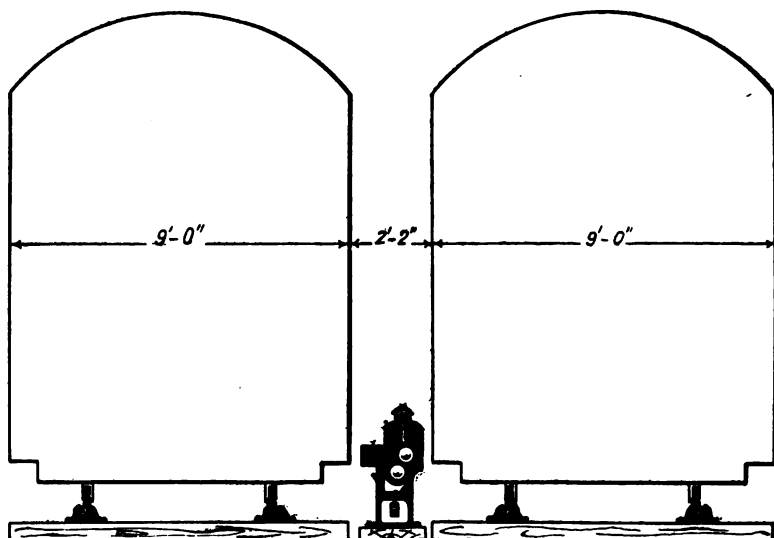


FIG. 84.—Load Gauge.

points must be observed:—

The over-all height of the signal must not exceed 3 ft. above rail level. This is the limit of height for any structure which requires to be fixed in a 6-ft. space between main running lines, and as this is a very common position for disc signals to occupy, it is essential that this rule should be observed (Fig. 84).

The width of the signal over all should not be more than 18 ins. for the same reason. Eighteen inches width only allows a clearance of 4 ins. between the signal and load gauge

on either side. They should be so designed that it is possible to place one signal above another, the combined height not to exceed the 3 ft. above rail level. It is sometimes necessary to have a double signal (the top arm or disc reading to the left) which is capable of being placed in a 6-ft. space.

The bases should be made so that they can be attached, by means of coach screws, to timbers fixed in the ground; or, if necessary, they should be capable of being fixed on a short post to increase their height.

The lens should be small, about 2 ins. diameter, so as to be distinct from main line signals. All parts should be easily accessible for cleaning and oiling.

WIRES AND PULLEYS.

The wire used for working signals generally is made up of seven strands, the gauge of each strand being 16 or 18 S. W. G.,* and the pitch of the twist about $2\frac{3}{4}$ ins. to 3 ins. A good quality soft steel signal wire should have a breaking load of not less than 2,000 lbs.

In laying out wires the run should be as straight as possible; where right-angle bends have to be negotiated, a length of chain should be inserted for passing round the pulley wheel. If the wire itself passes round a pulley, it does not last long unless the pulley is of a very large diameter, and the wire well greased. The size of these pulleys varies from 6 ins. to 24 ins. diameter, the most common size being 10 ins. (Fig. 85). Wheels placed near the signal box should be of larger diameter than those placed nearer the signal post, as the travel of the wire is greatest at the signal box. These pulleys, when placed outside the signal box, are usually horizontal, and are screwed down to timbers let into the ground. For leading up to the signal lever in the signal box, vertical or pedestal wheels are employed; these are attached to an upright casting (Fig. 86) which is bolted to timbers. At the signal a swivel pulley, or socket pulley is used, the swivel being

* S. W. G. = Standard wire gauge.

fastened to the base of the post (Fig. 87) which allows it to move round to suit the direction of the run of the wires. The timbers for pulley wheels are called "stools" or "horses," and consist of 4 ft. by 12 ins. by 6 ins. timbers spiked

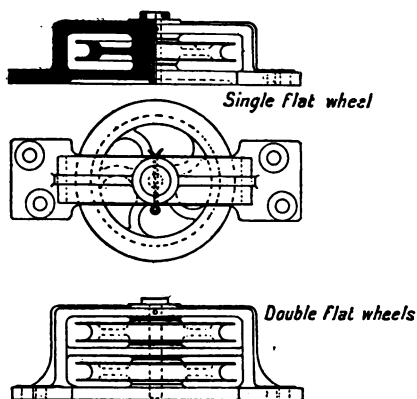


FIG. 85.

down to similar timbers which are let into the ground (see Fig. 88).

To support the wires on a straight run small wheels about 2 ins. diameter are employed; these are fastened either to wood

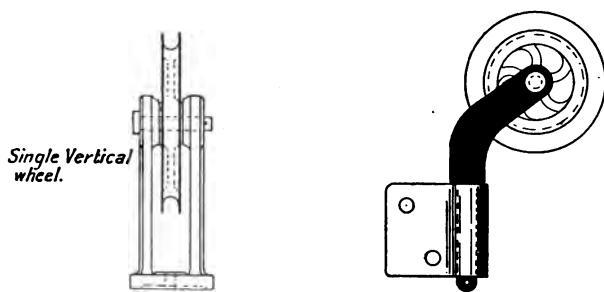


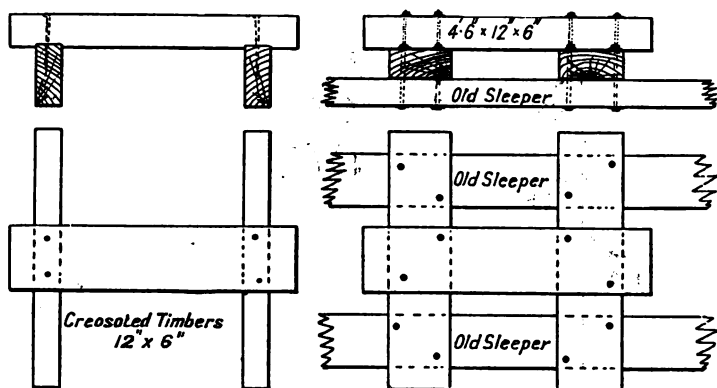
FIG. 86.

FIG. 87.—Swivel Wheel.

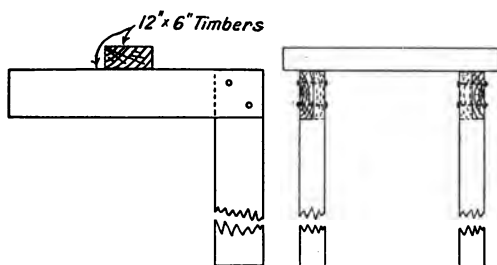
posts, 3 ins. by 3 ins., or iron stumps of channel section, $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. by $\frac{5}{8}$ in. by $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (Fig. 89). The pulleys are sometimes galvanised and are generally made of *pressed* steel, or cast iron.

Where a gradual curve requires to be negotiated "swivel"

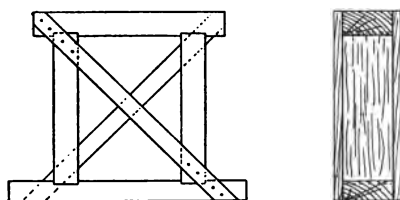
or "crown" pulleys are used, about 3 ins. diameter; these are fixed to stronger stumps, 4 ins. by 3 ins., or if made of iron are of T section, 2 ins. by $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{3}{16}$ in. The length of



A. Common Stool.



B. Stool for Edge of Embankment.



C. Small Common Stool.

FIG. 88.—Timber Stools.

stumps is about 3 ft. to 4 ft., and they are pitched about 25 ft. apart for a straight run and about 15 ft. on a curve.

Great care must be taken in setting out a run of wires to see

that they will not form an obstruction to shunters and others who have to work along the lines. If the wires cannot be moved out of the way of shunters, they must be kept very low down and be covered in with boxing or trunking (see

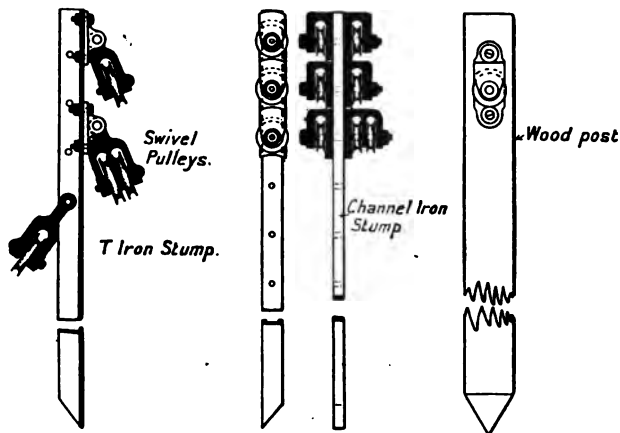


FIG. 89.

Fig. 128). Any wires crossing a path used by platelayers or workmen also have to be boxed in securely. Joints in the wire and joints between the wire and chain are usually made with eyelets or thimbles round which the wire passes, and are finished off with binding wire.

CHAPTER V

POINT CONNECTIONS

WHERE two lines join together, the rails have to be laid down so as to ensure that the vehicles can run on to either line as required. The junction is effected by means of "points." There are two rails, free to slide, which are planed down to a point. The position of these rails, which are usually called "switches" (sometimes also called "point tongues," or "switch blades"), determines the direction of a vehicle when it runs over them in the *facing* direction.

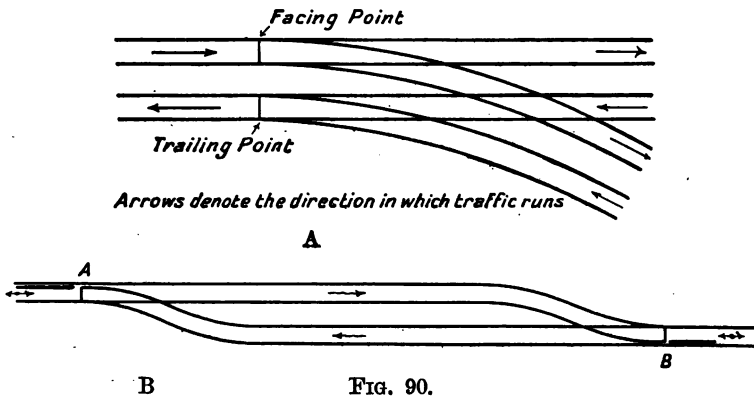


FIG. 90.

Points are generally classed as **FACING POINTS** or **TRAILING POINTS**. They are called "facing-points" when a train travels towards them in the direction which admits of its being run to either of the *diverging* lines (see Fig. 90, A). A train running *from* one of the two lines in the *converging* direction is said to *trail* through the points; when the points are so laid that for trains running in the correct direction on the line in question, the points are trailed through, the points are then termed "Trailing Points."

FIG. 90, B shows a passing loop on a single line of railway. The points lettered "A" and "B" act as both facing and trailing points. Trains running from left to right run over "A" in the facing direction, and over "B" in the trailing direction, but trains running from right to left run over "B" in the facing and "A" in the trailing direction. In cases of this description, where points may be run over in both directions, they are classed as "Facing Points."

For cross-over roads and the majority of siding connections, the points are laid down as trailing points, so that a train requires to move *backwards* to run over the points in their *facing* direction.

At any pair of points, should both of the switch blades be close against the main rails (these are called "stock" rails) (see Fig. 92, A), a vehicle in running over them in the facing

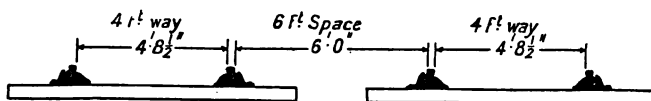


FIG. 91.

direction would mount one or both of the blades, and possibly damage them; there is besides, the probability of the vehicle coming off the rails. Should both the blades be standing *away* from the stock rail (Fig. 92, B), a vehicle running over them in the facing direction would drop off the rails into the 4-ft. way.*

Besides derailing the vehicle the rails would most likely be damaged. This arrangement is sometimes used for TRAP POINTS where it is desired to derail a vehicle should it be moved too far, and where it is necessary to prevent the derailed vehicle from fouling adjacent lines.

Under ordinary circumstances, however, neither of these arrangements is required. At ordinary "points" one blade

* The distance between two running rails is 4 ft. 8 1/2 ins., this being the standard gauge of all important lines in Great Britain, and is familiarly termed the "4 ft." The clear distance between the edges of the adjoining rails of the "up" and "down" roads of a double line railway is 6 ft., and is similarly termed the "6 ft." (Fig. 91).

must be tight up against the stock rail (see Fig. 92, c and d), whilst the other blade must be standing away from its stock

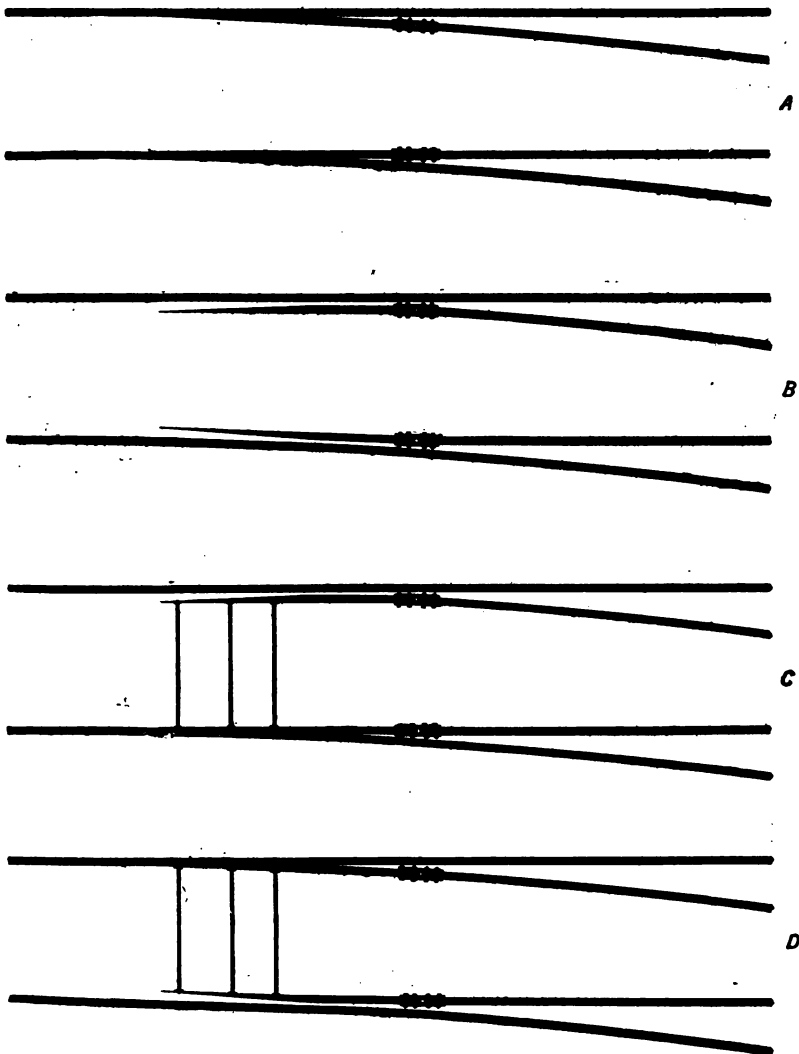


FIG. 92.

rail before a vehicle can run over them with safety. It will be seen that both blades must work together. To ensure that

this shall be the case the Board of Trade Rules state that there shall be two* connecting-rods between the blades, commonly called "stretcher rods" (see Fig. 93, B). These rods are designed so that the blade which stands open is about 4 ins. from the stock rail at the tip of the point. At the first connecting-rod the blades can move about $3\frac{3}{4}$ ins., and at the other end of the blade (called the "heel" of the points) the motion is, of course, *nil*. The blades are usually bolted at the

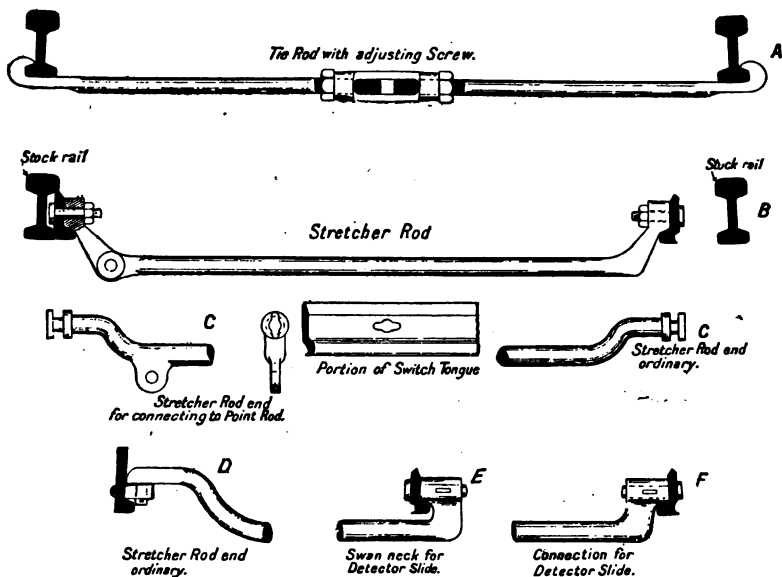


FIG. 93.

heel to the full-sized rail by means of fish-plates, but in some cases the blades are planed out of a full length rail, in which event there will be a few keyed chairs on the full section end of the blade before the fish-plate is reached. These are termed "heel-less" points, and any motion of the blades at the tip or "nose" *slightly* bends the rail.

With trailing points the connection to the lever working the points is made up at the first stretcher rod (counting from

* As a rule 3 connecting rods are used, and with very long switch blades 4 or even 5 may be fitted.

nose of points), where the travel is about $3\frac{3}{4}$ ins. In Great Britain the connections working the points have to be rods, although on the Continent wires are very extensively used.

The rods, generally called "point rods," are of various sections (Fig. 94), but perhaps the most ordinary type is round tube "rodding" about $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. external diameter, and about $\frac{7}{8}$ in. internal diameter. Several companies are now adopting round solid point rodding, whilst Channel section rodding $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. by $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. by $\frac{1}{4}$ in. is very much favoured by some companies, and T section rodding by others.

Point rodding is supplied in lengths of about 15 ft. to 16 ft., and to form a run of rodding the lengths have to be joined together. There are several types of joints. For hollow rodding a solid plug is welded into the tube at each end; this plug is screwed with the standard Whitworth thread (seven threads



FIG. 94.—Point Rod Sections.

per inch), and collars or couplings, with internal threads to suit, complete the joint (Fig. 95, A). The couplings are tightened up with pipe tongs, and the threads are so screwed on the rod, that it requires some force to tighten up the last three turns. This gives sufficient grip, and prevents the couplings unscrewing in service.

Another method of making a joint is to rivet a socket into one end of the tube, this socket having a slot cut in it to receive a cotter. The other end of the tube is also slotted, and when the spike of the socket is inserted in the end of the tube to be joined, the slotted holes allow a cotter to be driven through the tube and socket (Fig. 95, B). The end of the cotter is split to prevent its accidental withdrawal, and a small projection is formed on the top of the cotter to prevent its falling through the slot should it wear very slack through much use. With solid rods sometimes the screwed joint is used, or the ends are formed into tags as in Fig. 95, C, to allow of their being bolted together. With channel or T section

rodding the ends are generally butted together, and bolted up with fish-plates or cover straps (Fig. 95, D and E).

The rods are supported on rollers; these are of various designs to suit the various types of rods used. Whatever the type of roller, however, it is now universal to arrange the bearings of the roller wheel on the anti-friction principle. This is effected by allowing the pin forming the axis of the wheel to roll on its bearing, the bearing hole in the support-

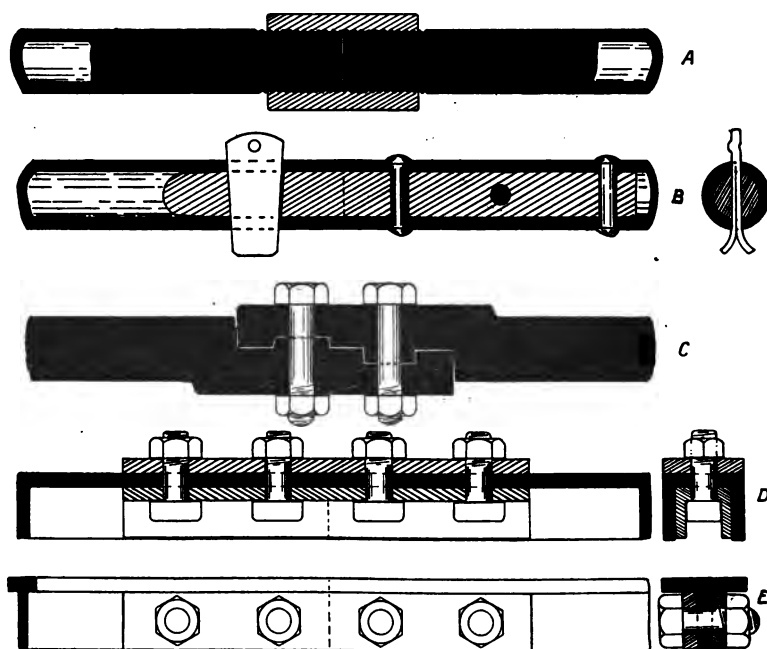


FIG. 95.—Point Rod Couplings.

ing frame being elongated for this purpose. The roller frames are designed so that a roller can be removed if damaged in service (Fig. 96), and a new one substituted without taking up the frame. The frames are also designed to allow of extensions being effected easily. Generally the framing for one roller is in halves, each being a separate casting made to check into each other, and held down to timbers with spikes or coach screws. If there is one rod laid down, each roller

requires two frame castings. To lay an additional rod, only one additional frame casting is required, as the roller fits into one of the existing frames on one side and into the additional frame on the other side. With some types (Fig. 96, A and B) a long pin runs through a hole in the top of all the frames in one row, and by this arrangement the frames are kept in line; but in the event of additional rollers being laid down, the existing pins have to be replaced by longer ones. With other types the connecting pins only couple up two frames (Fig. 96, C), the first pin being on the rear of the frame, the next

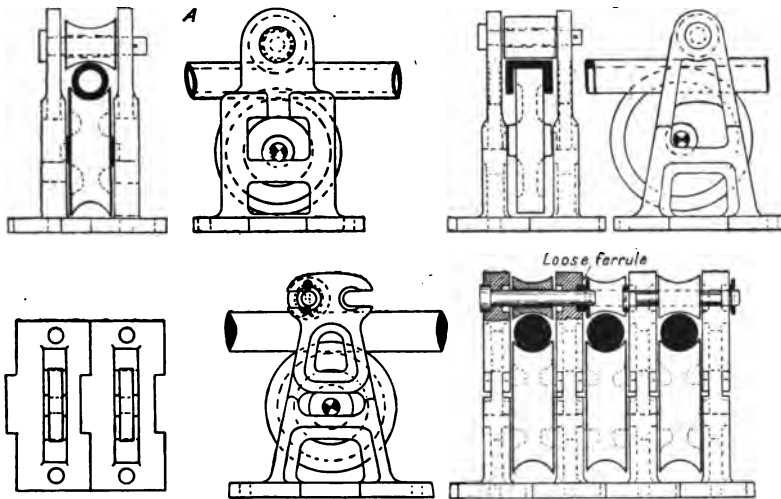


FIG. 96.—Point Rod Rollers and Frames.

pin coupling up the last frame and another one, and so on, the pins being placed first on one side of the frame and then on the other. These pins also act as bearings for small top rollers. With this arrangement all that requires to be stocked in the shape of standard castings for any width of rodding is *one* pattern roller frame, *one* pattern roller to support the rodding, and *one* top roller to assist in guiding the rodding, together with *one* standard pin for binding the frames together.

A common pitch for the rollers is 2½ ins. centre to centre.

Timber stools for supporting the rollers (Fig. 97) are made of creosoted wood, the sizes for the top of the stools being about 1 to 3 rods, 17 ins., 4 to 6 rods, 2 ft. 0½ in.

The stools are pitched about 7 ft. 6 ins. or 8 ft. apart for straight runs of rodding, but if a sharp curve has to be taken without the aid of relief cranks, then the pitch has to be reduced to meet the case and is usually 5 ft. Rodding should, however, be kept as straight as possible to ensure good working.

To connect a run of rodding to the stretcher rod of the points, a special end termed a *JOINT* is used. The joint is, as a rule, welded to a length of solid rod, and the other end

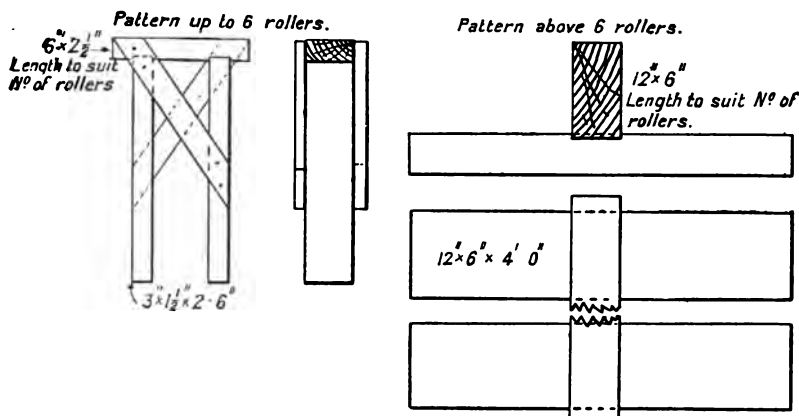


FIG. 97.—Timbers for Roller Frames.

of the rod either screwed, or otherwise finished off to suit the type of point rod coupling adopted (Fig. 98). These joints are of various sizes to suit the particular apparatus requiring to be connected up. Usually for point rods the pins for the joints are from $\frac{7}{8}$ in. to 1 in. diameter. It is convenient to have some of the joints adjustable for length, and this is effected by having a screwed joint, the end of the joint being tapped with a thread to fit on to a screwed piece of rod (Fig. 98, D).

The joint which connects to the stretcher rod is generally of the plain joint type, not screwed. The end of the rod to which the joint is welded, however, is screwed with a left-

hand thread, and screws into a socket. The opposite end of this socket has a right-hand thread with a piece of rod screwed to suit. The socket, or "barrel" as it is sometimes termed, has a nut formed on it, or some other convenient device to enable it to be rotated. The effect of turning the barrel is to lengthen

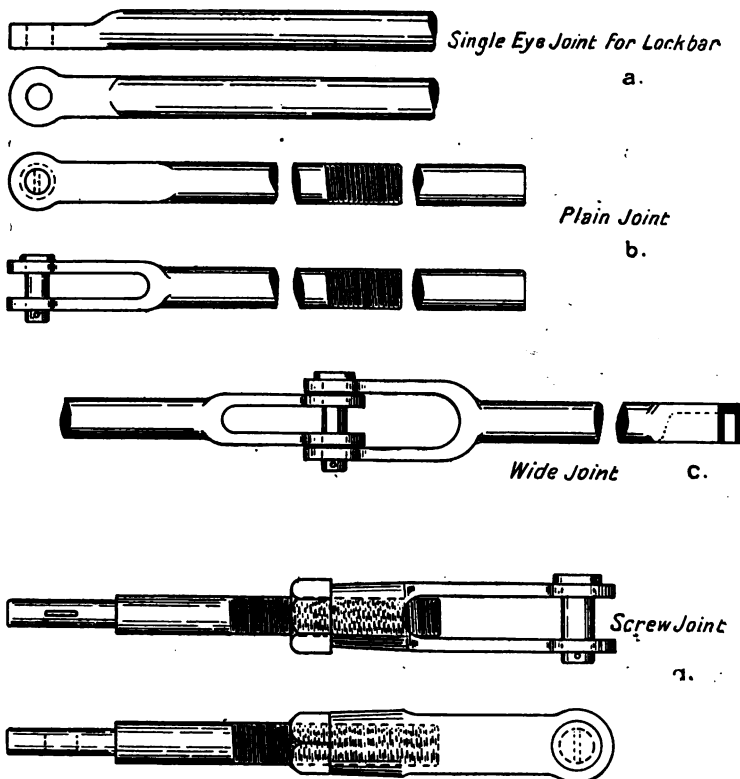


FIG. 98.

or shorten the rod (Fig. 99). This device is called an "adjusting screw" or "union screw coupling." There are several designs for this article. The type to be preferred is one which *exposes* the portion of the thread which is not actually enclosed in the tapped portion of the barrel. An enclosed type does not permit of inspection, and there is danger of the threads

becoming rusted and liable to fail. Where the end of the thread is exposed it enables the condition of the thread being detected before it can become unfit for service. All adjusting screws and screw joints are fitted with check or lock nuts, to prevent their working loose.

For transmitting motion round an angle of more than a few degrees, cranks are used, the most common type being right-angle or L cranks (Fig. 100). The cranks are made of wrought iron, cast iron, or cast steel. Forgings are very convenient in practice, as it is possible to set the arms up or down as may be required to suit a particular case. Cast-iron and cast-steel cranks are usually made with high and low arms as it is, of course, impracticable to set these on the ground. The boss or bearing of the crank should be of ample size to

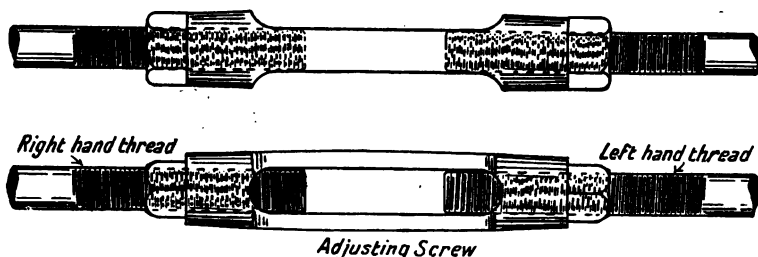


FIG. 99.

ensure a long term of use before it becomes too slack. The arms are made of various lengths, but for ordinary point work 10 ins. from centre of crank to centre of pin is most common. With forgings it is usual to have two holes in each arm, one at 10 ins. and another at $8\frac{1}{2}$ ins. (see Fig. 100, A, D, and F). This allows the travel of the rodding to be adjusted by moving the pin from the 10-in. hole to the $8\frac{1}{2}$ -in., or vice versa as may be required. With cast-iron cranks, however, it is difficult to design a strong crank with two holes in each arm, and there are, therefore, several pattern cranks in use with arms 10 ins. by 10 ins., 10 ins. by 9 ins., and 10 ins. by 11 ins. (Fig. 100, G, H and J). If the travel of the rodding requires altering at a particular crank it is necessary to put down a different crank to suit the case.

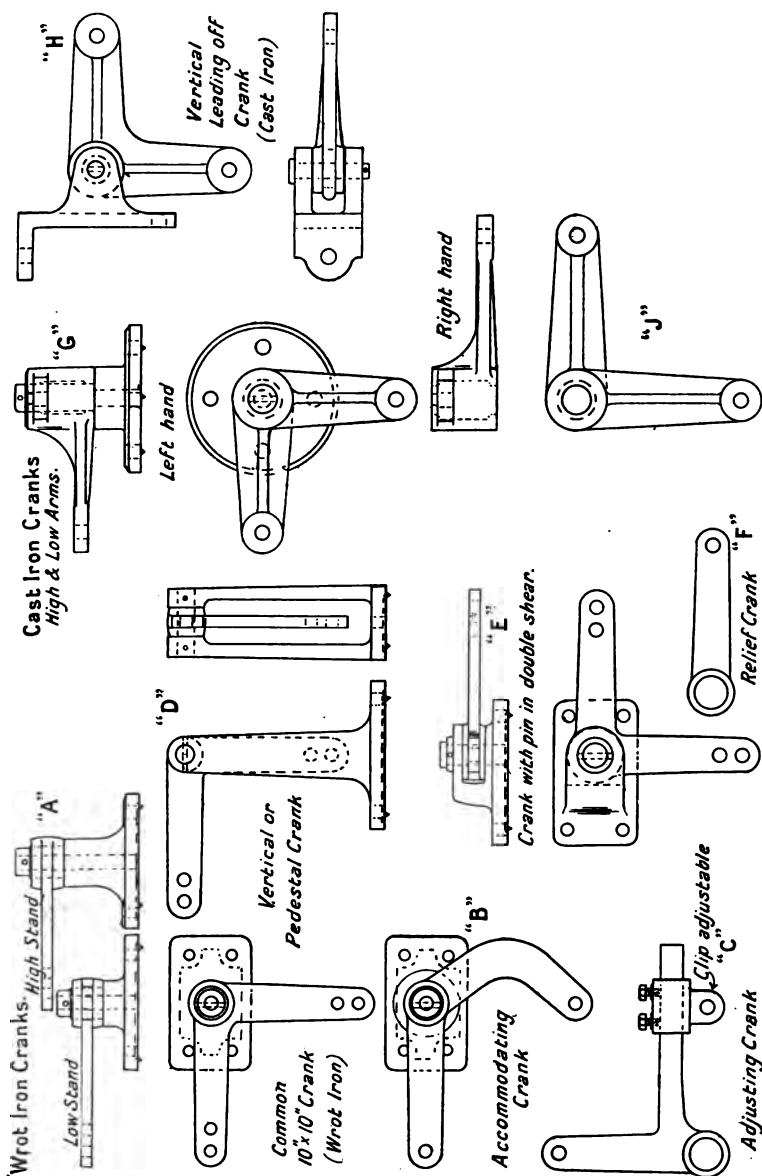


FIG. 100.

The stands for the cranks are, as a rule, of cast iron, the centre pin being of turned wrought iron. In some designs the centre pin is cast solid with the stand, but is chilled and sometimes strengthened with a wrought-iron core. Most designs have the centre pin so that the crank can be lifted straight off, the pin being in single shear (see Fig. 100, A and G); but some companies have a stand with the pin in double shear (see Fig. 100, E). This makes a stronger bearing, but not quite so convenient in use. It is sometimes necessary to use cranks in a vertical position, with upright stands to suit (Fig. 100, D and H). These stands are made of cast iron with two upright sides, with a turned wrought-iron pin, which pin is in double shear. Vertical cranks are generally used for leading a run of rods out of the signal box from the levers working them, and are either fixed with coach-screws to timbers fastened to the bottom floor of the signal box, or to timbers built into the face-wall of the signal box.

Ordinary horizontal cranks are generally fastened to timbers which have been creosoted, the size being 12 ins. by 6 ins., with the length to suit the case. It is often possible to fix several cranks on one length of timber. Coach screws about $\frac{7}{8}$ in. diameter are commonly used for holding down. The top timbers are spiked down to cross-pieces which are firmly bedded in the ballast. These stands are similar to those used for wheels (see Fig. 88). It is most important that the crank timbers shall have a firm hold in the ground, as any movement of the timbers puts the point connections out of adjustment.

FACING POINTS.

Where points are run over in the facing direction by passenger trains, the Board of Trade Rules require the points to be fitted with facing point locks, locking bars, and detectors. The facing point lock prevents the points from being moved either by accident, or by anyone attempting to operate them from the signal box, so long as the lock bolt is in the bolted position; also it ensures that the point blades are held tightly against the stock rail, even though the rodding working the

points be disconnected or damaged. The lock is made up of three simple parts.

(1) *The Lock Stretcher rod.* This is a piece of iron bolted to both of the switch blades about 5 ins. from the nose,* with one or two holes in it to allow the bolt to enter when the

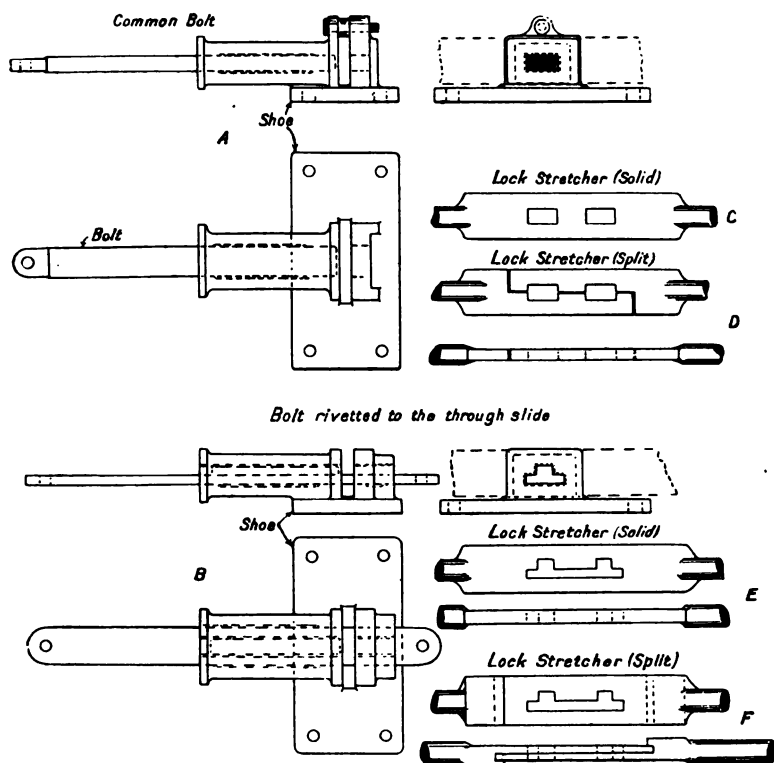


FIG. 101.

points are locked (Fig. 101). The stretcher usually is of a single piece of metal (Fig. 101, c and e), but in some designs there are two pieces one fastened to each blade (Fig. 101, d and f), with both ends coming together in the middle of the 4 ft., so that the bolt enters through holes in both pieces. These are termed "split stretchers."

* This dimension depends on the type of switch blades employed.

(2) *The Lock Bolt.* This is commonly a simple bar of iron of about 2 ins. by 1 in. section (Fig. 101, A). One end has a hole in it to allow it to be attached by means of a joint to the rodding working it. This bolt is moved in through holes in the lock stretchers when the points are bolted.

(3) *The Lock Shoe.* This is a casting designed to accommodate both the bolt and the lock stretcher, allowing each to move only in its proper plane. The lock shoe is fastened down with coach screws or through bolts to the same sleeper as the first slide chair of the points.

It is essential that the lock shoe shall be firmly fixed to the sleeper, as otherwise, although the bolt is in through the stretcher, the points cannot be held tightly against the stock rail; it is also very necessary that the first slide chair to which

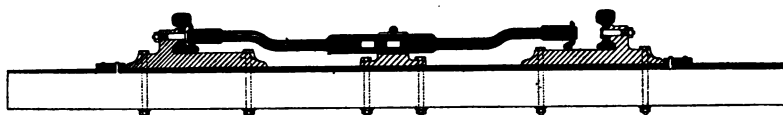


FIG. 102.—Steel Tie Plate.

the stock rail at the nose of the points is bolted shall be firmly fastened to the sleeper; otherwise although the point blades be held in the correct position, the stock rail might move away from the blades under the pressure of the wheels. In order to keep the stock rails to gauge at the points the Board of Trade Rules require iron or steel ties to be fitted, see Fig. 93, A; the tie holds the stock rails firmly together, but it does not prevent *both* of the stock rails from moving together and so leaving a space between the blades and the stock rail. It is now, therefore, considered desirable to fit all points, and especially facing points, with a steel tie plate which lies on top of the sleeper supporting the first slide chair (Fig. 102). To this tie plate strips are riveted which are fitted to the slide chairs outside, so that they form ties and prevent these chairs from spreading; and as the stock rails are bolted to the slide chairs, they also are prevented from spreading. The lock shoe is fixed on the top of this tie plate, the holes for the coach screws or holding-down bolts being drilled in the

plate to suit, as also for the spikes or bolts of the slide chairs.

In fitting the bolt to a set of facing points it is essential that the bolt shall only enter the hole in the stretcher when the blade is held *tightly* against the stock rail, and on no account must the end of the bolt be rounded or tapered off to allow it to enter easily and force the blades into position, as should this be done it is quite possible for some foreign matter to become jammed between the blades and the stock rail; and should the bolt be able to force the blades against the stock rail, the tip of the points would be forced open. Should the point rod be unable to place the blades in the correct position it must be impossible for the bolt to be moved through the hole in the lock stretcher.

In this way it will be seen that the bolt acts as a detector to the points, as, should the points not be properly "home," the bolt cannot be inserted. For easy working $\frac{1}{8}$ in. clearance between the stretcher and the *top* and *bottom* of the bolt can be allowed. The idea of using a split stretcher, as mentioned previously, was to detect both blades, thus ensuring that not only was one blade firmly held against the stock rail, but that the other corresponding blade was moved away from its stock rail to give clearance for the flange of the wheel to pass. With modern facing point gearing, however, the bolt is not regarded as being an efficient detector, as it is possible for the rodding working the bolt to be forced, although the bolt might not have entered into the hole in the stretcher, hence the split stretcher is falling into disuse.

Facing points are in most cases equipped so that the bolt can enter when the points are either NORMAL or REVERSED, and the lock is then termed a BOTHWAYS lock. This is the case of an ordinary running junction, where the trains can be sent in two directions. There are, however, many cases where the train is only required to run in one of the diverging directions, such as the points at a passing place on a single line (see Fig. 90 B). At a place as shown a train will only require to run in the directions indicated by the arrows. The points A and B are both FACING POINTS in one direction, but TRAILING

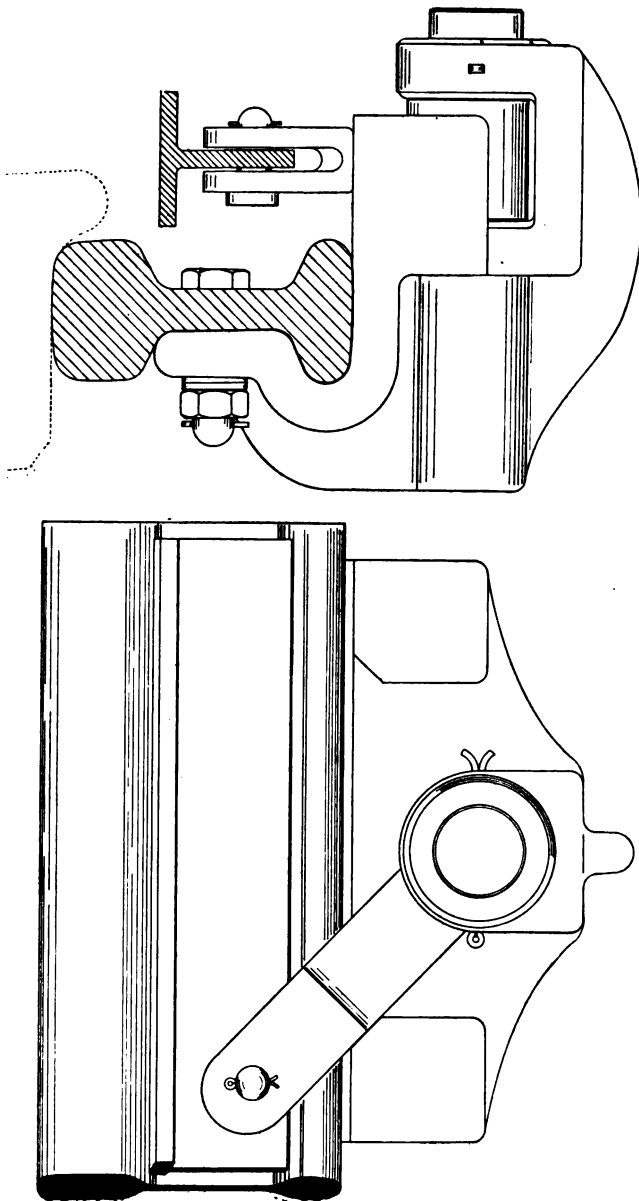


FIG. 103.—Inside Lock-bar.

POINTS in the reverse direction. A train must not be allowed to run from the single line on to the double portion in the *wrong* direction, hence the facing point locks at A and B lock the points ONE WAY only. That is, the bolt can only enter when the points are in their normal position; if the points are in the reverse position to allow a train to run *from* the double line portion on to the single line, it is not possible to insert the bolt.

Lock-Bars. The lock bar is a device for preventing the signalman from unbolting the facing points whilst a train is standing on, or running over them. There are two general classes of lock bars, inside and outside. The inside lock-bar is fitted to the rail so that it engages with the *flange* of the wheel (Fig. 103), whilst the outside lock bar engages with the *tread* of the wheel (Fig. 104).

A lock-bar generally is made of a length of T section iron, the usual sizes being from 3 ins. by $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{5}{16}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. by $\frac{1}{4}$ in.

The length of the bar depends on the length of the greatest distance between the wheels of the vehicles in use on the line. This, of course, varies greatly on different railways, the longest bars at present being about 50 ft. and the shortest about 18 ft. The majority are either 40 ft. or 33 ft. long. The bar is supported by short levers which work on "hangers" fitted to the stock rail, so arranged that when the bar is moved in a direction the same as its length, it rises slightly. This is effected by the supporting levers moving in an arc of a circle as shown in Fig. 105.

Normally the bar is down clear of the flanges of the wheels, but when it is moved, it rises up higher than the flanges, so that should any wheels be over the bar it is impossible for the bar to be moved up. The depth of a wheel flange is about $1\frac{1}{8}$ ins., and, allowing for wear, both in the tread of the wheel (making the flange deeper) and on the tread of the rail (letting

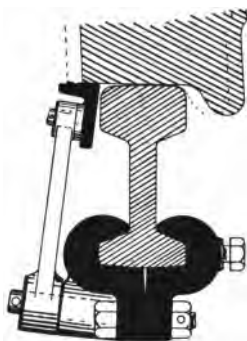


FIG. 104.—Outside Lock-bar.

the flange come lower down than when new), it is usual to arrange for the normal position of the bar being about $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. below the top of the rail, when both the bar and rail are new. This allows a clearance of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. between a new bar and wheel flange when a new rail is in use, so that the bar moves up this $\frac{1}{2}$ in. before it comes in contact with the flange of the wheel.

When the bar is fitted on the outside of the rail the top of the bar is very slightly below the top of the rail when both are new. When the bar is moved it rises above the top of the rail, the rise of this bar being about the same as in the case of the inside bar. The outside bar is not satisfactory unless the width of the tyres is considerably greater than the width of the rail; as it is that portion of the tread of the wheel over-

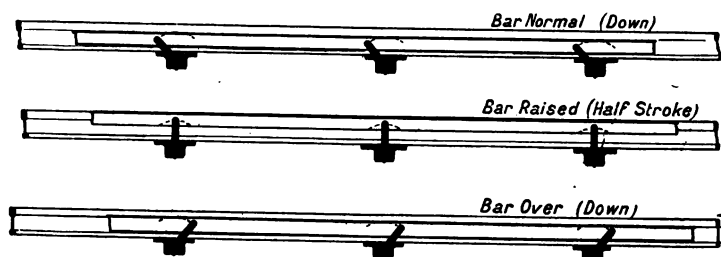


FIG. 105.

hanging the rail, which prevents the lock-bar from being moved. With the section of rail adopted as the British Standard Section it is not desirable to use outside lock-bars. To ensure that the bar shall always come in contact with the wheel, the bar is inclined slightly, so that it moves in towards the rail when it rises (see Fig. 104). Unless the fittings are maintained in first-class condition, and unless the rails are kept well to gauge, there is some risk of the lock-bar being forced over, *i.e.*, it may move away from the rail as it rises.

Angle section bars are often used for outside bars, or a special section bar may be adopted.

The levers on which the bar works are generally made of wrought iron or malleable cast iron, and are about 5 ins. or 6 ins. from centre of bearing to centre of pin. The "hanger," or

“clip,” which is bolted to the rail, and which supports the levers, is commonly made of cast iron or cast steel. It can be designed either for the bearing pin to be in single shear or double shear, the latter being preferable. It is generally designed with stops to limit the movement of the levers and sometimes is fitted with a guide to prevent the bar from being forced away from the rail (Fig. 106). Sometimes this guide takes the form of a separate casting bolted to the rail, or a projection cast on the chairs. The hangers are usually placed between each sleeper, and unless the section of the bar is extremely stiff, the greatest distance between the hangers should not exceed 4 ft. Within

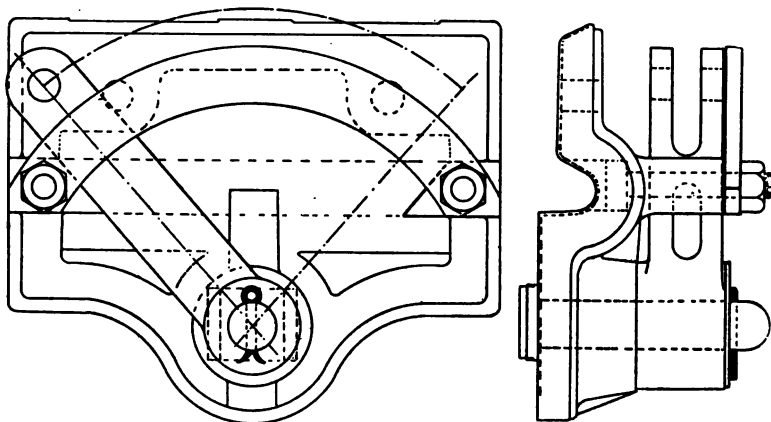


FIG. 106.—Lock-bar Rail Clip with Guide.

reasonable limits a bar works easier for every additional hanger.

It sometimes occurs that the lay-out of a station or junction does not permit of sufficient space being provided in front of the facing points to accommodate the lock-bar. In this case either two outside bars must be fitted alongside the points, one on each stock rail, or inside bars must be fitted to the point blades themselves. Outside bars offer no difficulty provided the section of rail is suitable for them. It is necessary for about 18 ins. of the bar to project in front of the point blades to protect them adequately.

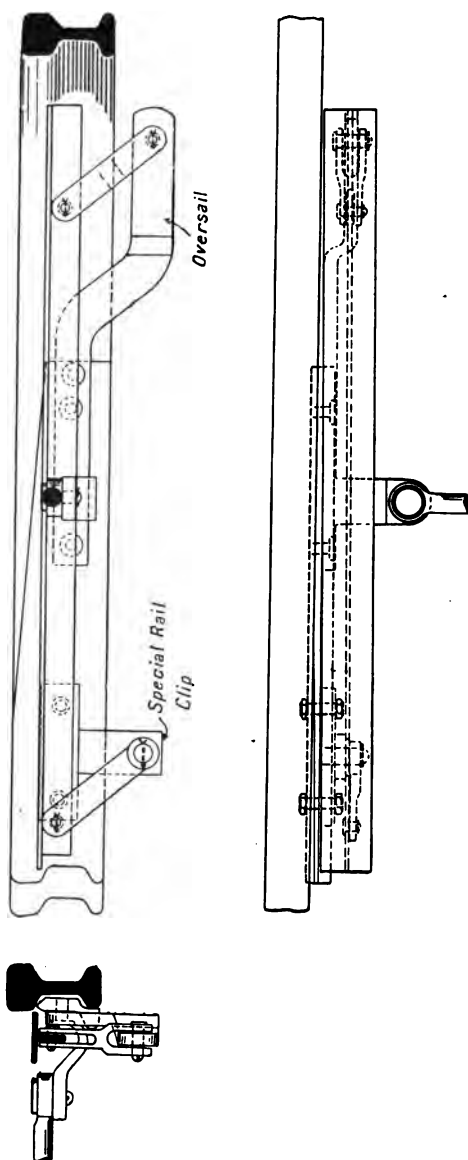


FIG. 107.

With inside bars fitted on the point blades some arrangement must be made for supporting the bar on the blades. If the lock-bar is 40 ft. long and the point blades 20 ft. long, practically one half of the bar is fitted to solid keyed rails and the other half is fitted to the moving blade. So long as the blade is the full section of the rail the ordinary pattern hangers can be used. As soon as the planed portion of the blade is encountered, special hangers have to be adopted to ensure that the bar is maintained at the correct distance from the running edge of the rail. Also some method has to be devised to support the 18-in. projection beyond the end of the blades. This is

done either by adopting an "over-sail" (Fig. 107) bolted to the blade, or a sliding bearing which is bolted to the stock

rail, but which allows the bar to slide along with the blades (Fig. 108).

Where the lock-bar requires to be fitted between the running rail and a check rail it is necessary to adopt a narrow section bar not more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ ins. wide.

The bars are driven by studs riveted to the stalk of the bar, to which an eye joint is fitted (see Fig. 98, A). With the bar between the running rail and the check rail this stud cannot be used, and a long stud is substituted, extending downwards

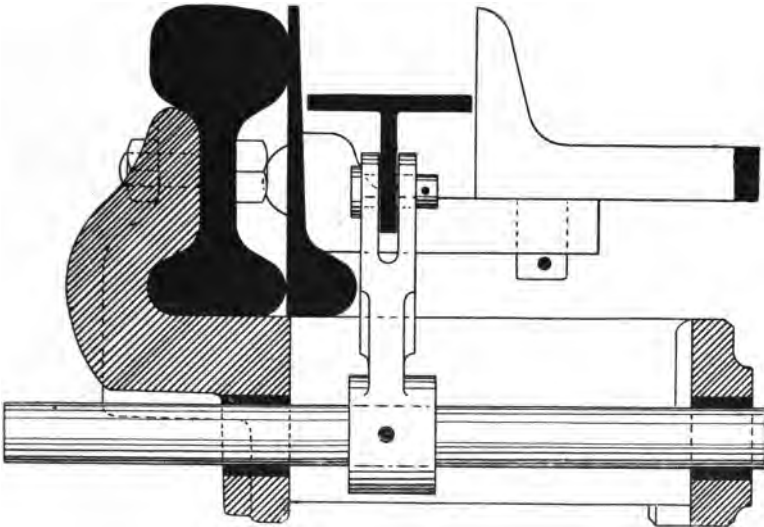


FIG. 108.—Sliding Bearing for Over-sailing Lock-bar.

below the level of the rail, which engages with a crank in a spotted hole (Fig. 109).

DETECTORS.

The purpose of providing a detector is to ensure that the points have been placed in the correct position for the train, before the signal applicable to that pair of points can be pulled to "clear." With facing points, the bolt ensures that the points are tight home, but in most cases it does not ensure that the points are set in the correct direction. Apart from this it is

quite possible for the connections between the signal box and the bolt to fail, in which case the bolt cannot be relied upon for efficient detection. Detectors are commonly divided into two classes—rod detectors and wire detectors. In the first mentioned, the connection from the signal box to work the signal is composed of point rodding up to the facing points; while with the wire detectors, ordinary signal wire is used

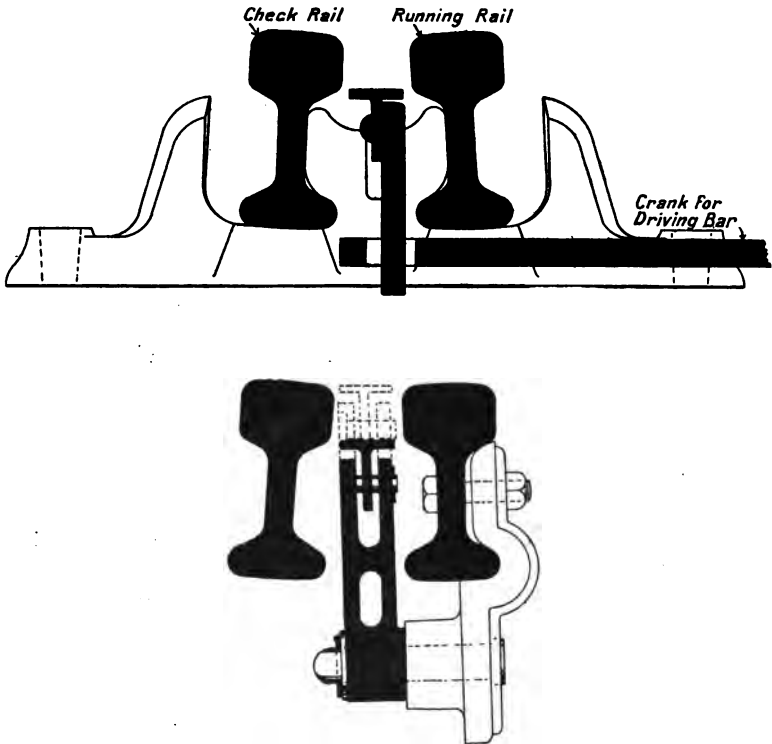


FIG. 109.

exclusively. In some modern installations electrical detectors have been employed.

- Whichever class of detector is used, it is necessary to run a rod from the nose of each point blade to the detector. In the detector there can be either (1) one slide for the points, in which case the rods from the two blades have to be combined through the medium of a "combining" bar, or (2) there are

two distinct slides in the detector, one for each blade. The point slide has a notch cut in it to register the position of the

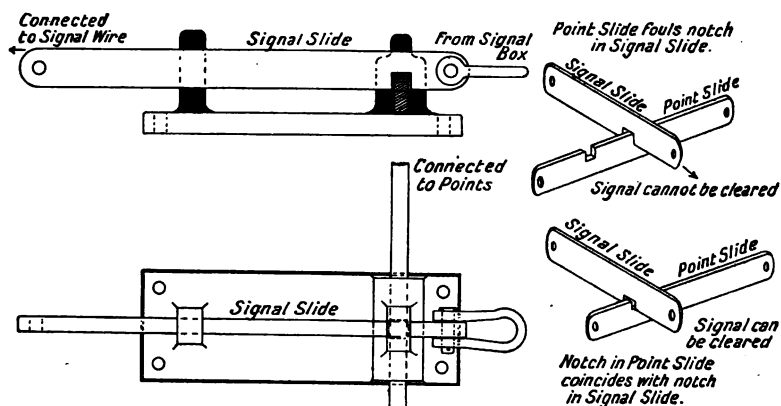


FIG. 110.

points (Fig. 110). Through this notch moves another slide worked by the connection to the signal. It is arranged so that

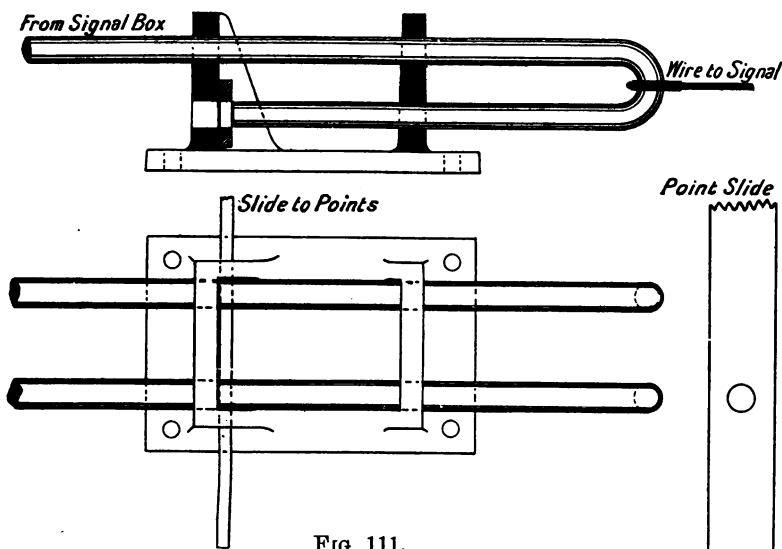


FIG. 111.

unless the points are in the correct position for the signal to be cleared the notch in the point slide does not coincide with

the notch in the signal slide, and this prevents the signal slide from being moved to pull off the signal. The signal slide can be of various designs. For rod operated slides it often takes the form of a bolt (Fig. 111). For wire operated slides it may be a plain slide working in guides with a hole at each end for the wire connection, as in Fig. 110, or it may be designed to move in an arc of a circle with an arm to which the signal wire is connected, as in Fig. 112. Allowance should be made for about 6 in. travel of the signal wire at the detector. What-

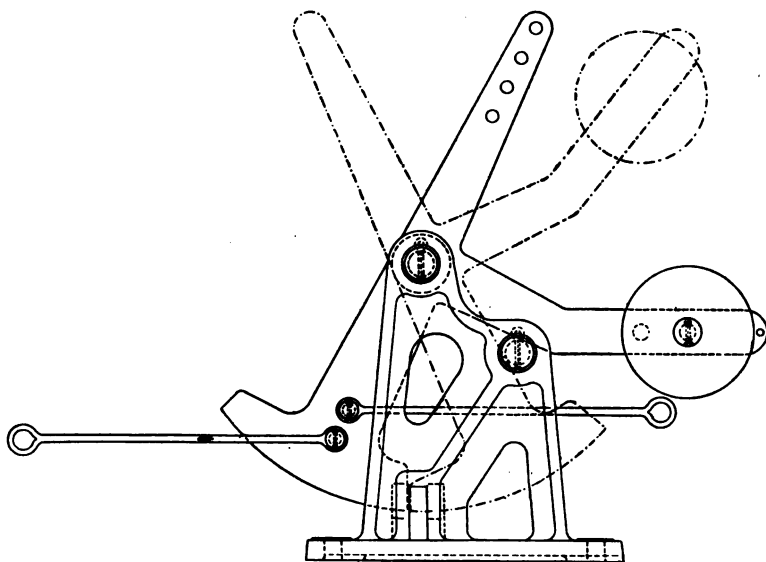


FIG. 112.—Counterbalanced Wire Detector "Hatchet" Type.

ever type of wire detector is employed, it is necessary to provide some form of counterbalance if the detector is to be fixed many yards from the signal box. If no means for counterbalancing the detector is adopted, in the event of the connection between the signal and the detector breaking when the signal is "off," the slide is certain to stick in the pulled position, thus holding the points and preventing their being reversed until the break is attended to. This also occurs should the operating wire get out of adjustment. With rod detectors, should the rodding

break, unless some device is adopted to assist in moving the rodding to the normal position, it is likely to cause the signal to hang "off" instead of flying to danger as required by the Board of Trade Rules.

Detectors are now commonly fixed to all points over which train movements are controlled by signals; hence many trailing points are fitted with detectors where trains back over them. They are adopted at all cross-over roads and siding connections to main lines. In these cases rod detectors are not used, as the signal usually detects a pair of points which are close to it. With disc and ground semaphore signals the detector is often incorporated with the counterbalance lever of the signal; if not, it is usual to use a short length of rod to connect the signal slide of the detector to the counterbalance lever of the signal; thus the one counterbalance weight serves to put the signal to danger and replace the signal slide of the detector.

CONNECTING UP FACING POINT GEAR.

There are many arrangements for connecting up the bolt, bar, detector slides, and point blades. The usual method is to have one lever to work the points, as in the case of trailing points, the points, of course, driving the point detector slide; then a separate lever is used to operate the lock-bar and bolt. Where the bolt locks the points in either position, the bolt sometimes is connected by means of a T lever to the lock-bar, and a connection from the signal box is taken to the arm of the T lever (see Fig. 115), so that both bar and bolt work simultaneously. Thus should there be a train on the bar it would be impossible for the bolt to be withdrawn. Should, however, the connection between the T lever and the bar fail, it would be possible for the bolt to be withdrawn without the bar moving. To prevent this it is usual to connect the bolt to the bar by means of a straight lever, and to make a separate connection by means of an L crank to the bar, so that the motion of the rodding from the signal box is transmitted to the bolt *via* the bar (Fig. 113), hence should the bar not move it is impossible for the bolt to move. This arrangement is theoretically better

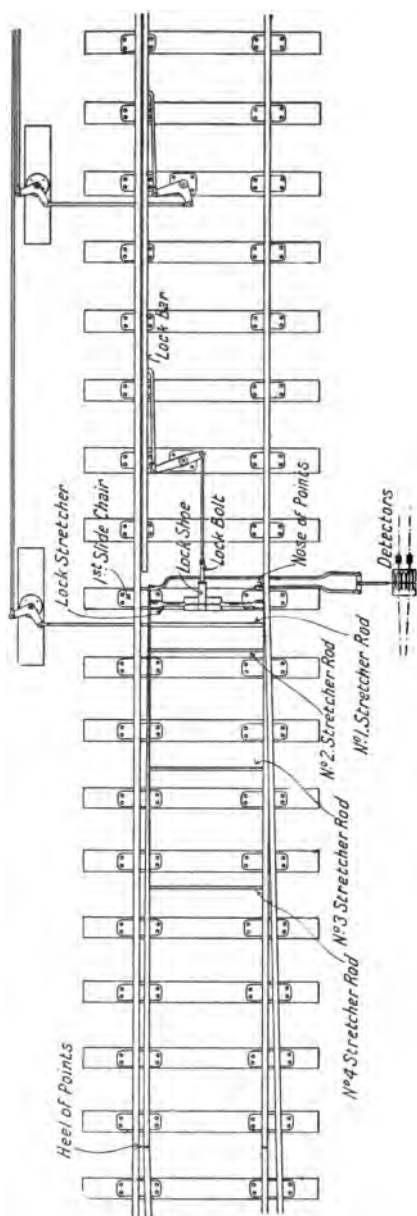


Fig. 113.—Facing Point Lay-out.

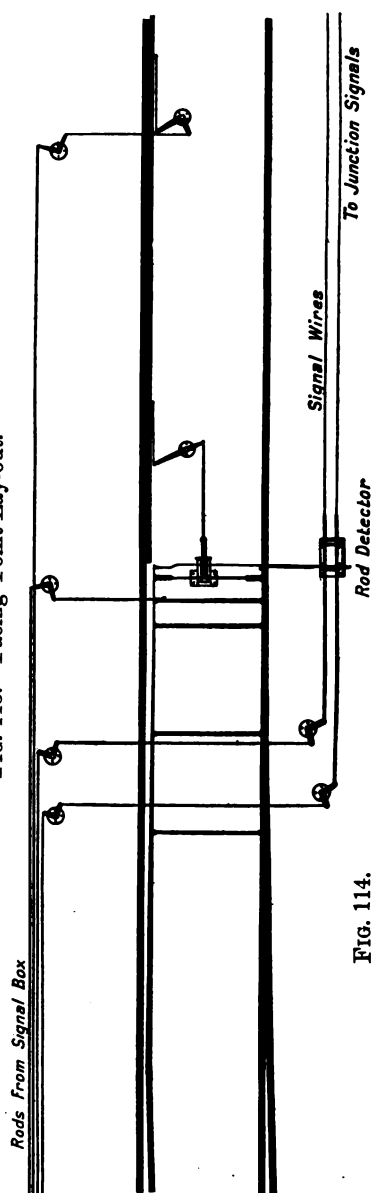


Fig. 114.

than the one using the T crank, but it employs more joints, and is therefore more costly to install and maintain. Fig. 114 shows a facing point lay-out with rod-worked detectors.

With facing points at a greater distance than 200 yards from the signal box (extreme limit 250 yards), it is necessary to detect the bolt in addition to the point blades. This is done by running a rod with an additional detector slide in the detector, so that unless both the blades and the bolt are all correctly placed, the notches in the slides do not coincide to allow the signal slide to move (Fig. 115).

Where a bolt detector is used it is essential that the connection shall be taken off the bolt itself, and not off any of the driving pins or connecting rods. Electrical methods are being largely used for detecting the bolt.

With the lock-bar and the points working on separate levers it is quite possible for the points to be moved under a running train *if the bolt has not been put in before the train arrives on the bar.*

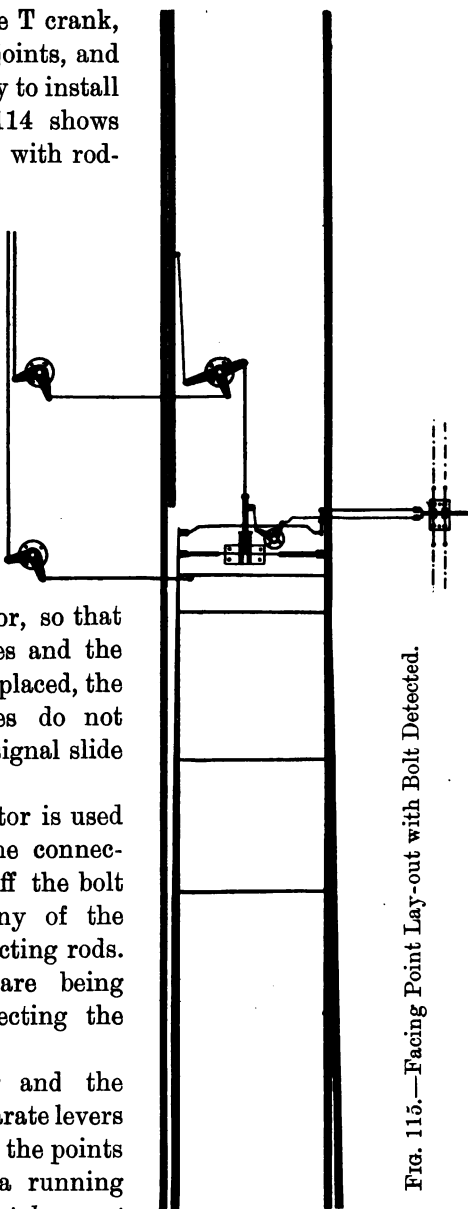


Fig. 115.—Facing Point Lay-out with Bolt Detected.

It is arranged, by interlocking the levers in the signal box, that the signals cannot be pulled to allow a train to run on to the points, unless the bolt lever has first been pulled; but should the train over-run the signal, or should the signal be put back to the danger position after the train has passed it, and before the train has reached the bar, it is possible for the train to be split on the facing points.

The latter contingency cannot happen if the signal is close to the facing points, as there would not be sufficient distance for the train to pass the signal without being on the lock-bar. Hence, unless some special arrangement is adopted to hold the facing points, the signal giving permission for the train to run over the points should be close to them. In the event of its not being so, an intermediate bar is fixed and interlocked with the signal and the facing point lock-bar, or electrical locking devices may be operated by the train, which maintain a lock on the facing point bar until the train has cleared the points.

There are several arrangements in use for working the points and bar simultaneously by means of one connection from the signal box. These arrangements are, as a rule, cheaper than the separately operated points and bar gears, but are much harder to work. They have, however, the advantage that it is impossible for the signalman to move the points whilst there is a train over them, as in all cases the bar moves every time the points are worked.

With these devices the points are always bolted except when they are actually moving. The first part of the travel of the connection from the signal box moves the bar and pulls out the bolt (or its equivalent). When the bolt is out, the points are moved across, either by means of an escape crank, as in Fig. 116, or some cam motion, as in Fig. 117, and then the bolt is returned to the bolted position, the bar being also lowered to its normal position.

In some cases the bolt moves out, and then in again, whilst in other types the bolt moves in one direction only, having two projections on it which engage with the stretcher to hold the points; one projection holding when the points are in one position, and the other projection when the points are reversed.

These arrangements are most commonly used where power working is employed to move the connections, but with ordinary manual working it is unusual to adopt combined point-and-bar gearing, unless stringent economy of first cost is essential. It might be mentioned, however, that one large English railway company has a combined point-and-bar apparatus as its standard facing point lay-out.

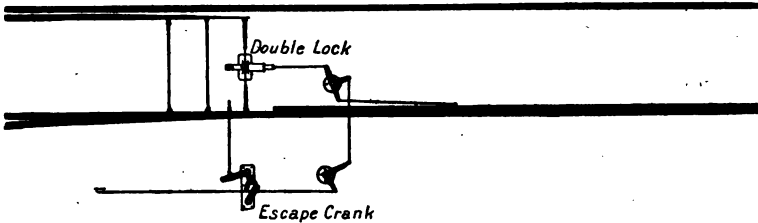


FIG. 116.

When the bars have to be placed alongside the stock rails or point blades instead of in front of them, as usual, two bars are employed, one bar protecting the points when the train runs in one direction, and the other bar serving when the points are reversed.

Only one bar, therefore, is used at a time, so that it is possible

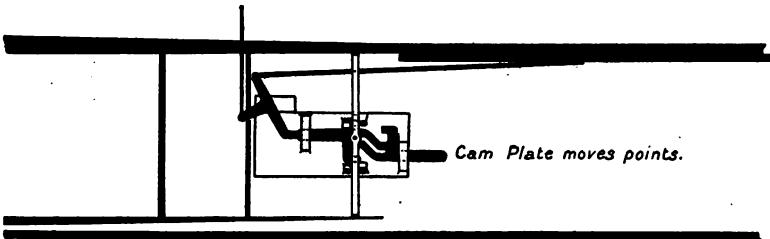


FIG. 117.

to employ a "disengager" or "selector" which allows the bar not acting as a protection to lie idle, the "disengager" being operated by the points (see Fig. 118). Another device consists of two separate connections from the signal box, one for each bar, and a double bolt in the 4 ft.; one bolt working with each bar, as in Fig. 119, the interlocking being so arranged that each signal is released by the bar which protects its particular route.

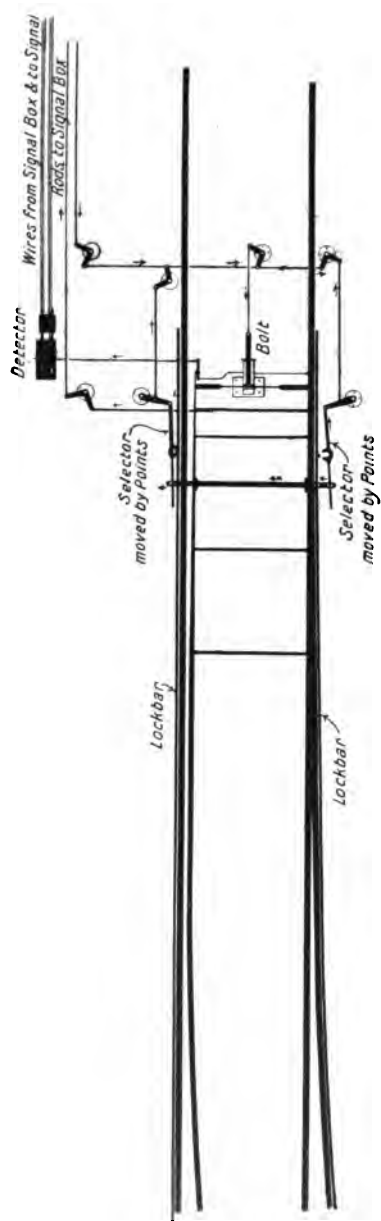


FIG. 118.

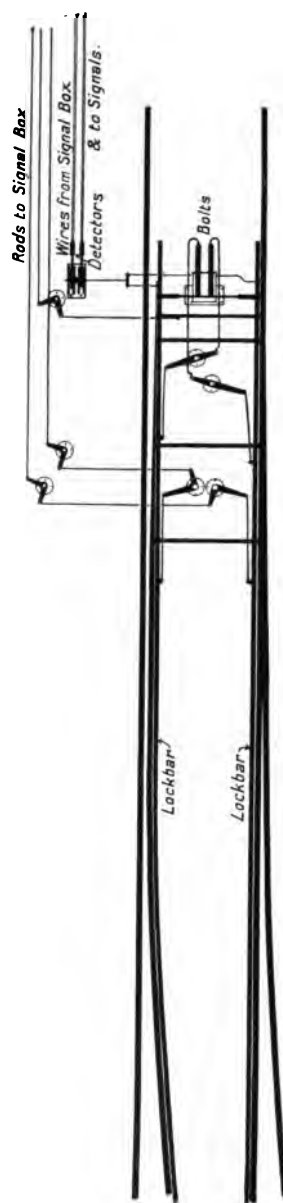


FIG. 119.

When power is employed to work the bars and points, it is common to connect both bars to the same motive power. With ordinary manual power, in many cases two bars are too heavy for operating, and two levers are then required.

With 50 ft. bars of stiff section, one bar alone is sufficient to move when it is any distance from the signal box. Several devices have been adopted to ease the motion, some taking the form of cranks with varying leverages, others employing some counterbalancing device, either a simple counterbalance weight or spring balance gear.

Either of these devices considerably eases the working of the bar.

CONNECTIONS FOR MOVABLE DIAMOND CROSSINGS.

The Board of Trade Rules limit the angle of a diamond crossing to a maximum flatness of 1 in 8. This seriously limits the speed of trains running round junctions branching off a straight line. To obviate this the crossings are sometimes made movable. They then form a double set of facing points, and have to be treated as such ; that is to say, they require to be fitted with bolts, bars and detectors. In these cases it is impossible for the bars to be placed in front of the facing point portion of the crossing, hence the bars must be placed alongside the moving portions of the crossing, and connected up as described for facing points. The point portion of the crossing is connected up like common facing points, but the two sets facing each other are coupled up to one connection from the signal box, as they both move together, but in opposite directions to set the crossing correctly for the trains to run over them (see Figs. 120, 121).

COMPENSATORS.

Where there is a run of rodding exposed to the sun or open air, it continually varies in length owing to variations of temperature. Rodding exposed to the sun varies much more than rodding which is covered. Unless some means be adopted to compensate for this variation of length, it would be

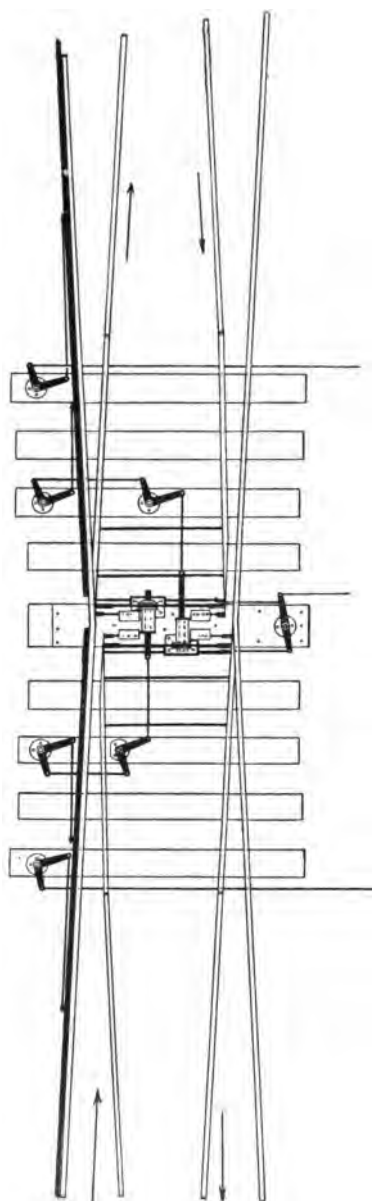


FIG. 120.—Movable Crossing (Electric Detection).

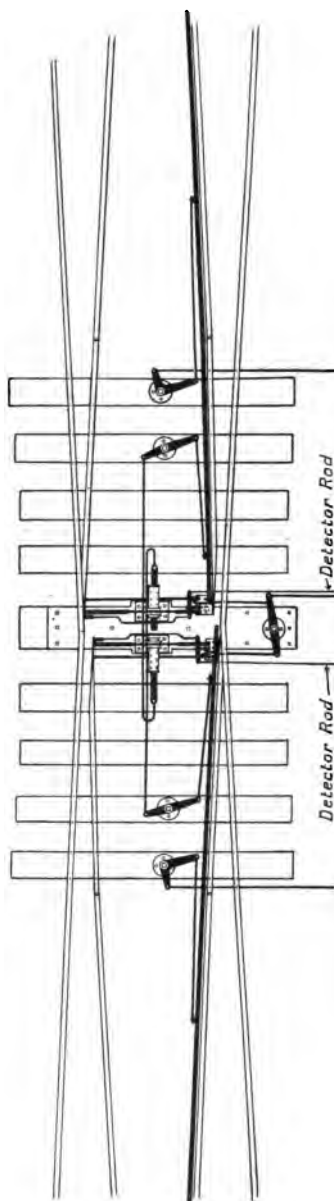


FIG. 121.—Movable Crossing (Mechanical Detection).

impossible to keep any point connections properly adjusted. For a variation of about 50 deg. F. a run of rodding 300 yards long would vary about $3\frac{1}{2}$ in., and when it is noted that the total travel of a pair of points is only about $3\frac{3}{4}$ in., it will be understood that fairly accurate compensation is necessary, so that the points may keep in correct adjustment during all changes of weather.

If two lengths of rodding are connected together by means of a straight lever, and the extreme ends of the rodding fixed, then if any variation of temperature occurs, each length of rodding will vary its length to the same amount, provided (1) the two lengths of rodding are equal, (2) the temperature of both is the same, at the same moment.

The lengthening of one rod moves the lever over in one

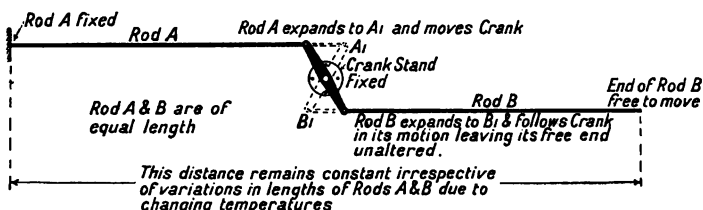


FIG. 122.

direction, but the lengthening of the other rod only assists to move the lever in the *same* direction, the motion of the rodding being reversed by the lever.

If now one end of the combined rods is fixed, and the other free to move, it is obvious that no variation of temperature can cause the free end to move. Should, however, the fixed end be moved, the free end will move to correspond, but in the *opposite direction* (Fig. 122).

Any device which reverses the direction of motion in a run of rodding can be utilised as a compensator. The straight lever is the simplest device, and is exclusively used on some railway companies. It may be arranged horizontally or vertically. If it is in the form of a vertical lever, there is difficulty experienced in boxing and covering in the run of rodding, as the lever is much higher than the rods. If it is

placed horizontally, it is difficult to use it in a run of rods containing many separate rods lying side by side.

Usually some arrangement of cranks to give a reversal of motion is employed, and a flat pattern is to be preferred as being the easiest to accommodate in a complicated run of rodding (Fig. 123, A). Vertical compensators usually take the form as shown in Fig. 123, C, but patterns are in use which are lowered to the same level as the rods; these give no

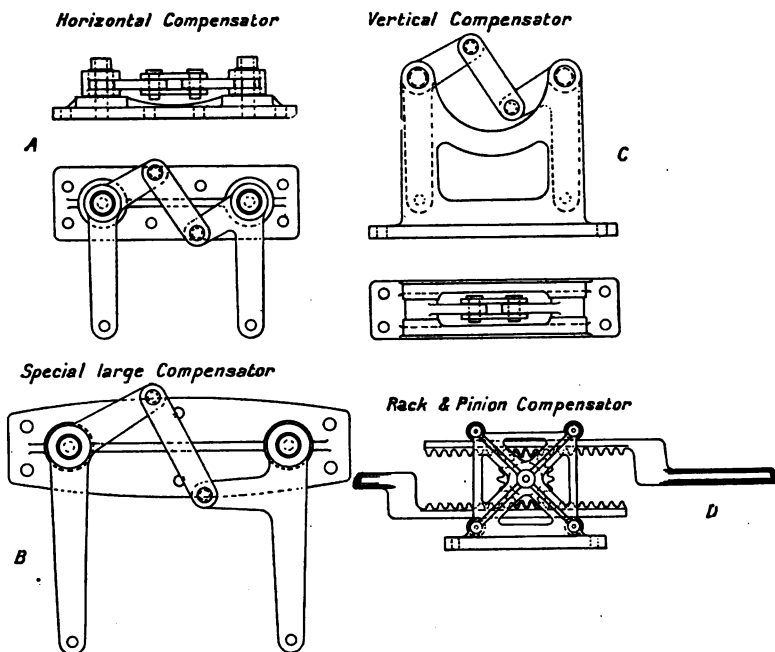


FIG. 123.

difficulty in regard to covering; but as they require a shallow pit to receive them, there is a liability of water and mud collecting in the pit, and in frosty weather freezing solid.

There is a pattern in the market using two racks and a pinion wheel (Fig. 123, D), and there is no difficulty in boxing these in, but should the teeth of the rack not be kept free from dirt, etc., friction makes them hard to work.

It is often convenient where rods have to cross the railway,

to arrange the crossing to be at the place required for compensators, then by fixing the cranks so that a *reversal* of motion takes place, compensation is effected without the use of a compensator, one of the cranks acting as a compensator (see Fig. 124).

In practice it is usually stated that there must be as much rod in *PULL* as there is in *PUSH*, meaning that the length of rodding under *compression* must be equal to that under *tension*.

This rule holds good for all cases of compensation so long as *each complete* length of rod compensated is *treated separately*.

It is of course essential that the compensator shall not alter

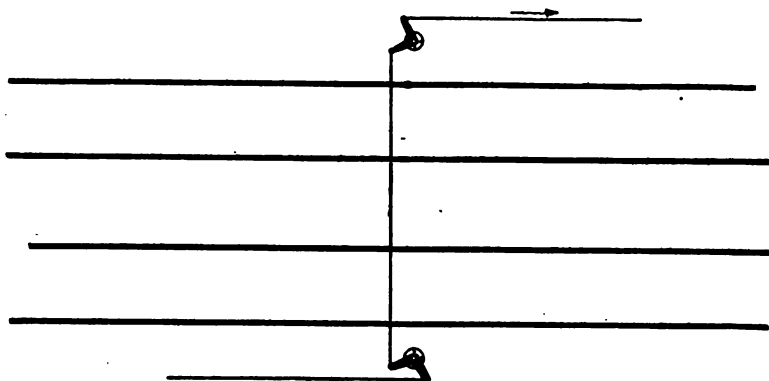


FIG. 124.—Crank acts as Compensator.

the *amount* of travel imparted to the rod; it must only alter the *direction* of travel.

Where a single-ended pair of points, or a lock-bar, is concerned, there is little difficulty in arranging for the compensation; only one compensator is required whatever the length of rodding (this refers to the length of rodding which can be used to work points within the Board of Trade limit). Should the total length of rodding be more than about 250 yards, a special long pattern compensator should be used, as compensators with 10 in. arms are not suitable for a greater range of variation in total length of the rodding than 7 in.

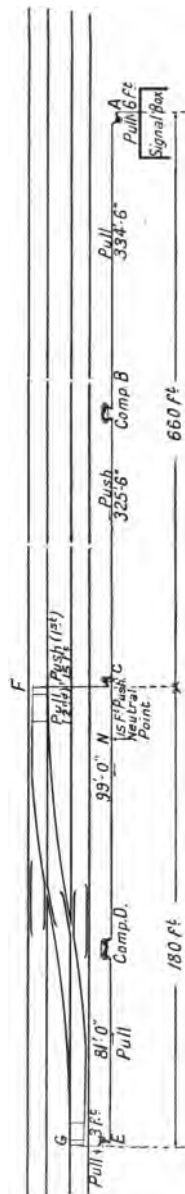


Fig. 125.

In the case of a cross-over road, or any other double-ended set of points worked by one length of rod connected up to the signal box, each end of the cross-over must be treated separately.

The end which is nearer to the signal box is treated as a single point, and compensated accordingly; the rodding connecting the extreme end of the cross-over road must also be treated separately, and a compensator fixed so that in this particular portion there shall be as much rod in tension as compression.

Taking a place as shown in Fig. 125, in laying out the cranks and compensators, it is desirable to commence at the signal box. Assuming that when the lever in the signal box is pulled, the rod is **PULLED** towards the box, the first crank will be arranged to transmit the motion unaltered. (By reversing this crank it could be made to transmit a push instead of a pull; it would then act as a part compensator, but this case will be considered later.)

Somewhere between the box and the points (near end) a compensator will be fixed, which will reverse the motion of the rodding, and at the crank marked **C** the motion will be *push*, the crank **C** being arranged to transmit this as a *push* in order to move the point blades in the correct direction. Having determined which portions of the rod are in *push* and which are in *pull*, we can fix the correct position of the compensator; we have on the **PULL** side the 6 ft. rod from the first crank to the box, and on the **PUSH** side we have the 15 ft.

length from crank **C** to the point blades. The total length of

rod from the box to the points is 681 ft., and as one half of this must be in PULL and the other half in PUSH, dividing by 2 gives 340 ft. 6 ins. as the lengths in PULL and PUSH; but we have fixed up already 6 ft. in PULL, therefore 334 ft. 6 in. of rod in PULL must be added to make up the 340 ft. 6 in. required. The position of the first compensator must therefore be 334 ft. 6 in. from the first crank. This leaves 325 ft. 6 in. (the remainder of the 660 ft. from box to points) to be in PUSH, and added to the 15 ft. already fixed as being in PUSH, completes the 340 ft. 6 in. required.

In arranging the cranks for the second portion of the cross-over it will be noted that the rodding at crank C is in PUSH; somewhere between this crank and the extreme end of the cross-over a compensator which will reverse the motion must be fixed, so that at crank marked E the rodding will PULL, and as the point blades require to be pulled to set the cross-over, the crank E must be set to transmit this pull unaltered. To fix the correct position of the compensator for this portion of the rodding, it is simplest to commence at the end of the cross-over marked F.

Assume for the moment that the rodding from C to the box is disconnected.

To move the points at F (say with a crowbar), the rod between that end and crank C will be *pulled*, and its length is 15 ft. Crank C *reverses* this motion to a PUSH, which now comes to the same direction as when worked from the signal box. We have, therefore, in PULL the 15 ft. rod from crank C to the points, also the 3 ft. rod from crank E to the points, making a total of 18 ft. of PULL already fixed up, and since the total length of the rodding concerned is 198 ft., of which 99 ft. must be in PULL, therefore 81 ft. of rodding must be added to the PULL side. This is the portion of rodding from crank E to the compensator, therefore the distance from crank C to the compensator must be the remaining 99 ft. of rodding in PUSH.

Another method of arriving at the position of "D" (the second compensator), is to consider that "B" (the first compensator) is so placed as to compensate for 15 ft. beyond the



Fig. 126.

crank C, so that it is possible to mark a position on the rod between that crank and compensator D which is a "neutral point"; that is, this point, 15 ft. from crank C, is unaffected by variations of temperature, therefore it is quite correct to commence from this neutral point (marked N) when fixing the position of compensator D. In this method the only piece of rod fixed up which is in pull is the 3 ft. length from crank E to the points. The total length of rod from the neutral point to the points G is 168 ft., and dividing by 2 we get 84 ft. as the amount to be in PUSH and PULL respectively; therefore, as we already have 3 ft. in PULL, 81 ft. must be added. This fixes the compensator 81 ft. from crank E, and 84 ft. from the neutral point, which makes it 99 ft. from crank C, this, of course, being the same result as given by the previous method.

Taking another case, as in Fig. 126:—Commencing at the signal box, we will assume that the first crank is made to *reverse* the motion of the rod from the box. If the rod from the box is in PULL, the rod after crank A will be in PUSH, after compensator B it will be in PULL, and at crank C it must be transmitted to the points F as a PUSH in order to set the points correctly. After compensator D the rod will be in PUSH, but at crank E it must be transmitted as a PULL to suit the points G.

Taking the "Neutral point" method:—As crank A reverses motion there will be a neutral point 26 ft. from crank A marked N 1. Crank C also reverses motion; therefore there will be a neutral point 15 ft. from that crank

towards crank A marked N 2. There are, then, two neutral points between which compensation has to be effected by compensator B. The distance between these neutral points = $(26 + 15)$ deducted from the distance which the end F of the points is from the box, viz., 720 ft., gives 679 ft., and dividing by 2 gives 339 ft. 6 in. of this rod as being in PUSH with a similar amount in PULL. Therefore compensator B must be fixed 339 ft. 6 in. from the neutral point N 1, which gives it as 365 ft. 6 in. from crank A.

For the second portion of the cross-over road, as crank E reverses motion, there will be a neutral point 3 ft. from it towards crank C, marked N 3. The compensator D has to be fixed equidistant from neutral point N 2 and neutral point N 3. The total distance between the neutral points is 192 ft., and dividing by 2 gives 96 ft. as the position of the compensator from N 2 or N 3, which is equal to 81 ft. from crank C.

In laying out rods and connecting them up to the signal box, it is usual to set the cranks on centre to allow the measurements for the lengths of the rods to be made. The positions of the compensators can be fixed on the ground by using a long piece of cord.* Commencing from the box, the cord is run out round the first crank (should it *not* reverse motion) on to the next crank, and round it to the points (should the crank there *not* reverse the motion); then the length of cord run out is doubled up, and by working back round the crank, the end of the doubled cord marks the correct position of the compensator, without any calculation. To fix the position of the second compensator, the cord is run out from the points to the crank opposite, and if this crank reverses motion, the distance just measured is laid along the route towards the extreme end of the points, thus marking the neutral point. Then holding the end of the cord at the neutral point, it is run out round the far crank (assuming it does not reverse motion) to the extreme end of the points, then doubled up, and the end of the doubled cord

* Chain or non-stretchable cord should be employed for *very* accurate work, but from a practical point of view a foot more or less makes no appreciable difference in the working of points.

marks the correct position of the second compensator, without any calculation.

To measure for the length of rods all the cranks should be fixed on centre, and the measurements taken from centre to centre. At the compensators, however, some allowance should be made according to the temperature prevailing when the rods are made up. In moderate temperature the cranks of the compensators would be set on centre the same as the other cranks; in frosty weather, however, the cranks of the compensator should be set slightly *outwards*, so that when the temperature becomes normal, the cranks will be on centre with the other cranks. Similarly, in very hot weather the cranks of the compensators should be set slightly *inwards*. The amount that the compensator cranks should be set out of centre depends on the length of rod being compensated, and the temperature prevailing at the time the rods are made up (see Fig. 127). Taking the average (normal) temperature as being 60 degrees, the following table gives the amount which the arms of the compensator should be set out of centre position for different lengths of rodding and varying temperatures. The figures are given to the nearest $\frac{1}{8}$ in. and are based on the coefficient of expansion for iron being .0000657.

ARM OF COMPENSATOR TO BE SET OUTWARDS OFF CENTRE.

Temperature in Degrees Fah.

Total Length of Rodding Compensated.					
	50 yards.	100 yards.	150 yards.	200 yards.	250 yards.
0	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	1 in.	$1\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ in.
20	$\frac{1}{4}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.	$\frac{5}{8}$ in.	$\frac{7}{8}$ in.	$1\frac{1}{8}$ in.
40	$\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{4}$ in.	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.
60	Arms set on centre for all lengths of rod.				
ARM OF COMPENSATOR TO BE SET INWARDS OFF CENTRE.					
80	$\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{4}$ in.	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.
100	$\frac{1}{4}$ in.	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$\frac{5}{8}$ in.	$\frac{7}{8}$ in.	$1\frac{1}{8}$ in.
120	$\frac{3}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{2}$ in.	1 in.	$1\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ in.

If some allowance is not made for the temperature when the compensators are fixed—unless they are fixed in mild weather—there is a liability of the compensators, in extreme weather, getting beyond their working limit off centre position.

In spite of every precaution in laying compensators accurately, as portions of rod are more exposed to the sun than other portions, in many cases it is impossible to obtain perfect compensation.

CONNECTING POINTS TO SIGNAL BOX.

In making the connection to the box complete, it is usual to arrange the travel of the rod as it leaves the box to be about 5 in.

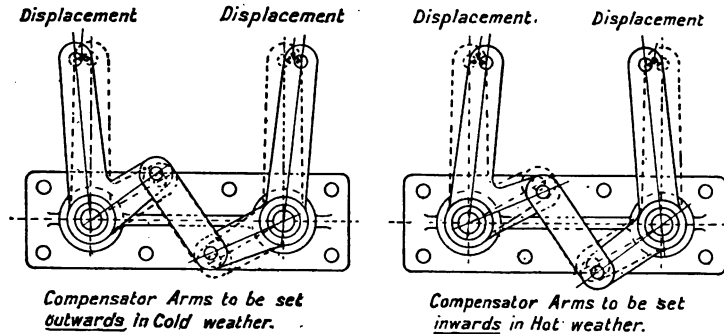
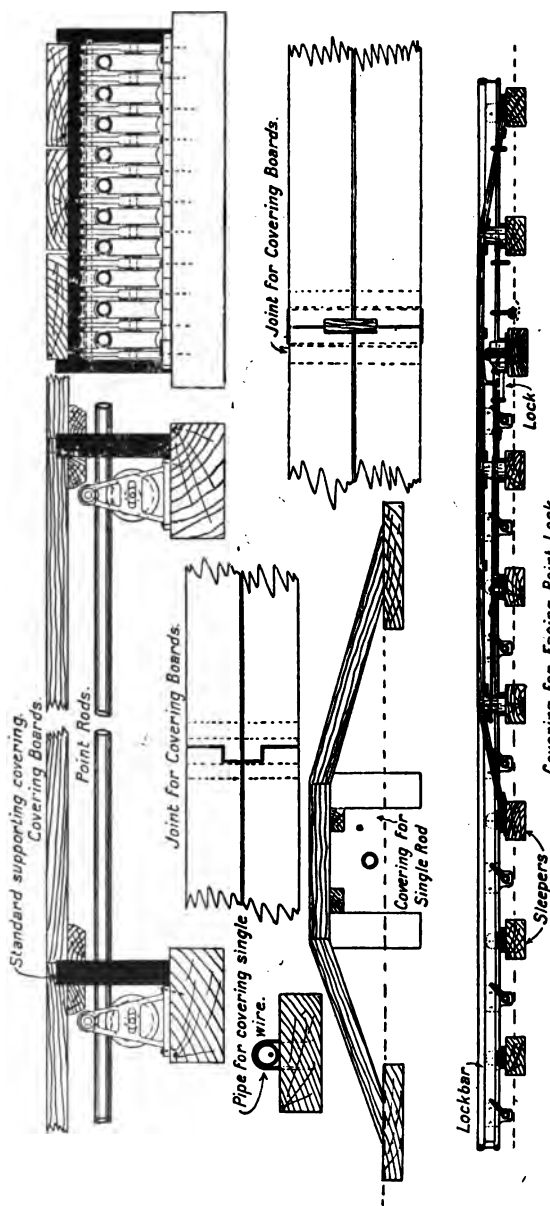


FIG. 127.

The cranks between the box and the near end of a double ended point connection should be equal-armed cranks, so that this 5 in. is unaltered down to the last crank at the points. There will be some loss of travel depending on the fit of the joint pins, and the rigidity, or otherwise, of the rods. The crank arms at the points should be made to reduce or increase the travel to suit the points. For ordinary points the travel required is about $3\frac{1}{2}$ in., and between the last crank and the points there is an adjusting screw, by means of which the points are regulated exactly, by tightening or slackening it out as required. There should be the same amount of tightness, or "nip," between the point blade and the stock rail, when the points are in the normal position, as when they are reversed. When the ends



of the point blades, which are nearer to the box, have been properly adjusted, the far end is connected up. The final crank at this end will require to give a slightly greater movement than the crank at the nearer end, as there will be a loss of travel owing to the additional joint pins, and additional length of rodding involved.

If adjusting cranks are used, there is no difficulty in arranging the travel to suit. In the case of wrought iron cranks with two holes in each arm, it is a matter of putting the joint either in the inner or outer hole; with cast-iron cranks, a different size of crank has to be used, with length of arm to suit the requirement.

It is very necessary to see that the points are travelling the correct amount, and should the gauge be slightly tight or slack at one end of the points, it is very difficult to make both ends work together properly.

COVERING.

When point rods are fixed in such a position that they are liable to form an obstruction to shunters, etc., they must be covered over or boxed in. Fig. 128 shows various types of coverings used. Where a run of rodding requires covering, it is advisable to keep the sides as open as possible for free ventilation, otherwise the rods rust up very quickly, and they are not so easy of inspection.

Facing point gear and point connecting rods are usually covered over with detachable coverings.

Creosoted timber in most cases is used for this work.

CHAPTER VI

INTERLOCKING APPARATUS

To enable the signalman to operate the points and signals from his box, levers are arranged in a row, to which the point rodding and signal wires are connected, the levers being interlocked to ensure that the signalman shall not clear conflicting signals, or have points and signals pulled together which could lead to a collision. The whole apparatus is commonly termed a "Locking Frame." This includes the levers, the interlocking, and the supporting framings.

There are many types of locking frames in use; these differ greatly in principle of operation and in design. The shape of the levers varies considerably, as does the main framing and locks. The levers, as a rule, are made to stand approximately vertical in the signal box when in the *NORMAL* position; when the levers are pulled they move through an arc of a circle and stand at an angle *outwards*. In some designs the lever is simply a straight piece of metal with a handle formed at the top; the lower portion of the lever is fitted into a bearing plate or "shoe" (Fig. 129). In most cases the connections from outside to the levers are led upwards, so that a "tail" is required at right angles to the lever for connecting purposes. The lever and the tail may be separate pieces, each bolted to the bearing plate. In other designs the lever is made in one piece and bent to form the "tail," and sometimes set so as to make the portion above floor level assume a vertical position when *NORMAL*.

The bearing plates are made of cast iron, and have pins fitted to them, on which the lever works. The pins in turn are supported on cast-iron sole plates (Fig. 130, A). With this arrangement it is possible to unbolt the lever and take it out without disturbing any other portion of the locking frame, a

very valuable arrangement when alterations have to be made while the frame is in service.

The length of tail can be altered to suit the particular purpose required, being about 18 in. for working points and about 2 ft. 3 in. for working a signal. It is sometimes arranged that the bearing plate accommodates a "back tail" with a weight

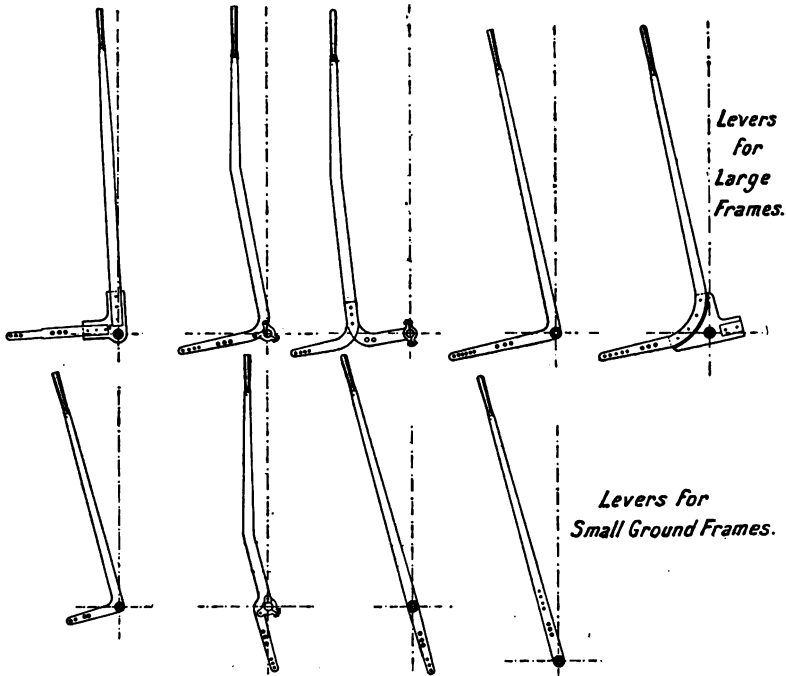


FIG. 129.

attached, which assists in pulling off a signal when the signal is a long distance from the box.

The bearings are placed about 3 ft. 0 in. to 4 ft. 0 in. below floor level, and the lever top is about 3 ft. 3 in. to 3 ft. 6 in. above floor level. To keep the levers apart, fill up the space between the levers, and at the same time to supply a "stopping" point at floor level, floor plates are bolted to angles, which in turn are fastened to upright supporting frames. Each floor plate can be taken off separately in case

of renewal. In some early patterns the levers are threaded on one long shaft, with distance collars to keep them apart, and the floor plates are threaded on a long through bolt, which extends the whole length of the frame, binding the supporting frames and floor plates together. With this type some difficulty is experienced in taking out a defective casting for renewal. It is very essential that any portion of a frame shall be capable of being taken out and replaced without

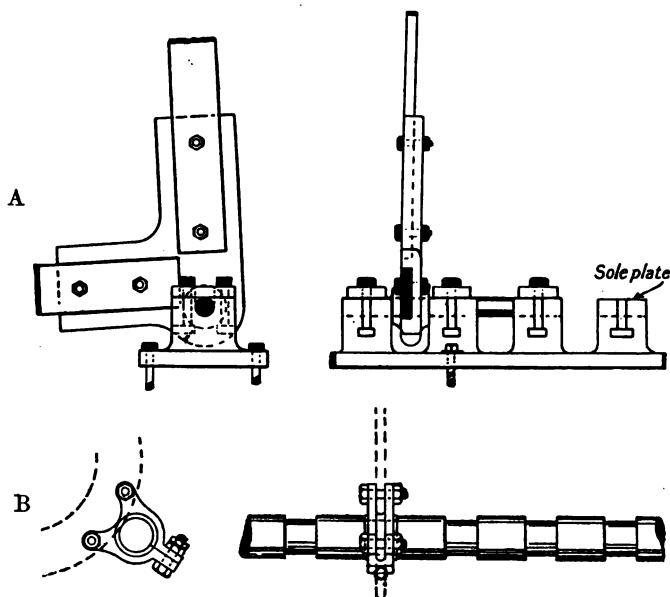


FIG. 130.—Bearings for Levers.

interfering with any other portion more than is absolutely necessary.

When the lever is all in one piece, a clip bearing is bolted on (Fig. 130, B), so that the lever can be taken out, or the bearing tightened up when worn, without interfering with any other lever. The clip is fitted to a shaft with recesses turned in it (the clip being in the recess), the full-sized portion of the shaft serving as a distance collar. The shaft is threaded through the supporting frames and held secure by set pins. The shaft does not enter more than half-way through the end

supporting frames, so that additional levers may be added without interfering with the existing portion of the frame. The recesses in the shaft fix the pitch of the levers, the usual pitch being either 4 in. or 5 in., although some patterns have $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. and $5\frac{1}{2}$ in. pitch. With a solid pattern lever it is not possible to change the length of the tail, so, to save any necessity for changing levers in case of an alteration, all the lever tails are, as a rule, made long enough to suit signals, but holes are drilled further back to suit points. There are several holes drilled in each tail to allow of the outdoor connections being regulated. The usual travel for a signal lever at the hole in the tail is about 7 in. for the hole nearest the lever bearing and about 12 in. from the furthest out hole. In the case of a point lever it is about $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. for the nearest hole, and about $6\frac{1}{2}$ in. for the furthest out hole.

To hold the levers in either the **NORMAL** or **OVER** position, catches are fitted to the levers. The catch engages in a projection on the floor plate, and is operated by a "catch handle" fitted near the top of the lever (Fig. 181). The catch may engage with the notch or strip of the floor plate, either by the help of a spring or by gravity alone. If gravity only is used, a heavy cast-iron "drop box" is fitted to the lever. In some old frames there were several notches in the floor plate for a signal lever, allowing it to be pulled varying amounts, according as the signal might work easily or not, and the travel of a point lever was less than the travel of a signal lever. In most modern frames, however, all the levers move through the same distance. The mechanical advantage in the case of a point lever is about 6 to 1, and about $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 as an average for signals. In pulling a lever, the hand moves about 30 in.

The supporting frames, called "standards," or "cheeks," are made of cast iron, usually of open design for lightness, and ribbed for strength (Fig. 132). Feet are cast on the standards to allow of their being bolted to a girder or beam, and arrangements have to be made for accommodating the bearings of the levers. The angle irons to which the floor plates are bolted and the locking must also be supported by the frame.

The frames should be designed so that where an extension is

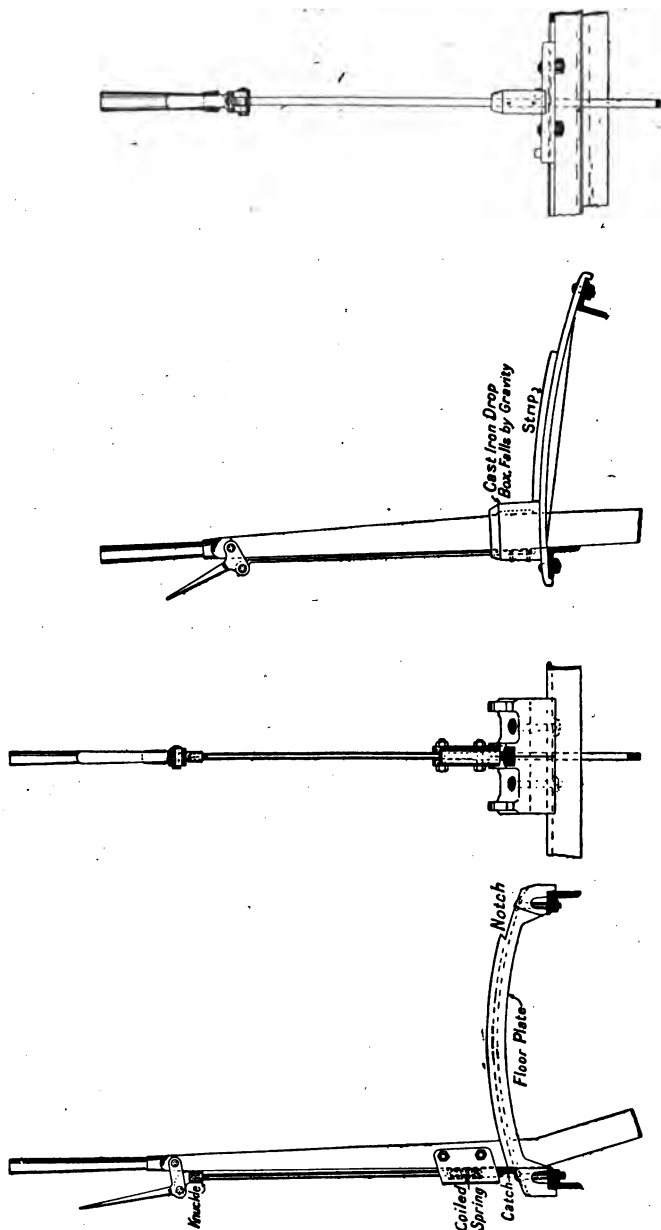


FIG. 131.

being made, additional levers can be inserted without necessitating the removal of the end standards of the old frame. It is usual to place a standard after every tenth lever, so that in a 30-lever frame there would be four standards, one at each end, and two intermediate. The spacing of these standards depends on the class of frame. Where the levers are pitched 6 in. apart, and in some patterns where the pitch of the levers is $5\frac{1}{2}$ in., the standards are placed after each set of eight levers. It is desirable to have the spacing of the standards invariable, as it allows of fewer castings being stocked for repair work.

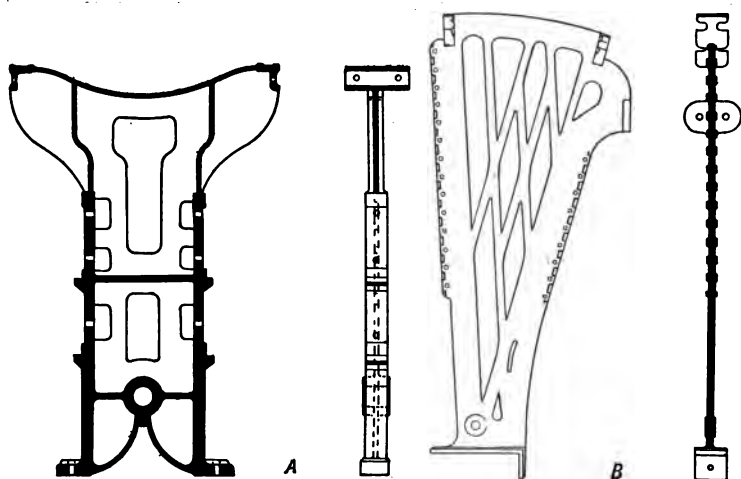


FIG. 132.—Supporting Frames.

In making up a frame it often involves too many spare levers to fix on some multiple of eight or ten as the total number of levers in the frame, so it is generally arranged that the end standard may be placed after the last four, where eight is the usual number, and the last five where ten is the usual number. Thus castings have only to be stocked for a complete bay of eight (or ten) levers, and for half a bay of four (or five) levers.

INTERLOCKING (STEVENS' PATTERN FRAME).

In most modern locking frames the actual interlocking of the levers is effected on the "TAPPET" or "WEDGE" principle.

This is a development of an early type of locking known as **Hook Locking**. In this type of locking, flat pieces of iron were fitted to each lever. These were shaped with a bevel, which bevel engaged in a wedge riveted to a long bar (see Fig. 133). The bar was supported at each frame standard, and was guided so that it could only move longitudinally. In pulling over the lever its *driving iron* moved the long bar. To this bar were riveted hooks which engaged with the back of the levers, preventing their being pulled unless the hooks were moved clear first. The bars carrying the hooks were placed one below the other; about twenty could be accommodated at the back of the

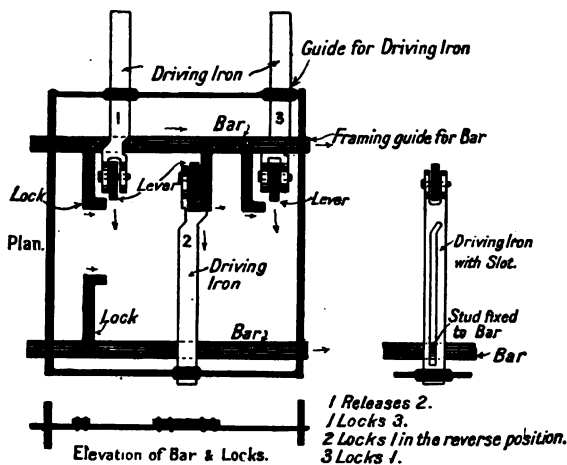


FIG. 133.—Hook Locking.

frame, and about ten at the front of the frame. The hooks at the back of the frame were for the **NORMAL** locking, and the hooks at the front were for **OVER** (or reversed) locking.

In developing the **WEDGE** locking, the driving iron is retained, having notches cut in it which engage into a wedge piece as in the hook locking, but instead of the wedge being riveted to a long bar, it is formed on the end of a small rod. The bar is retained, but instead of being capable of moving longitudinally, it is fixed. Guide pieces are riveted to this bar, which hold the driving irons and the wedge-shaped rods in position. When a lever is pulled, the driving iron forces

the wedge out of the notch, and the wedge rod moves along; the opposite end of the wedge rod has a similar bevel formed on it, which enters into a notch cut in another driving iron belonging to some other lever, so that when the first lever has been pulled—the wedge being in the notch of the second lever's driving iron—it is not possible to pull that lever. By arranging the notches in the driving irons and the wedges on the ends of the rods properly, it is possible to give effect to any desired combination of locking. The usual items of locking required are (1) one lever to Lock another; (2) one lever to be RELEASED BY another; and (3) one lever to Lock another lever BOTH WAYS (normal and reversed). In addition to this there is *special* or *conditional* locking, where one lever locks or releases a second lever only when a third lever is normal or reversed.

Fig. 134 shows lever 1 locking lever 2. It will be noticed that lever 2 in turn locks lever 1, and in any locking arrangement, if lever A locks lever B, it follows that in return lever B *must* lock lever A. In some designs of locking frames (hook locking, for instance), the mere insertion of A locking B does *not* of itself ensure that B locks A, and the return locking requires to be inserted *separately*. With wedge locking the return locking never needs to be inserted separately; the return locking is always provided automatically.

Fig. 135 shows lever 1 released by lever 2—that is, until 2 has been pulled it is impossible to pull 1. The *return* locking in this case means that when 2 has been pulled, and 1 also pulled, it is *impossible* to put back 2 until 1 has first been put back. Lever 2 is now said to be BACKLOCKED, or *locked in the reversed position*.

Fig. 136 shows lever 1 locking lever 2 both ways. If 1 is pulled when 2 is normal, it is then impossible to pull 2, and 2 is therefore locked normally. If 1 is now put back, and 2 pulled, it is possible to pull 1 (unlike the case shown in

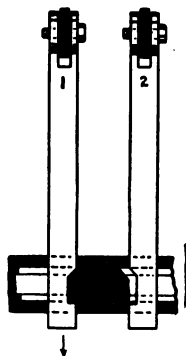


FIG. 134.—1 locks 2, 2 locks 1.

Fig. 134), but if an attempt is made to put back 2 whilst 1 is over, 2 will be found to be BACKLOCKED. It therefore follows that when 1 is normal, 2 can be worked backwards and forwards, but as soon as 1 is pulled, 2 is locked, in whichever position it happens to be at the moment. It should be noted that unless 2 is either correctly NORMAL or REVERSED, 1 cannot be moved; this is sometimes referred to as "2 locking 1 during stroke."

Special locking is effected by allowing one or more driving irons to move laterally, instead of being held in line by the strips of the bar. To prevent the driving iron from sliding when not required, a piece of lock rod butts against it, holding

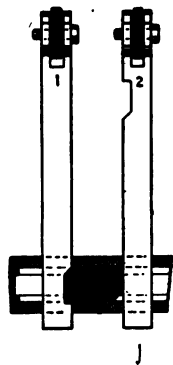


FIG. 135.—1 released by 2,
2 backlocked by 1.

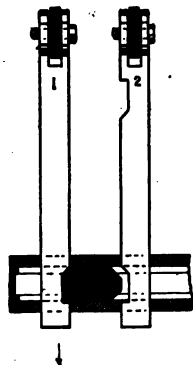


FIG. 136.—1 locks 2 both ways,
2 locks 1 during stroke.

it in the same position as the strip on the bar would. Fig. 137 shows lever 1 released by 2, and locking 3 when 4 is pulled. There are several ways of giving effect to this, either 1 or 4 could be made to slide, or it could be arranged for both 2 and 3 to slide, as in Fig. 137, c. There are numberless possible combinations of special locking, all worked on the principle of a driving iron being allowed to slide away from a lock under certain conditions fulfilled by other driving irons. In this pattern of locking, should more than one bar be required, they are placed one below the other, and it is possible to have 13 bars in the back and 8 in the front of the frame. The wedge locks are connected together by short

bridge pieces; these are used to pass over one or two driving irons, and it is general to use stronger rods to connect the locks when the rods are required to pass over several driving irons, or over the bridge pieces. Short connections can also be made by slotting the bar and placing the connecting piece in the slot. The locking pieces and driving irons are prevented from being displaced by means of covers screwed to the guide strips, and

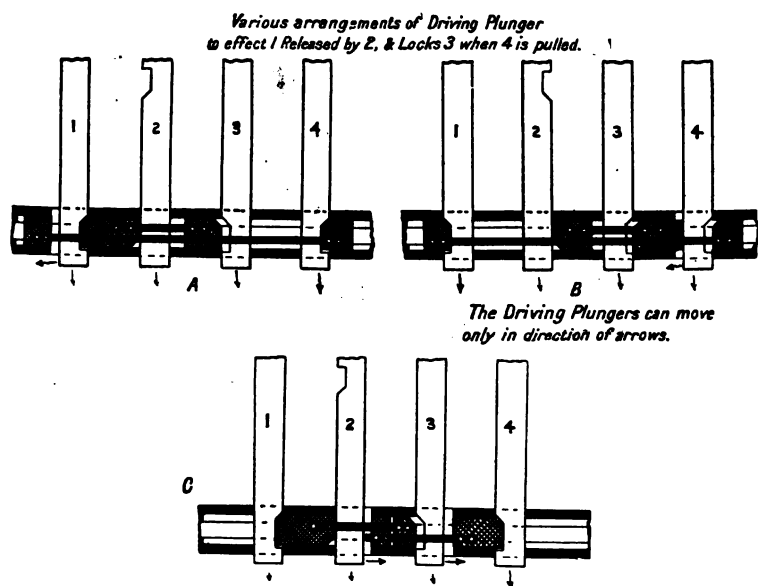


FIG. 137.

all bridge pieces and lock connecting rods have to pass through slots cut in these covers (see Fig. 139). Driving irons fitted low down on the lever have a very short travel; consequently the signalman has a very powerful leverage to force the locking. Should a frame be very large, sufficient locking cannot be placed in single bars as described above; double bars are then resorted to, and are fixed in the same manner as single bars (see Fig. 138). Instead of only one locking rod or lock connecting rod being fitted to each bar, two rows are fitted. Where two wedges are fitted to one driving iron on the same side of it, care must be taken that the wedges will not enter

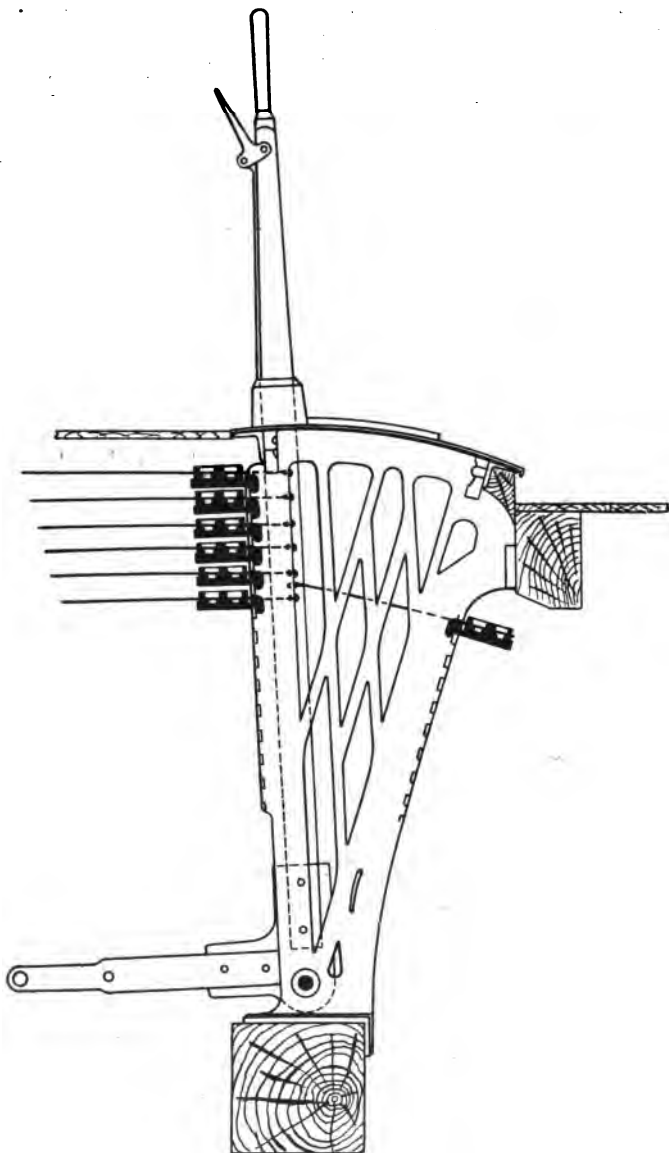


FIG. 138.—Stevens & Son's Pattern Frame.

the wrong notch, and so lock the lever before it is in the correct normal or reversed position. Various methods are

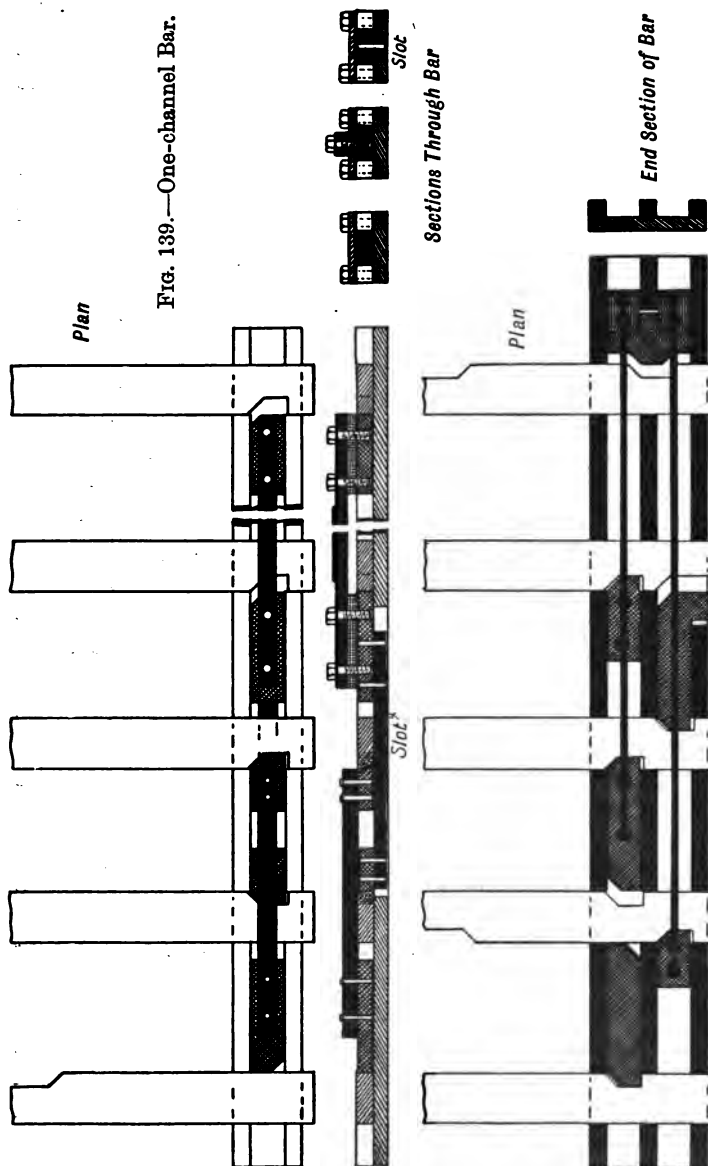


Fig. 139.—One-channel Bar.

Fig. 140.—Two-channel Bar.

adopted to prevent the wedges entering the wrong notch, the most common being to make one of the wedges larger than the

other, so that the large wedge will not enter the small notch (see Fig. 140). Sometimes as many as three rows of locks have to be employed, but this is inconvenient, as greater care needs to be taken to ensure that there shall be no locks entering wrong notches.

In a more modern type of this locking frame, the "bars" are of cast iron. All guiding strips in this case are cast solid with the other parts of the bar. The bars are cast in lengths to suit the spacing of the supporting standards, and are carried on short brackets bolted to the standards. In the cast-iron bar, a channel is formed in the bottom to accommodate a bottom connecting rod; this takes the place of the slot required in the wrought-iron bar. Sheet-iron covers are fastened on to the bar by set pins, or bolts and nuts, and all top connecting rods have to pass through slots in this cover. The locking wedges are small pieces riveted to flat connecting rods and lie in the bottom of the channel. Top connecting rods are avoided as much as possible, and unless they are arranged so as to be in tension, should be as short as possible. If long, and in compression, short shield covers have to be riveted to the top of the main covers to prevent the locking from being forced. In the cast-iron bars, channels are cast to accommodate two rows of locks, and if a driving iron is required to slide laterally for special locking purposes, the strips of the bar have to be chipped away to suit.

With the bars of locking set one below the other, it is rather difficult to make an examination of the frame without stripping a large quantity of the locking, and before a cover can be taken off, the top connecting rods have to be removed, thus disconnecting some of the locking.

A further development of this class of locking frame places the locking bars in steps (as in N.E.R. Pattern Frame, Fig. 141). This allows any bar to be examined without much difficulty. In this pattern the cast-iron bars are much deeper, so that the top cover encloses all the connecting rods and locking; this allows a cover to be taken off without disarranging any of the locking. With the deeper bars it follows that there cannot be quite so many of them; so to

allow of the same amount of locking being inserted in a frame the bars are designed to take more connecting rods. With bars of this size they are usually termed "troughs," or "locking boxes." As a rule only two rows of locks are allowed, but each channel can take five connecting rods, so that a complete locking box would take ten lock connecting rods, two in each channel being placed below the locks, and three in each channel being placed

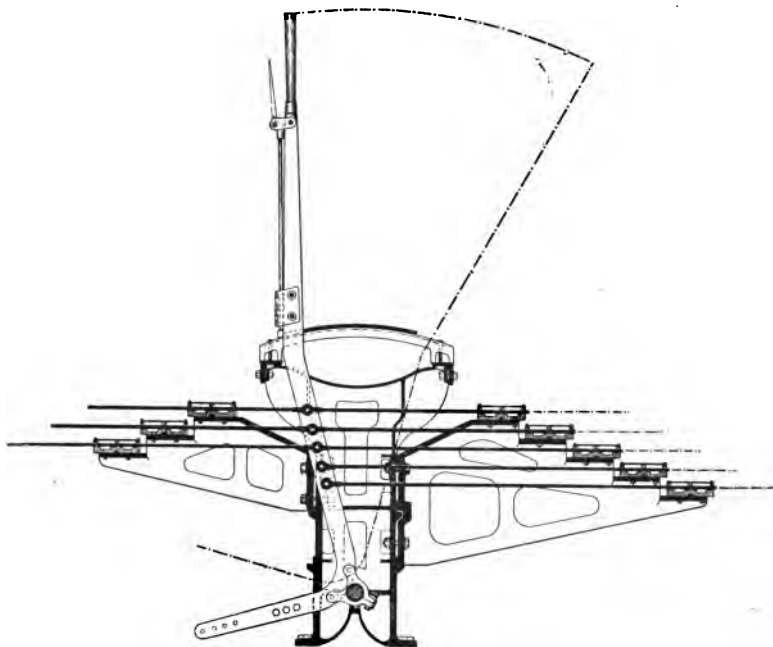


FIG. 141.—N.E.R. Pattern Frame.

above the locks (see Fig. 142). The locks are of different shape for each channel, to avoid conflicting locks and notches.

Various names are used for the "driving irons"; they are sometimes called TAPPETS, PLUNGERS, or SWORD IRONS. The locks are sometimes termed WEDGES, DIES, or TAPPETS. The "connecting rods" are sometimes called BRIDLES or BARS.

The most convenient arrangement of locking is to have the channels placed flat like a table, but if slightly inclined the locking is easier to inspect. When the driving irons are

worked directly off the lever, as in the above designs, it is difficult to arrange for more than three channels in one plane without very carefully spacing the notches to prevent wrong locks entering. If the travel of the driving iron is so short that one notch never moves sufficiently far to allow of its coming opposite a lock in another channel, there can be no difficulty about the locks entering wrong notches. This could be arranged by having very long driving irons, and pitching the channels further apart than the travel of the driving iron. If the travel of the driving iron is made very short, unless some travel-reducing gearing

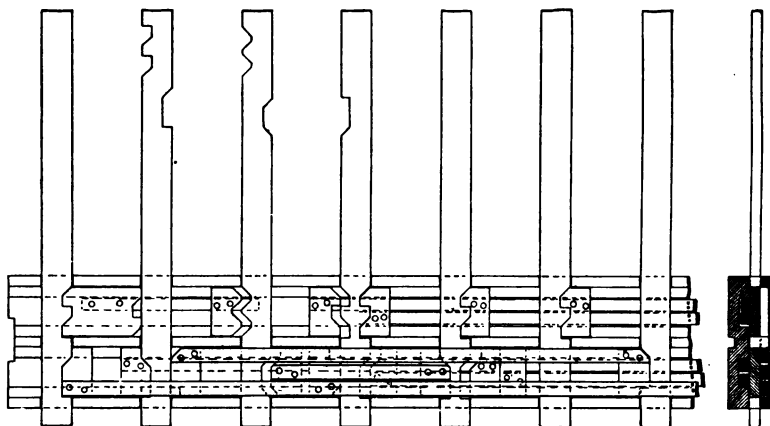


FIG. 142.—Cast-iron Locking Troughs.

is adopted, it must be placed too low down on the lever to be of any use for locking purposes. In several designs of locking frames the travel of the driving iron has been reduced to about $2\frac{1}{4}$ in., and the pitch of the channels fixed at about 3 ins.

One of the best-known devices for reducing travel is that of the cam (McKenzie and Holland's Frame, Fig. 143). The cam is operated by means of a stud fixed to the side of the lever; the first movement of the lever moves the cam slightly and displaces the driving iron about $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. The stud on the lever now slides along a radial portion of the cam, and this imparts no motion to the driving iron, but just before the stop on the floor plate is reached the stud again comes to a non-radial

portion of the cam, and another $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. travel is imparted to the driving iron. This is sufficient to ensure an effective NORMAL and REVERSE lock.

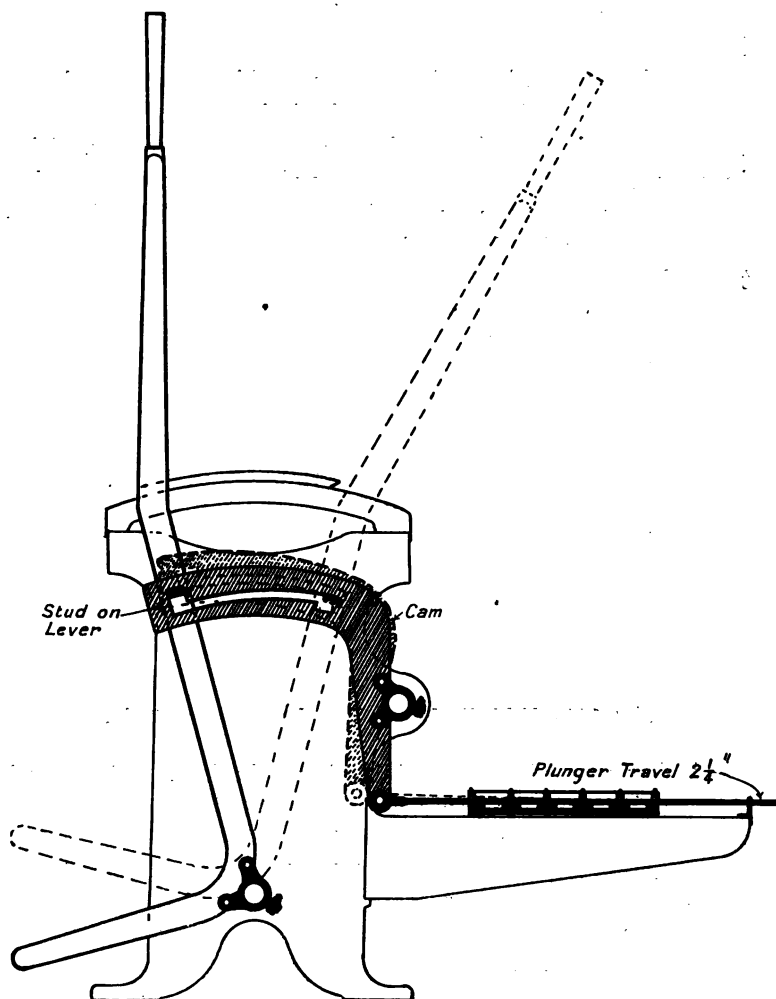


FIG. 143.—McKenzie and Holland's Cam and Tappet Frame.

With this pattern there is only one driving iron (called a SWORD IRON or PLUNGER); which can be of any required length. Five connecting rods are placed in a channel if required, and

all the locks (TAPPETS being the term used) are V-shaped, there being no conflicting notches in the sword irons (see Fig. 144).

Another very similar device is in use for reducing the motion of the locking plungers, as shown in Fig. 145 (G.W.R. Pattern Frame).

In this pattern, instead of a cam working on a bearing, a plate with a cam-shaped slot cut in it is driven by the lever. The cam slot imparts its motion to a vertical member, which in turn is connected to cranks, and to these the locking plungers are attached; or the locking plungers may be connected directly to the vertical slide and arranged in line therewith.

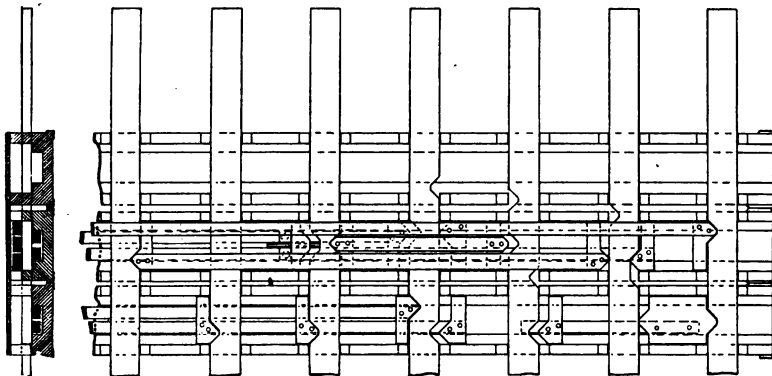


FIG. 144.—Table Locking. Travel of Plungers, $2\frac{1}{2}$ in.

Another method employed is shown in Fig. 146 (Sykes' Pattern Frame). There are two racks side by side, one stationary, the other movable and connected to the locking plunger. On the lever a small pinion is fitted, and this pinion engages with both racks during a portion of its travel. When the lever is normal, the pinion only engages with the rack fitted to the locking plunger,—the fixed rack being cut away,—and is prevented from rotating by a fixed tooth which engages with it. When the lever is pulled, the pinion, being unable to rotate, moves the rack with which it is in mesh, and so operates the locking plunger. When the lever has moved a short distance, the pinion has moved clear of the fixed tooth

and is now free to rotate. The pinion having arrived at this position is just engaging with the fixed rack, and this prevents the locking plunger from moving out of its position while the

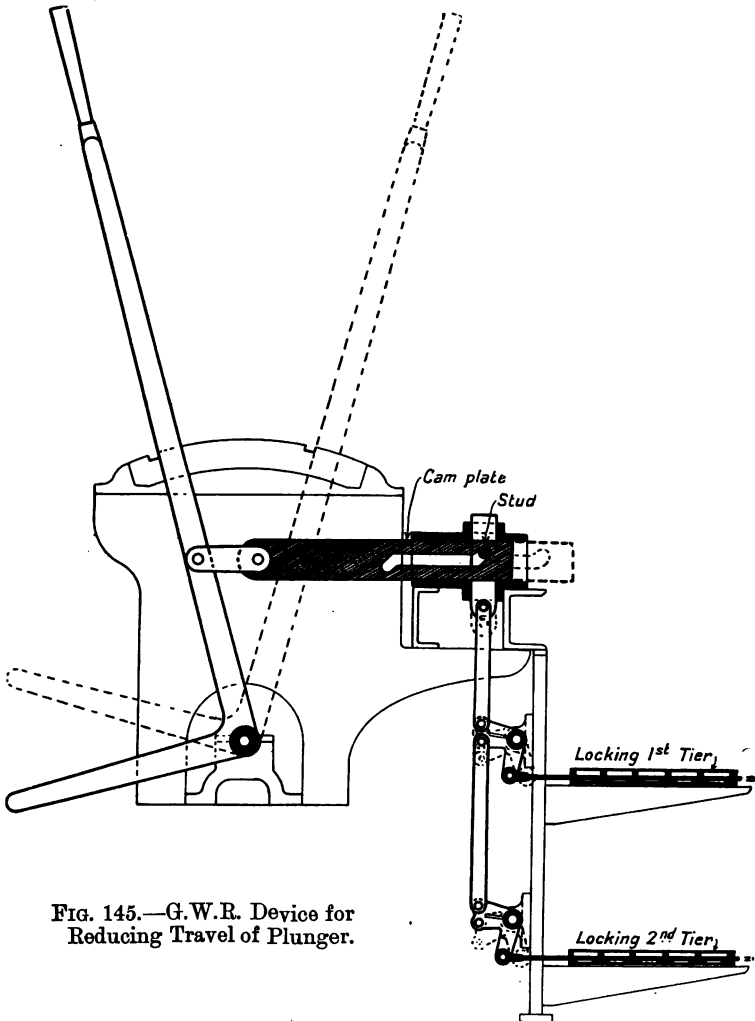


FIG. 145.—G.W.R. Device for Reducing Travel of Plunger.

pinion is running across both racks. Before the end of the stroke, the fixed rack is again cut away, and the pinion engages with another fixed tooth, thus imparting a final motion to the

driving plunger. In putting the lever back to the normal position the reverse action takes place.

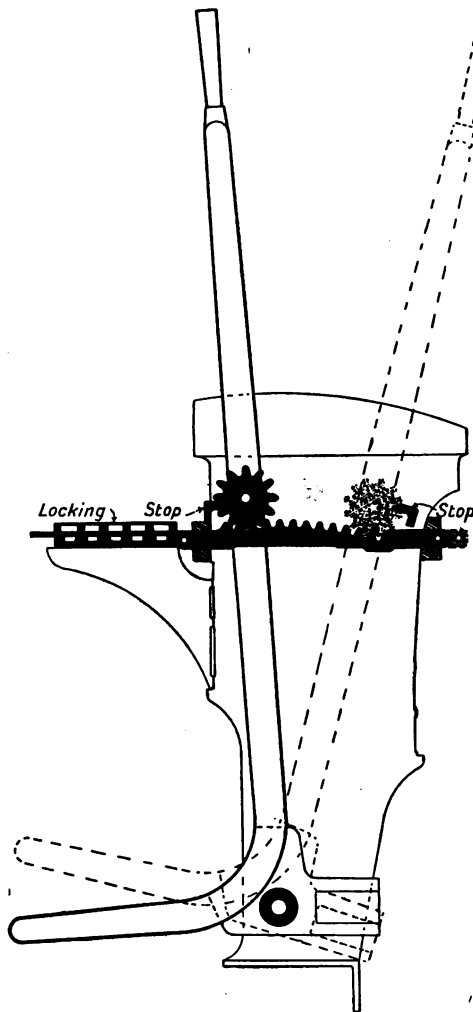


FIG. 146.—Sykes' Rack and Pinion Device for Reducing Travel of Plunger.

With any of the pattern locking frames which only use *one* locking plunger per lever, it is obvious that it is impossible to allow the plunger to be used as a sliding plunger for special

locking purposes, otherwise it would not be possible to insert any more locking for that particular lever. Where special locking has to be put in, some form of sliding plate is often used. A short plate is fitted to the locking plunger, this plate sliding laterally instead of the locking plunger (see Fig. 147).

Another method is to employ a special L swinging piece which is fitted to the lock (Fig. 148, A). Either of the connecting rods shown can move when the lever is pulled, thus allowing any conditional locking to be set out. A very similar arrange-

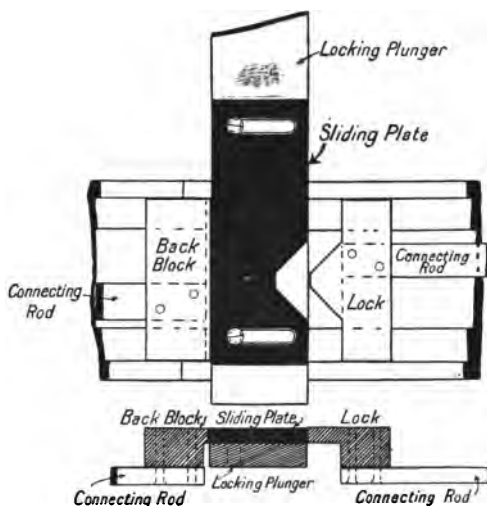


FIG. 147.

ment is a tongue piece fitted to a lock, the tongue pressing against two connecting rods, either of which can move away, when the lever is pulled, to effect the conditional locking (Fig. 148, B).

It is occasionally necessary to insert locking to prevent a home signal from being pulled a second time, unless the starting signal has been pulled and put back again, locking of this description being termed "rotation" locking.

Fig. 149 shows one method of carrying out this type of locking, and illustrates the case of lever 3, which, having been pulled and put back, cannot be pulled a second time until *either* 1 or 2 has been pulled and put back.

The plungers on levers 1 and 2 are similar. When either of these levers is pulled, the plunger rises over the lock, owing to the bevel on the lock and corresponding bevel on the plunger ; and when the lever is pulled over far enough, the plunger drops down to its normal plane by gravity alone. When the

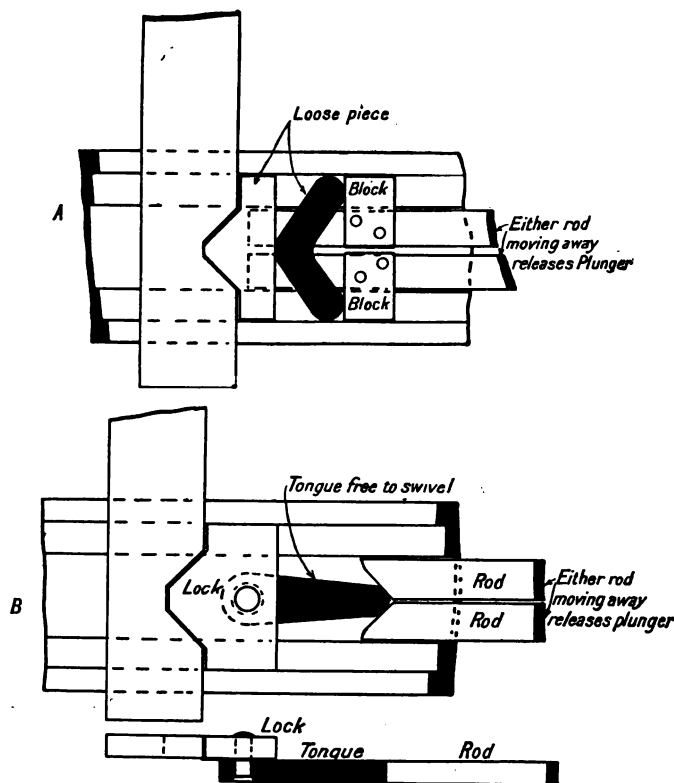
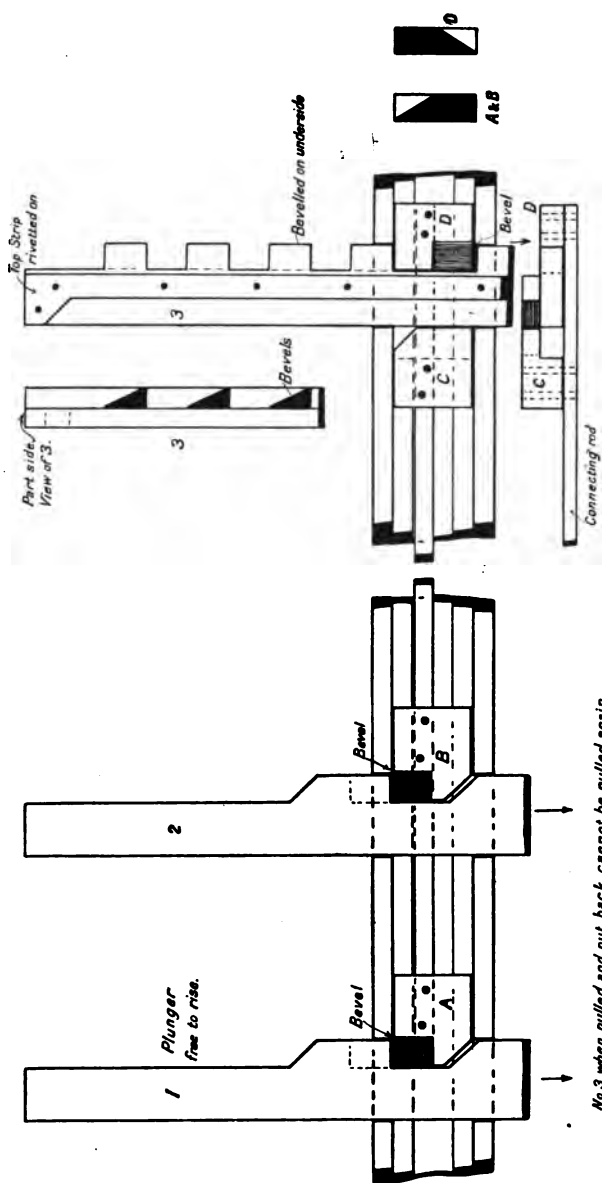


FIG. 148.

lever is being put back again to its normal position, the plunger forces the lock along to the right—not being able to ride over the lock, as when it moves in the reverse direction—and this movement of the lock is transmitted by the connecting rod to locks C and D, moving D clear of the plunger on lever No. 3. This, then, allows No. 3 to be pulled. When 3 is pulled right over, the bevelled portion of the top strip engages



No 3 when pulled and put back cannot be pulled again until 1 or 2 has been pulled and put back.

Fig. 149.

with lock C and returns the locks to their original position. When No. 3 lever is put back, the plunger rises over lock D owing to the arrangement of the bevels, but as soon as the plunger has moved the first notch over lock D, it is impossible to pull it again, and the lever can only be moved in the direction of restoring it to the normal position.

The lever having been put right back it remains locked until either 1 or 2 is again pulled and put back, when it is once more released.

In the case illustrated No. 3 would be an outer home signal, and 1 and 2 would be junction signals ahead. If a train is to be sent to stand at either of the junction signals, 3 would be pulled to allow it to draw forward to 1 and 2. On 3 being put back to danger it is impossible for it to be pulled again to send a second train to stand at the junction signals, until either one or the other of the junction signals has been lowered to let the first train away, and then put back to danger again to hold the second train.

This class of locking is not commonly fitted, except where the traffic is difficult to operate, because it needs more than the usual amount of attention to maintain it in efficient working order.

The foregoing pattern locking frames are sometimes termed **LEVER LOCKING** frames, to distinguish them from another class known as **CATCH HANDLE LOCKING** frames. In the lever locking frames the pulling of the lever operates the locking, while with the catch handle locking frames the movement of the catch operates the locking.

The majority of locking frames in this country are of the former type. In theory it is far preferable that there should be a preliminary lock before the lever can be pulled. There have been instances of signalmen, when unable to pull a lever, *assuming* that the locking was at fault, and waving the train past the protecting signal with disastrous results. With catch handle locking no such mistake can occur, as, if the catch can be lifted clear and the lever still cannot be moved, it is certain that the outdoor connections are at fault; on the other hand, if the catch cannot be raised, it is certain that the interlocking

is holding the lever. It is obvious that if the catch cannot be lifted it is impossible for the lever to be pulled.

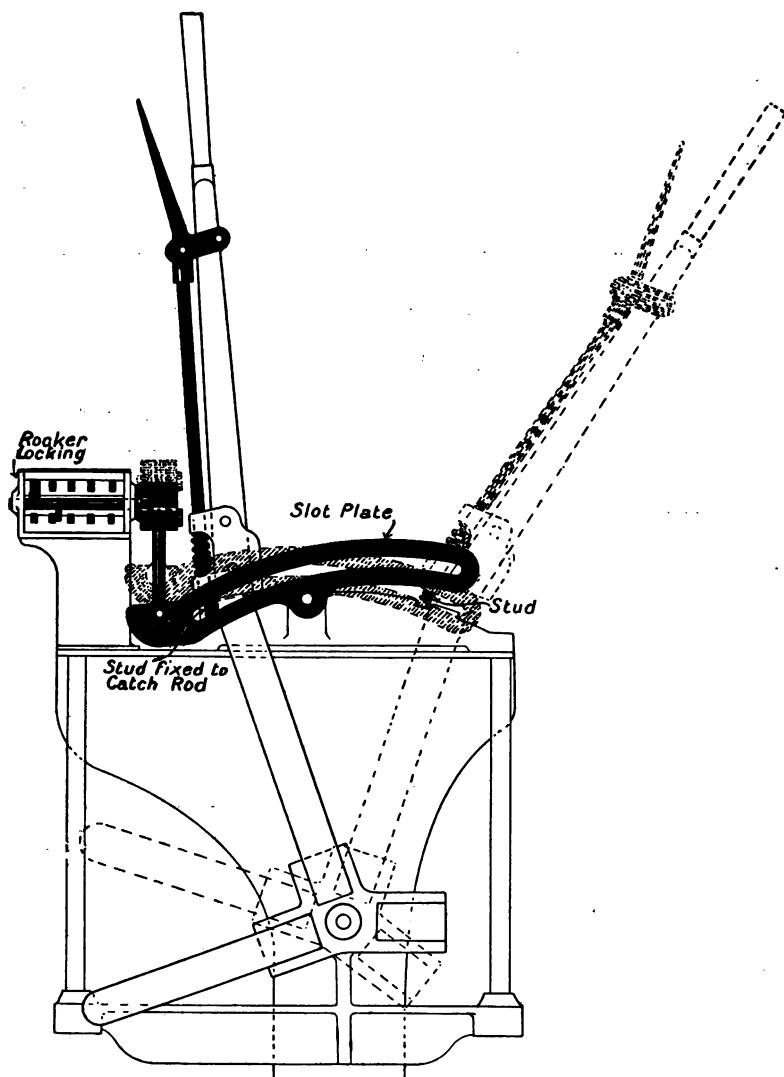


FIG. 150.—Saxby and Farmer's Rocker Locking Frame.

The earliest type of catch handle locking used a slotted plate (Saxby and Farmer's Frame, Fig. 150). This is fitted to

the floor plate, and engages with a stud fitted to the catch rod. When the catch is lifted, it moves the plate slightly, and the lifting of the catch allows the lever to be pulled; while the lever is being pulled, no motion is imparted to the slot plate, as the slot is cut to the same radius as the motion of the stud. When the lever is right over, the catch handle can be dropped, allowing the catch to enter into the notch in the floor plate. This, then, gives another small motion to the slotted plate, but as the stud is on the opposite side of the centre pin on which the slotted plate works, the latter moves in the same direction

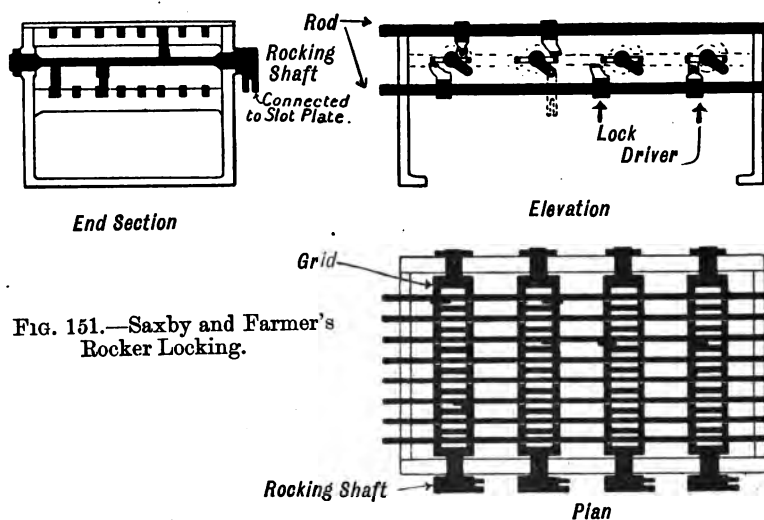


FIG. 151.—Saxby and Farmer's Rocker Locking.

as on the first movement. It is important to notice this, as should the final motion of the catch handle *reverse* the initial motion, the apparatus would be useless; for, although it would still be possible to Lock a lever either in the "normal" or "reversed" position, it would be impossible for the locking to ensure that the lever concerned is reversed when required, or normal when required. It is useless to have a lever locked in the normal position, when it should only be locked in the reversed position. In all catch handle locking frames some device must be employed to *register the actual position* of the lever. The slot plate in the above device was attached to

rocking shafts which in turn were connected to long rods, and to the latter locks were fitted. On the rocking shafts grids were formed, and the locking was effected by arranging that the locks prevented the grids from rotating, or the grids prevented the locks from travelling, when certain levers were, or were not, pulled (Fig. 151).

A modern development of the above interlocking frame employs a form of wedge locking. The slot plate is retained, and connected to rocking shafts, the rocking shafts having short driving pinions fastened to them, and the pinions engaging

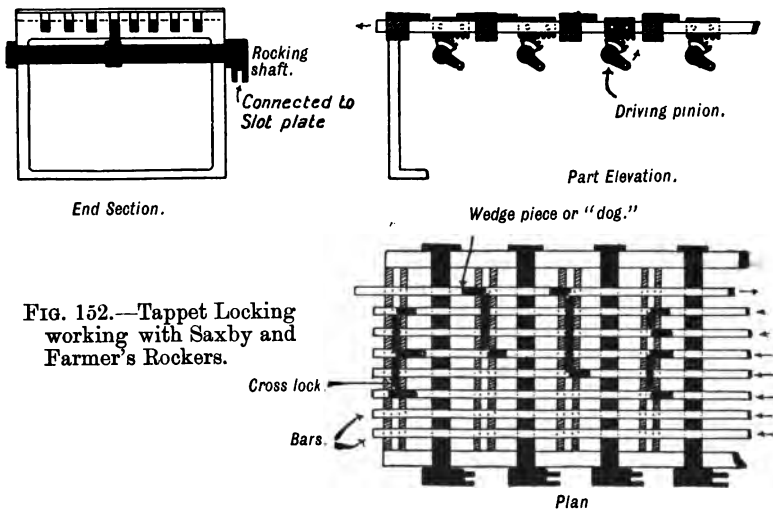


FIG. 152.—Tappet Locking working with Saxby and Farmer's Rockers.

with teeth cut in the long bars which extend along the frame. To these bars, wedge-shaped pieces (called "dogs") are screwed, which engage with cross-locks to effect the interlocking.

This pattern locking frame is largely used for manual installations in the United States of America, and a modification of it is also used to effect the mechanical interlocking on some of the Power Signalling Installations adopted in this country (Fig. 152).

"Special" locking, in this improved wedge-locking pattern is effected by allowing a "dog" to swivel on a pin-bearing, instead of being screwed on to the bars rigidly.

Another type used in this country to some extent, is the **DOUBLE PLUNGER** catch handle locking frame (Saxby and Farmer's, Fig. 153). Two driving plungers are fitted one above the other in the same locking channels. The bottom one is connected directly to the lever, but very low down; consequently, its travel being small, it alone would not be strong

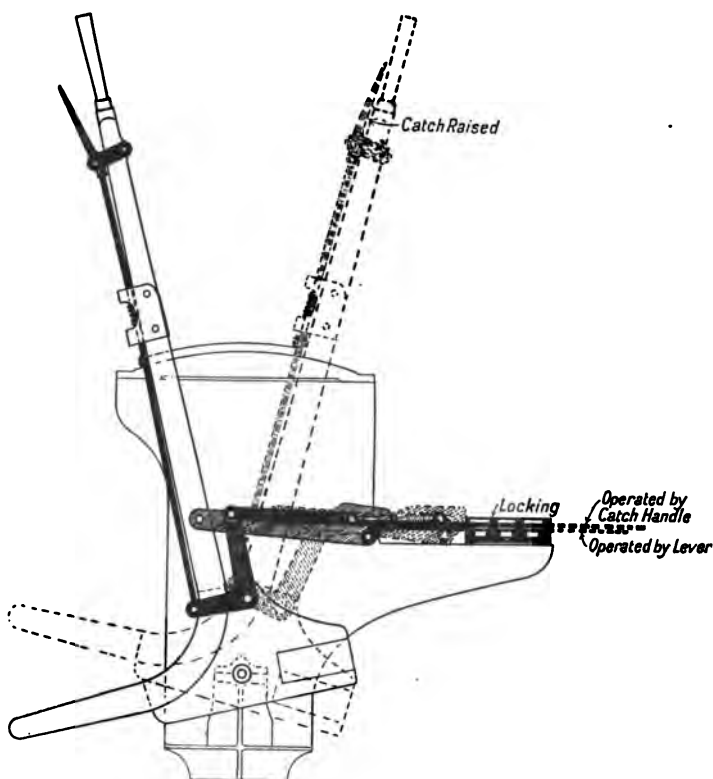


FIG. 153.—Saxby and Farmer's Double Plunger Locking Frame.

enough to give an effective lock. The top driving plunger is connected to the catch handle, and this plunger first drives the locking; if the lock cannot move, the catch cannot be lifted, hence the lever is locked. This plunger does all the locking, both reversed and normal, the bottom plunger, which is connected direct on to the lever, being for the purpose of

registering the correct position of the lever. The catch-operated top plunger in some portion of its movements occupies the same position whether the lever is normal or reversed, and without the registering plunger it would be possible for the catch handle to be locked in a wrong position.

Fig. 154 shows another type of catch handle locking in which only one locking plunger is used — Dutton's pattern—the motion being imparted from the catch rod by means of a slot and sliding pin to the locking plunger. When the lever is normal, the slot is inclined at an angle to the locking plunger, so that when the catch handle is lifted, the connecting pin slides down the slot, and in so doing moves *towards* the locking channels, carrying the locking plunger with it. This portion of the travel gives effect to all **NORMAL** locking. The catch having been raised, it is possible to pull the lever over, and in doing so, the pin remains at the bottom of the slot, but as the bottom of the slot is not quite on the same centre line as the lever centre, a slight motion is imparted to the pin, and thus to the locking plunger. This has no effect on the locking, the motion being so arranged that the locking plunger travels slightly *towards* the **NORMAL** position, but *not* far enough to take up the normal position, so that the notches in the locking plunger are still out of register with the locks. When the lever is fully reversed, the slot is again inclined at an angle to the locking plunger, but this time the inclination is *reversed*, as the *top* of the slot is nearer to the locking channels than is the bottom of the slot. When the lever is normal, the *bottom* of the slot is nearer the locking channels than is the top of the slot, and thus, when the catch is dropped in the notch, the pin, in moving *up* the slot, forces the locking plunger further through the locking channels, so giving effect to all the **REVERSE** locking. Fig. 155 shows the various positions of the lever and locking plunger. The locking channels in this pattern are inclined to about 45 degrees, and this makes it very convenient for examination or alterations. All the locking is held down irrespective of the top covers, which are solely for the purpose of keeping out dirt and dust.

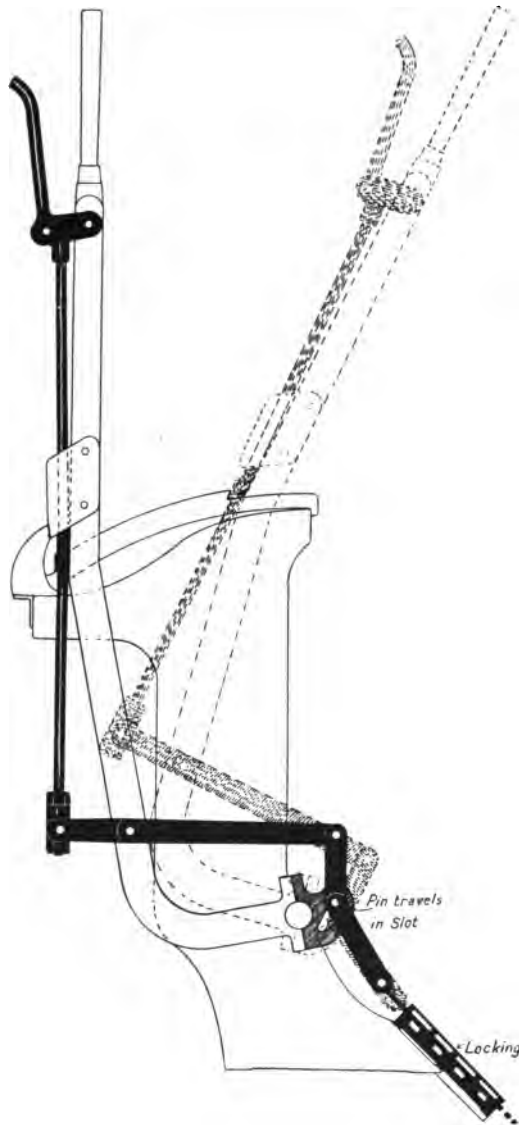


FIG. 154.—Dutton's Catch Handle Locking Frame.

In most catch handle locking frames one portion of the stroke of the locking plunger depends on the spring which forces the catch into the notch. This necessitates very strong

springs, as should a spring not force the catch right home, the locking would be fouled. This makes the levers rather tiring to work, as the grip of the handle not only has to compress this spring, but also has to drive all the locking, and with large frames this trouble becomes acute. With catch handle locking all the locking parts can be made very much smaller, and consequently lighter than is the case with locking working directly off the lever. It is common to screw all locks on to the connecting rods; and this is very convenient when it is necessary to take off a lock, as it can be unscrewed without interfering with much of the other locking; but screws are not very convenient when it comes to making altera-

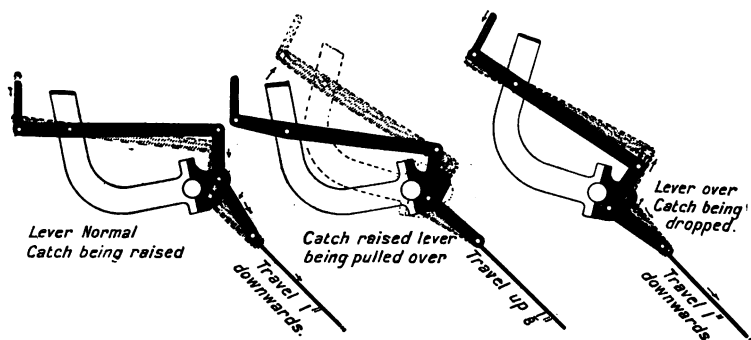


FIG. 155.—Relative Motions of Lever and Plunger, Dutton's Locking.

tions on the ground. Very often locking alterations of a very extensive nature have to be carried out within twenty-four hours, and when connecting rods have to be drilled and then tapped for a screw, a considerable amount of time is occupied, also, unless the holes are drilled very accurately, great difficulty is experienced in tightening the screws right home. Locks which are riveted to the connecting rods are much easier to deal with, as any slight inaccuracy in drilling can be ignored when driving the rivet in.

In one pattern catch handle locking frame (L. & N.W.R. pattern, Fig. 156) the handle is placed at right angles to the lever, and no spring is used; the signalman depresses the handle to raise the catch, and when the lever is over, the catch handle is raised to put the catch in the notch.

The catch takes the form of a cast-iron drop box, which engages with a radius bar on the floor plate.

From the drop box a connection is taken to a small crank,

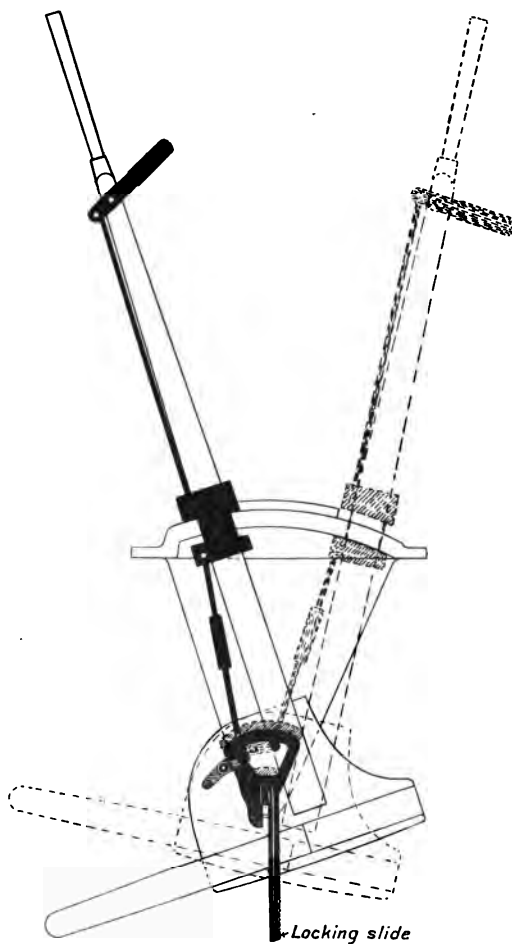


FIG. 156.—L. & N.W.R. Catch Handle Locking Frame.

which is centered on the casting which acts as a bearing for the lever. A rack slide with a specially shaped jaw fits round this crank, and when the lever is normal, the end of the crank to which the catch rod is connected has a stud which

engages with the jaw on the slide. When the drop box is raised, it pulls the crank *up*, and the jaw slide consequently moves *up* with it. As the lever is being reversed, the crank travels through the jaw; and when the lever is fully reversed, the opposite end of the crank engages with the jaw, so that when the drop box is lowered, a further upward motion is imparted to the slide. The interlocking proper is fitted to the rack sides. Fig. 157 shows the positions of the lever and locking slide.

In fitting locks a slight amount of play should be allowed between the notch in the plunger and the lock, and with locking working directly off the lever this should be sufficient to

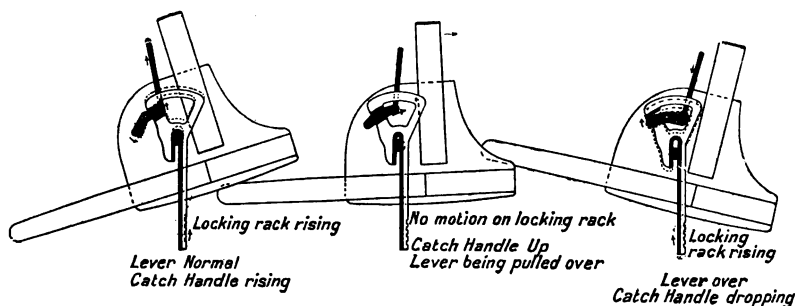


FIG. 157.—Relative positions of Lever and Locking Slide
L. & N.W.R. Catch Handle Locking Frame.

allow the lever to be pulled over about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or slightly more. It is important that the slack shall *not* be between the locks and the driving plungers in a *longitudinal direction*. The locking should be kept as tight as is consistent with easy working in this direction, and the slack should only be in the *notch* of the plunger. If locking is fitted with the notches too tight when the frame is in the shops, it will be found, on its being erected and connected up to points and signals outside, that the point levers all tend to be forced back against the *notch* of the floor plate, while the signal levers all tend to lie tight against the *stop* of the floor plate. There must be some clearance between the notch and the catch for easy working, and this difference is sufficient to make the locking plungers

move enough to foul the locks if the locking is fitted absolutely tight.

With tight locks it is also difficult to know whether the lever is stuck or not; the lever should move quite easily until it is checked *dead* by the locking. Springy locks should not be allowed, as they indicate that some of the connecting rods are tending to buckle, or that some of the parts are not tight.

When the locking is operated by means of a cam, or other reducing motion, the amount of slack admissible is rather *less* than $\frac{1}{4}$ in., and with catch handle locking the slack should be about $\frac{1}{8}$ in.

The chief features required to make an efficient locking frame may be summarised as follows:—

(1) Few working parts, *especially* as few pins between the lever (or catch handle) and the locking, as possible. Each pin means wear, and eventually slack locking, together with the risk of a pin dropping out and disarranging the locking.

(2) Locking easily accessible for inspection, cleaning, and renewal.

(3) Wearing parts to have broad bearing surfaces, and the locks strong, and effective.

(4) Should not add much additional labour to the signalmen in working the outdoor connections.

(5) Should be simple to understand, and easily put together, or taken apart.

(6) All levers interchangeable, and the framing arranged so that extensions can be made easily.

(7) The amount of locking which it is possible to insert in a frame should not be limited for constructional reasons, and the type should be suitable for any number up to about 200 levers.

Possibly no one interlocking apparatus can lay claim to all the above features, and most locking frames are difficult to maintain and work when there are more than 100 levers interlocked.

CHAPTER VII

SIGNAL BOX ARRANGEMENTS

The size of a signal box depends on the following items.

(1) The length of the box is determined by the length of the interlocking frame to be accommodated. It is usual to allow a clearance of about 4 ft. between the locking frame and the end walls of the box, taking the dimensions as inside the box at floor level. This gives the length of the signal box as being 8 ft. longer than the interlocking frame. If there are many large instruments to be fixed in the box, it should be built about 10 ft. longer than the locking frame.

(2) The width of the box to some extent depends on the type of interlocking frame used, but the general standard width is 12 ft. If the box has to be built in a very confined space, the width might be reduced to 9 ft. at floor level.

(3) The height of the box from floor to rail level depends entirely on the height necessary to give the signalman a good view of all his signals and points, and of trains standing at signals. If there are no obstructions to the view from the signal box, an average height for a signal box is 8 ft. 6 in. from rail to floor level. Sometimes it is necessary to build a very high box to enable the signalman to obtain a good view of his work, but, as a general rule, it is better to keep the box low down, as this gives a better view of the tail lamps of trains, especially in "thick" weather, and makes it easier for the signalman to give orders to the train-men and shunters. The height from ceiling to floor level should not be less than 9 ft. 6 in. to provide sufficient air space.

A signal box must not be built nearer to a running line than 5 ft. to clear the structure gauge, and it should as a rule be kept about 8 ft. back from the line, to give ample space for

the rods and wires being led away from the box. If the box is built on a platform it should be built not less than about 10 ft. back from the edge of the platform, so as to give a good clearance for barrow traffic, etc.

With the foregoing limitations the box should be built as close to the running lines as possible, to facilitate verbal instructions from the signalman to the train-men, etc.

Where a signal box requires to be built in a very narrow space, the lower part can be made narrow to suit, but the box should be widened out at floor level to the standard size, under these conditions, if the box is adjacent to a running line or siding, care must be taken that the overhanging portion of the box clears the structure gauge for height. Sometimes it is necessary to build the signal box on a bridge over the lines, in which case the floor of the box should be kept as low down as circumstances will permit.

Signal boxes are constructed of any ordinary building materials, for the majority of cases brick or stone is the most suitable, but for temporary work, or where a good foundation cannot be secured, wood is to be preferred. For overhung boxes, or boxes built on bridges, steel framing is generally used.

Taking an ordinary brick or stone box, the foundations are laid about 3 ft. wide and about 4 ft. deep, depending very much on the nature of the ground. The thickness of the walls is generally 14 in. for brickwork. When the walls have been built to about 18 in. below rail level, some arrangement requires to be made for holding timbers to which the leading-off cranks and pulleys will be fastened.

These timbers are generally of 12 in. by 6 in. section, and are laid on their flat side. A very common way of holding these timbers is to build into the front and back walls cross timbers of similar section to the above laid on edge. These timbers project about 5 ft. in front of the box, and are spaced about 5 ft. 6 in. apart. The leading-off timbers both inside and outside the box are spiked or bolted down to them. The top of the leading-off timbers should be about 11 in. below rail level. There is some objection to building timber into brickwork, as timber

requires renewal before the brickwork, and cast-iron girders are often used instead of the cross timbers.

When cast-iron girders are employed, they are not made long enough to be built into the back wall of the box, but a subsidiary wall is built inside the box, about 5 ft. 6 in. back

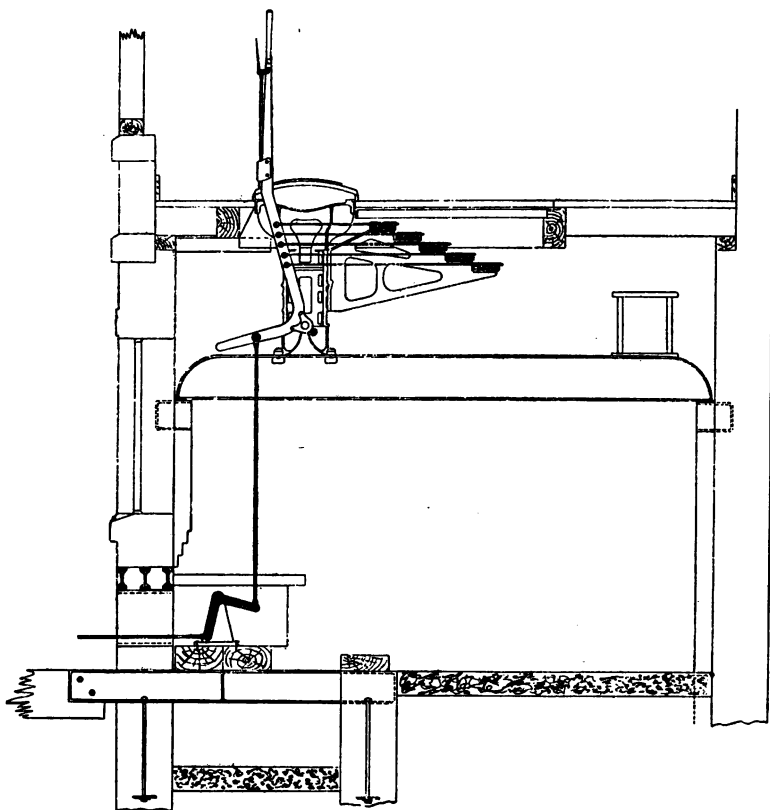


FIG. 158.—Section of Signal Box.

from the front wall, to support the inner end of the girder. The other end of the girder extends about 12 in. in front of the box, and bearing timbers are bolted to these to carry the outside leading-off timbers. With this arrangement all the leading-off timbers can be renewed without disturbing the brickwork (see Fig. 158).

The space between the front wall and the subsidiary wall

forms a pit for the convenience of fitters attending to the cranks, etc. The bottom of this pit, together with the remainder of the floor, should be concreted and well drained.

Along the front of the box an opening must be left to enable the rods and wires to be led out; this opening should extend the whole length of the box, and should commence about 11 in. below rail and extend to about rail level. To support the face wall of the box, either a wood beam, or preferably a steel joist lintel (old rails are often used) is built into the box, and is supported at intervals of about 5 ft. 6 in. by cast-iron supports. Small openings should also be left at each end of the box near the front wall to admit of wires or rods being run out there if required. Old rails are generally used to support the wall over these openings.

A door should be provided to give access to the bottom floor. Windows should be made in the front wall to give as much light as possible for examination of the connections and locking apparatus. Generally the window frames are of cast iron made in the form of an arch.

Arrangements also have to be made for supporting the locking frame, the type of locking frame employed determines to a large extent the nature of the supports. Taking a type of frame as illustrated in Fig. 141, cast-iron cross girders, resting on brickwork piers below each supporting standard, make a very efficient arrangement (see Fig. 158). The position of the locking frame in the box is fixed by the clearance required by the tails of the levers and the interlocking plungers. If there is any interlocking between the levers and the front wall of the box, the locking frame should be placed sufficiently far back in the box to enable workmen to get to the locking for cleaning and repairs, but—bearing this in mind—the locking frame should be placed as near the front of the box as possible, to give the signalman a good view when working the levers. It is sometimes advantageous to place the locking frame so that the signalman when working the levers has his back to the line, and in some cases this gives him a much better view of his work, but most boxes are arranged so that the signalman faces his work when pulling the levers.

The floor is built about level with the floor plates of the locking frame ; where the floor extends over the locking, it is made removable, being supported on T irons bolted to the angles of the locking frame at one end, and let into a supporting beam at the other end.

A "false" floor or scaffold should be provided below the locking frame for the use of fitters when attending to the interlocking.

Another way of supporting locking frames of this class, is to use timber cross beams instead of cast-iron cross girders, the other arrangements being similar. A very common arrangement is to support the locking frame on longitudinal timbers which are bolted to vertical posts, the latter being fastened to cross timbers bedded in the ground floor of the box.

To support a locking frame of the type shown in Fig. 138, a beam 12 in. by 12 in. is built into the end walls, and to this beam the supporting standards and soleplates are fastened (see Fig. 159). As this frame is not designed to stand without lateral support, a beam about 9 in. by 6 in. is placed at floor level to take the lateral thrust, and this beam is also employed to carry the joists for supporting the floor. The floor between the locking frame and the front wall is detachable, being in the form of hatching, and is supported on irons fastened to the locking frame at one end, and rests on the front wall at the other end ; this enables the locking-fitters to get to the locking when required by lifting the hatchings.

The brickwork is carried up to about 3 ft. above floor level all round, leaving space for a door. Windows should be put in at this height, round at least three sides of the box (Fig. 160), and if there are running lines on both sides of the box, then all four sides should have windows. The windows at each end of the box, and some of the windows facing the rails at the end of the locking frame, should be made to slide along, to allow the signalman to converse with the men outdoors.

If the locking frame is a very long one, a break, or gap, should be made in the middle, to allow the signalman to get to the window, the windows opposite the gap being made to slide.

If a box is constructed of wood, the foundations may be

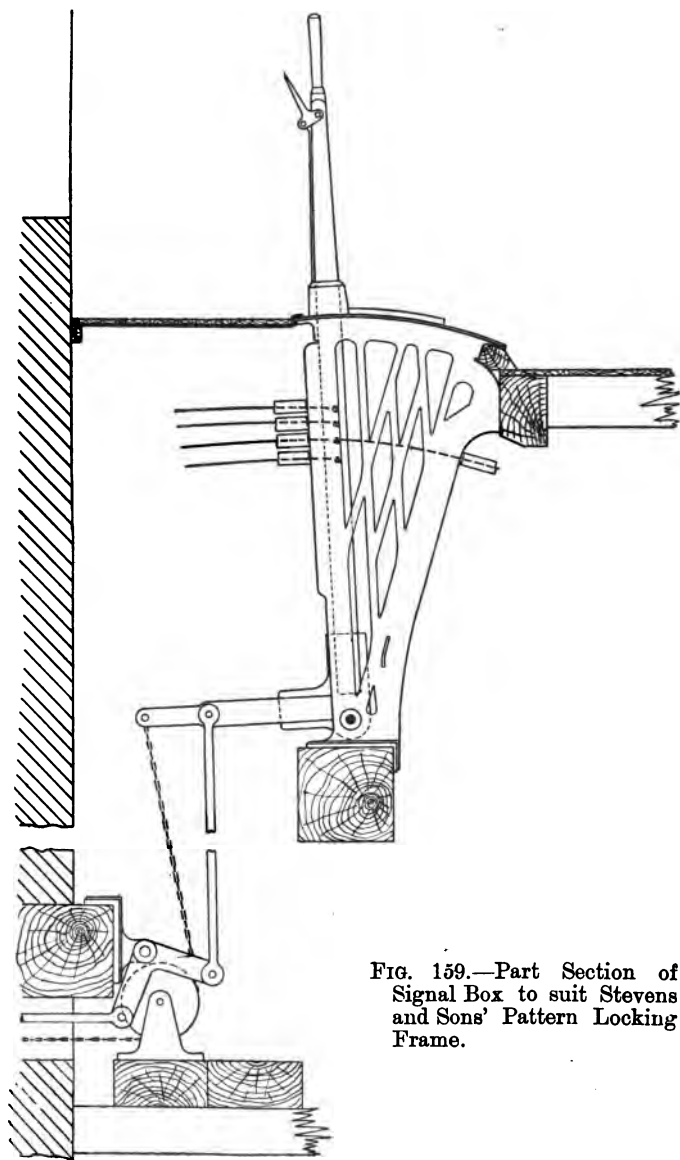


FIG. 159.—Part Section of Signal Box to suit Stevens and Sons' Pattern Locking Frame.

brickwork, with a timber framing laid thereon, or brickwork may be entirely dispensed with, the foundations consisting of beams of wood, or piles, should the ground be very soft. The

opening in front of the box (for the rods and wires) will not require a heavy girder to support the superstructure, but a heavy beam may be inserted for the purpose of having cranks fixed on to it. If the cranks are not fixed to this beam, an 8 in. \times 6 in. beam is ample size for the framing support (Fig. 161).

Cross timbers will require to be set in the ground for the leading-off crank timbers, and vertical timbers will be placed on these cross timbers for the purpose of carrying the locking frame. The windows in the basement will be made of wood framing, instead of cast iron, as described for a brick box, and be of a simple square design.

Some brickwork is necessary to support the fireplace and form a chimney, etc.

The top portion of the box is practically the same as for a brick-built one.

The door of a signal box should open on to a landing, and the steps up to this landing should be arranged so that a man coming down them will have a good view of approaching trains. If the steps lead directly on to the running lines, a rail or barrier should be placed at the foot of the steps to prevent a man from inadvertently stepping in front of a train.

Signal boxes should be provided with water and lavatory accommodation, the lavatory being often placed at the top of the steps on the landing.

A fireplace, or some other heating apparatus, must be provided, not only for the comfort of the signalman, but to keep the box dry, as dampness is liable to affect the electrical instruments injuriously, besides causing the interlocking apparatus to become rusty.

Inside the box, a shelf should be fixed to support the electrical instruments. The block instrument shelf is generally fixed above the interlocking frame, and this allows the signalman to do the necessary belling, etc., and work the levers, without loss of time. The shelf is either suspended from the roof, or else supported on cast-iron uprights, which are bolted to the irons carrying the hatching at the back of the locking frame

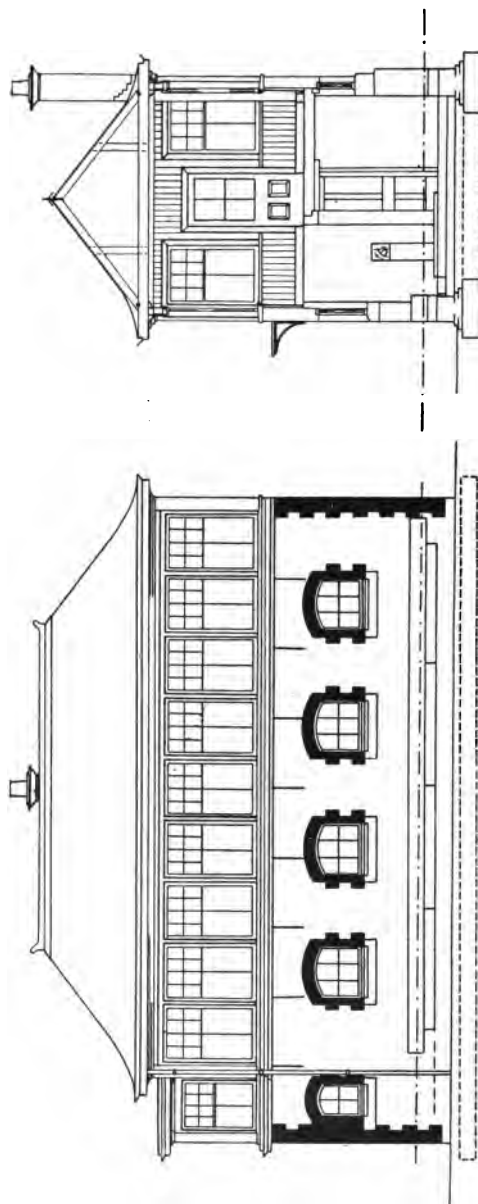


FIG. 160.—Brick Signal Box.

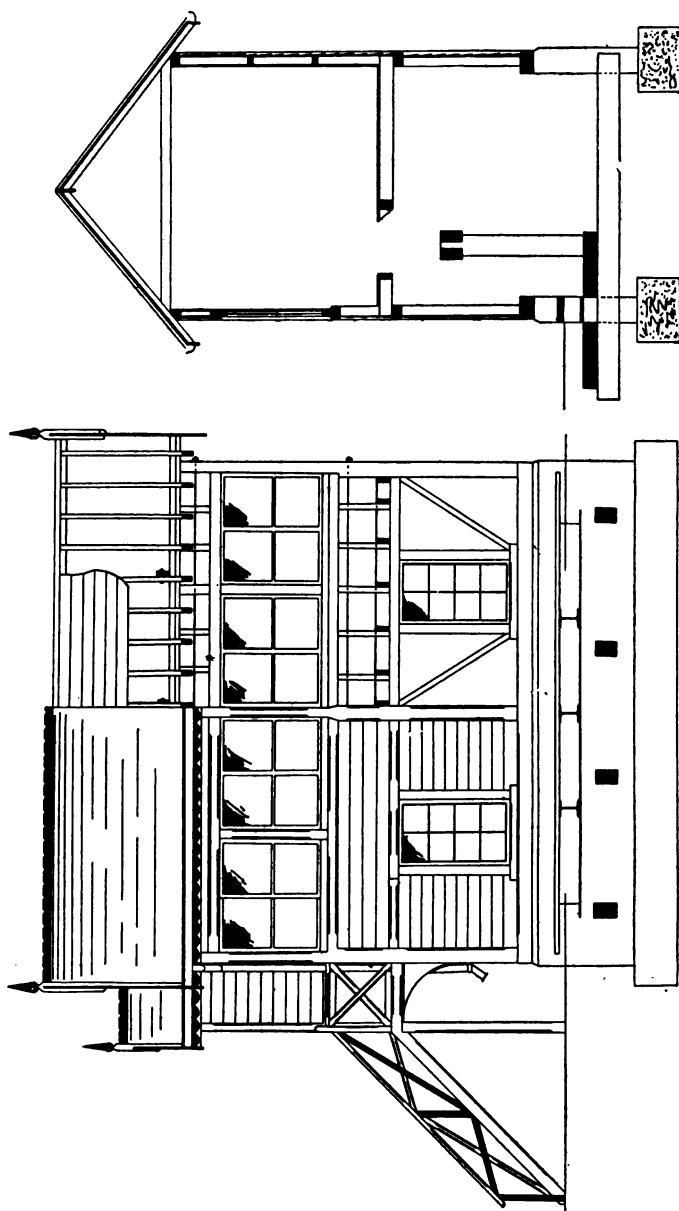


FIG. 161.—Wood Signal Box.

as in Fig. 162. Occasionally these uprights are bolted directly to the floor plates of the interlocking frame.

Electric repeaters for the signals should be fixed as near the levers working the signals concerned as possible, and a board running along at the back of the levers is often used to support these instruments.

A board giving the reading of the levers, called a "direction "

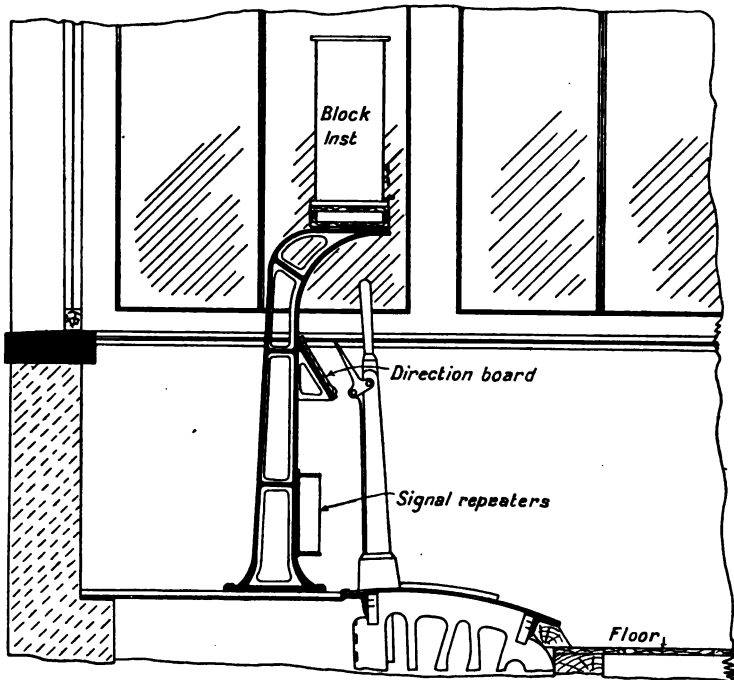


FIG. 162.—Standard for Supporting Blockshelf, Direction Board and Signal Repeaters.

or "name" board, is also fastened immediately at the back of the levers.

The following furnishings also require to be provided:— Chairs, desk for train register book, etc.; clock, and lockers or cupboards for storing cleaning utensils, etc., etc. Cupboards also have to be provided for the electric batteries. These cupboards are generally fixed on the bottom floor of the box; in a

few cases they are fixed on the same floor as the levers. A board is very often fixed in the signal box for the signalman to pin weekly and other notices requiring his attention, also a small rack for flags, and another for emergency working forms, are frequently provided.

In erecting the locking frame on timbers (see Fig. 159) it is necessary to set the beam high in the centre, as when the load of the locking frame comes on it, a slight sag invariably takes place, and if the locking is to work easily it is essential that the frame shall be perfectly level when finished.

The rods from the lever tails to the leading-off cranks are generally of solid metal, unless the box is a very high one, when ordinary point rod-
ding is used and guides inserted to prevent the rods from buckling.

In connecting the signal wires, chain is generally used round pulley wheels, and the connection to the lever is by means of a hook (unless wire-adjusting screws are used), to allow of the wire being lengthened, or taken up, as may be required. With point rods, as already described, compensators are used outside to allow for variations of temperature; but with signal wire automatic compensators are very seldom used, and no compensating device is used unless the signal is some distance from the box, in which case wire regulators are fitted in a convenient position, so that the signalman can regulate the length of the wires as required.

Some railway companies fit regulators on each signal lever (Fig. 163) when the signal is not more than 300 yards away. Above that distance regulators fixed on the front wall (Fig. 164 A) or on the floor (Fig. 164 B) are employed, as a greater variation in length can be allowed with either of these patterns.

Automatic wire regulators are employed by some companies to a small extent, most of the types tried depending on the principle that the signal wire, instead of being fixed directly

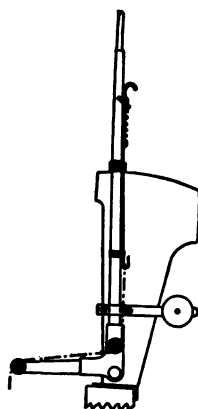
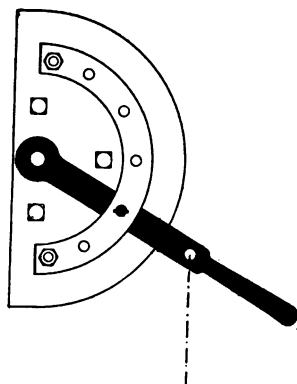


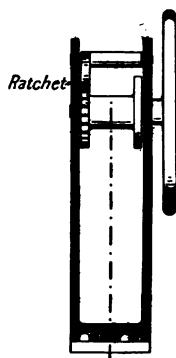
FIG. 163. —Wire
Regulator on
Lever.

to the signal lever, is connected to a counterbalance weight of some description. Normally the weight keeps the wire tight, and any variation in the length of the wire, either expansion or contraction, is accommodated by the weight either falling or rising, as the case may be.

When the signal lever is pulled, it engages with the signal wire, or some mechanism connected to the signal wire, and so pulls the signal off in the usual manner. While the lever is pulled the wire regulator is out of use, but on returning the lever to the normal position again, the wire is disengaged from the lever, and the weight again keeps the wire tight.



A.—Regulator on Wall.



B.—Regulator on Floor.

FIG. 164.

A wire regulator of this pattern is of no value in keeping the wires adjusted where the signal box is switched out and all the running signals pulled to clear. Where the signal box is open all the time, however, it saves the signalman from having to adjust his wires during the day or night.

When the tail of a signal lever is not long enough to give sufficient draught to the wire for working a signal at a great distance from the box, additional pulley wheels are added, termed "draught" or "multiplying" wheels, to give the required travel of wire (see Fig. 165).

Where a signal is more than 600 yards from the box, unless there is a very straight run of wire, back balance weights are

necessary on the levers, to assist the signalman in pulling the lever over; these weights are either fitted on to a back tail or are held on a rod which is connected to the lever by means of

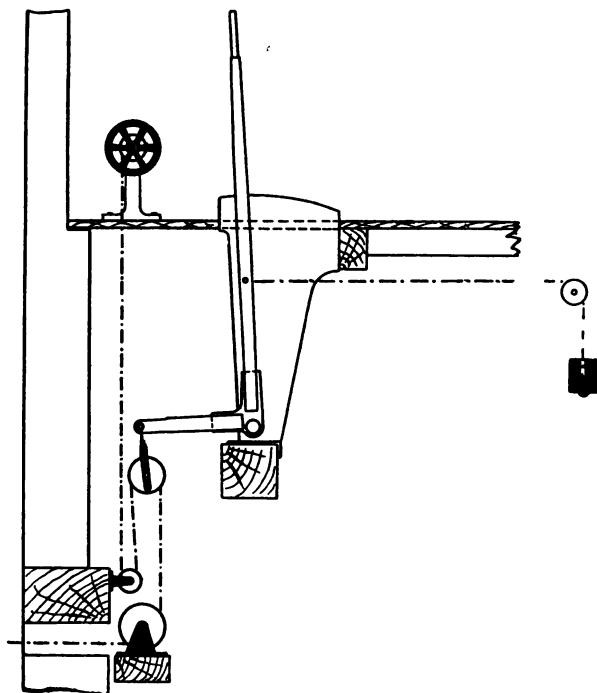


FIG. 165.—Multiplying Wheels with Back Balance Weight for Distant Signal.

chain and pulley wheels, the weights being placed at the back of the box (see Fig. 165).

When signal boxes are placed on bridges or in confined situations, special arrangements have to be made for leading out the rods and wires to suit the particular case.

CHAPTER VIII

MISCELLANEOUS APPARATUS

LEVEL CROSSING GATE GEAR

WHEN a public road crosses a railway on the level near a station, the gates are, as a general rule, worked from the station signal box. If the level crossing is some distance away from a station, a signal box may be built, should it be also useful as a block box for shortening the block section. If a block box is not required, and the road is not very busy, a gateman's hut may be erected, and the gates worked by the gateman; and in such a case it is not necessary that the gates be worked by gearing, but they should be protected by home and distant signals in each direction, and interlocked with the protecting signals.

The interlocking is effected by means of a Lock lever in a small locking frame, and from this lock lever (which locks all conflicting signals in the usual manner), a rod is taken to a special lock-box fixed in the roadway below the free end of the gates. A bolt is fitted on the free end of each gate, and this bolt extends down into the lock-box when the gates are shut against the highway. In the pattern illustrated in Fig. 166 the bolts would then be in the lock, and they cannot be withdrawn until they have been turned through 90 degrees. The turning of the bolts moves a locking disc inside the lock casting, and this can only be done when the lock lever is pulled over. When the lock lever is normal, the lock disc engages with the slide operated by the rod from the lock lever, and so prevents the bolts on the end of the gates from being turned. When the lock lever is pulled to release the gates, the bolts are withdrawn, and the lock disc fouls the notch in the slide, and this prevents the lock lever from being put back.

To restore the lock lever, in order to lower the signals for the railway, the gates must be placed across the highway, the

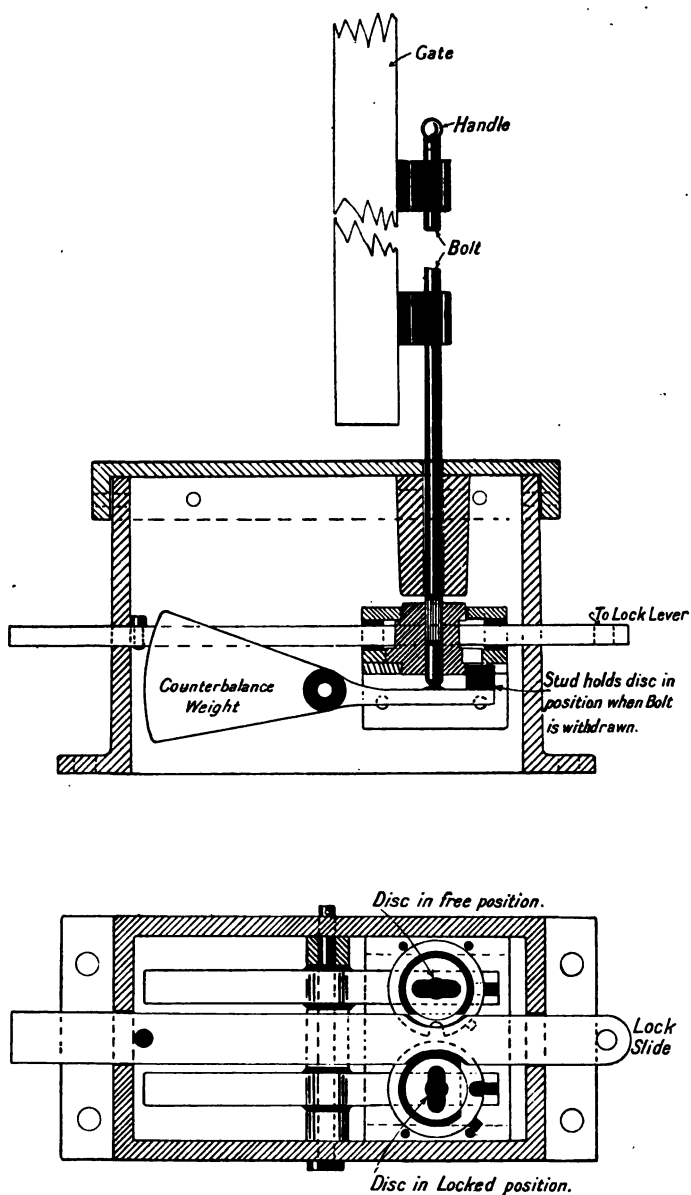


FIG. 166.—Lock for Bolt of Hand Worked Gates.

bolts inserted in the lock-box and turned; this takes out the lock disc from the slide, and allows the lock lever to be put back. When the lock lever has been put back, the gate bolts are again prevented from being turned, and so cannot be lifted clear for swinging the gates. Where four gates are used, each lock-box is fitted up to receive two gate bolts, and two such lock-boxes are required for the crossing; four may be fitted, but "Dummy" lock-boxes are sufficient for holding the gates across the railway.

Where the gates are worked from the signal box by means of gearing, the most convenient arrangement is to fix four gates, and work them simultaneously. The gates are hung to

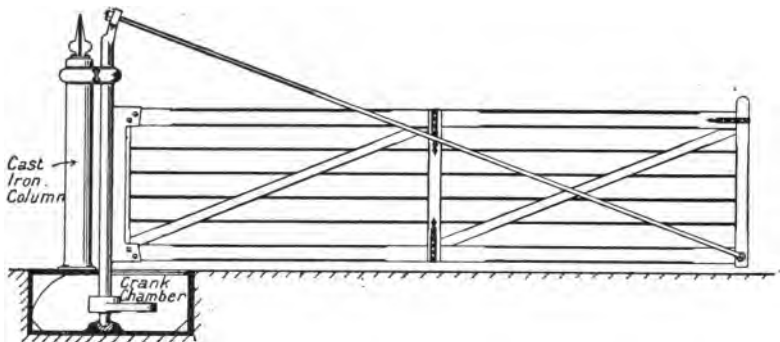


FIG. 167.—Column and Bearings for Level Crossing Gate.

posts, so that a crank can be fitted to the lower portion of their bearing, below road level (see Fig. 167). Rodding is coupled up to the cranks, the rodding being run to the signal box, and operated by means of gearing.

If the gates move through a much greater angle than 90 degrees, a crank on the gate bearings is not suitable; instead of a crank a pinion is fitted; this pinion engages with a rack, and the rack is connected to the rodding.

The rodding is of a stronger section than the rodding commonly used for points, being either $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. solid rod, or 2 ins. to $2\frac{1}{4}$ ins. piping. In most cases it is found convenient to run the rods in the 6-ft. way, but in some cases it may be found desirable to run the rods on the outside of the lines. In any case, the rods must be below road level, and

either run in cast-iron trunking or else well boxed in with timber. It is essential that the cranks and joints shall be capable of inspection without tearing up the roadway, and if timber is used, the covering should be fastened down in a manner which will allow of its being opened out without much inconvenience. With cast-iron trunking, the lids of the trunking must be chequered to give a good grip for horses' feet, but there should not be any set screws or bolt heads projecting at road level, as these are liable to be torn off by heavy road tractors.

Very often the level crossing is timbered to form a good roadway; * but should it be in a town and granite setts or wood blocks laid down, it is preferable to have cast-iron trunkings with inspection covers over all cranks.

Where the rods are laid in the 6-ft. way, it is a very good arrangement to employ double rods as shown in Fig. 168. This makes a very rigid connection, as there is always one rod in tension.

While the rodding is sufficient to operate the gates, it is not rigid enough to hold the gates in position, and for this purpose GATE STOPS are fixed. The simplest form is a block of wood fixed in the 6-ft. way, and against this block the ends of the gates strike when they are placed across the railway. The block of wood simply acts as a buffer to prevent the gates from being carried too far round, as their momentum is sufficient to carry them some distance after the signalman has finished turning the winding handle, and this would strain the rodding. This device then only acts as a buffer, and does not prevent the gates from rebounding and standing apart sufficient to allow animals to get on to the line; even at its best it does not prevent persons from pulling the gates away from the stop and passing on to the line. It is not possible to adopt this simple arrangement as a stop for the gates when they are across the highway, as the block being above road-level would form a permanent obstruction.

* Macadam, or fine ballast, is frequently laid over a level crossing, the timbers covering the rods having about 3 in. to 4 in. of stone or ballast over them.

To get over these difficulties, some form of gate stop operated from the signal box is adopted, and the simplest

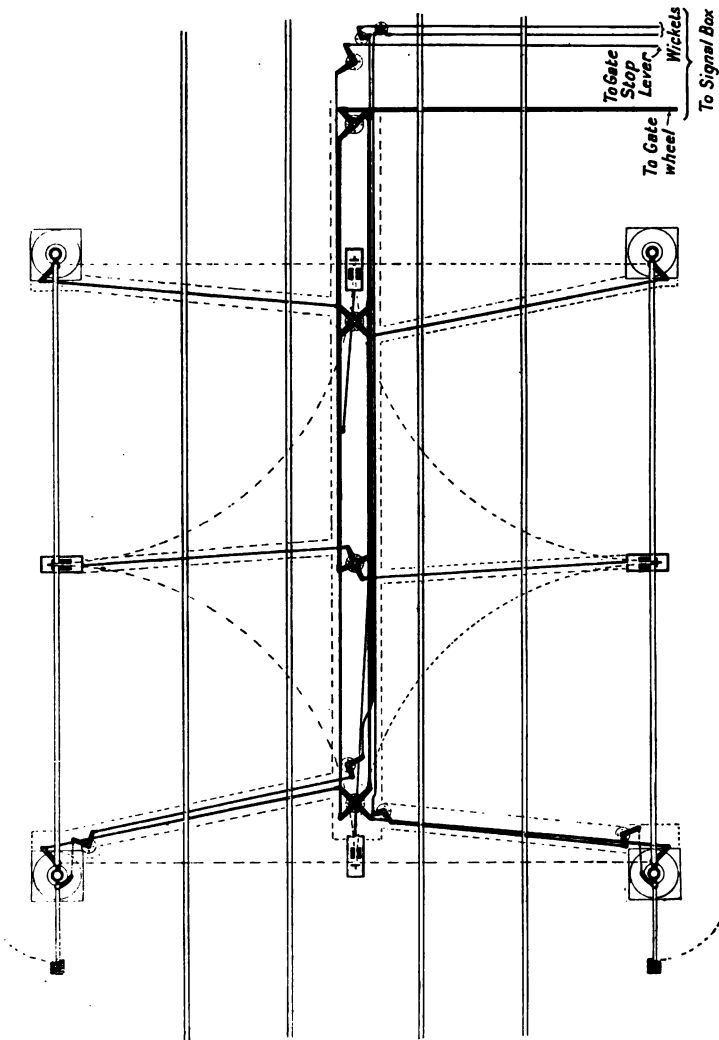


FIG. 168.—Arrangement of Rods, Cranks, etc. for Level Crossing Gates.

form is as shown in Fig 169. The stops are enclosed in a cast-iron box, and consist of two portions, a FRONT STOP and a BACK STOP. The BACK STOP takes the place of the wood block

described above, and it rises above the roadway when the rod working the stops is pushed in, but is lowered level with the roadway when the rod is pulled out. (It should be noted that one BACK STOP serves for both gates.)

The FRONT STOPS are independent, one for each gate, and are counterbalanced, so that they move upwards when permitted by the stud marked "A" Fig. 169. When the back stop is down, the front stops are also down; when, however, the operating rod is pushed, the back stop is forced up, and the front stops are allowed to rise as the counterbalanced end moves down on stud "A." When the gates are moved towards the stops, the front stops are forced level with the roadway by the ends of the gates passing over them, but as soon as the gates

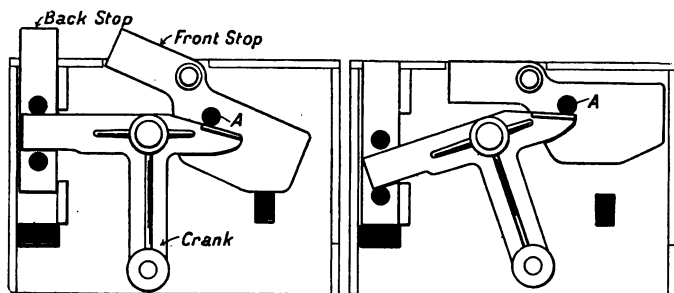


Fig. 169.—Gate Stop Box (section).

are past them, the front stops instantly fly up, and prevent the gates from swinging back, after they strike the back stop. It will be noticed that the form of the front stops allows the gates to depress them only when the gates are being moved towards the stops. Before the gates can be moved back again to their original position, the front stops must be placed level with the roadway, this is done by pulling the rod, the back stop moving down at the same time. Two front stops are provided, because in service it generally happens that one gate arrives at the stops before the other, and with two separate stops each gate is trapped independently; if this were not done, it would often happen that the gate arriving last would release the gate which had arrived before it.

Fig. 168 shows the complete rodding for working gates and

gate stops where four sets of stops are fitted. All the stops in this case are worked by one lever, and when one set of stops is raised ready to receive the gates, the opposite set of stops is level with the railway.

With gate stops of this description it is a simple matter for anyone to depress the front stops with the foot, force the gates open (straining the connections), and get through on to the railway. This can be avoided by putting an iron sheath to cover the front stops, one sheath being fixed to the bottom of each gate.

Fig. 170 shows an improved pattern gate stop, where the front stops are locked after the gates have been "trapped." All four stops are worked by one lever, but instead of the lever being right over when the gates are being moved open, the lever is placed at a point about four-fifths of its full travel. This places the stops in the correct position to receive the gates. After the gates have been fully opened, the lever is moved the remaining one-fifth of its travel, and this last movement locks the front stops by means of the slide attached to the crank engaging with the link fixed to the front stop. Owing to the escape crank this final one-fifth motion does not impart any further travel to the stops.

To return the gates to their normal position, the gate stop lever is first put to a position about four-fifths back; this lowers the front and back stops which hold the gates, and at the same time puts the opposite set of stops in position to receive the gates. When the gates have been moved and are caught in the stops, the last one-fifth of the travel of the gate stop lever locks them in that position.

With many pattern stops there is a possibility of the signalman locking the stops before the gates are properly secured; to prevent this, the stops can be fitted with a detector, against which the gates strike when they have passed over the front stops. In pressing back the detector (shown black in Fig. 170) the rod connected to it is lifted clear of the slide which is attached to the main crank, allowing it to be moved to lock the stops. Owing to the complicated nature of "detecting" stops they are seldom used.

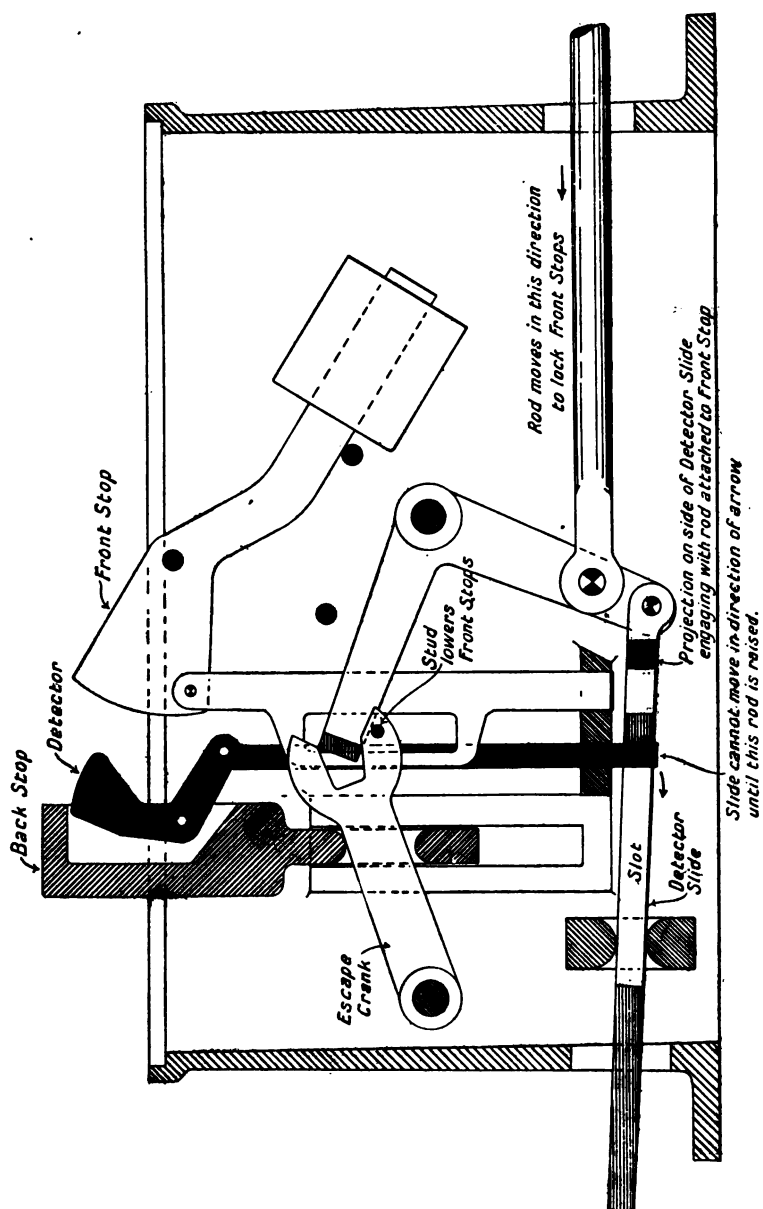


FIG. 170.—Detected Gate Stops.

A more serious source of trouble occurs when the signalman places the gate stops in the roadway ready to receive the gates some little time before he moves the gates across the roadway; the stops being *up* form an obstruction in the highway, and serious accidents have occurred owing to horses stumbling over the raised stops. This difficulty has been overcome by operating the back stops directly from the main gate gearing, so that they lie in the down position until the gates are within a yard or two of them when they rise to receive the gates. If balanced front stops are used, these are

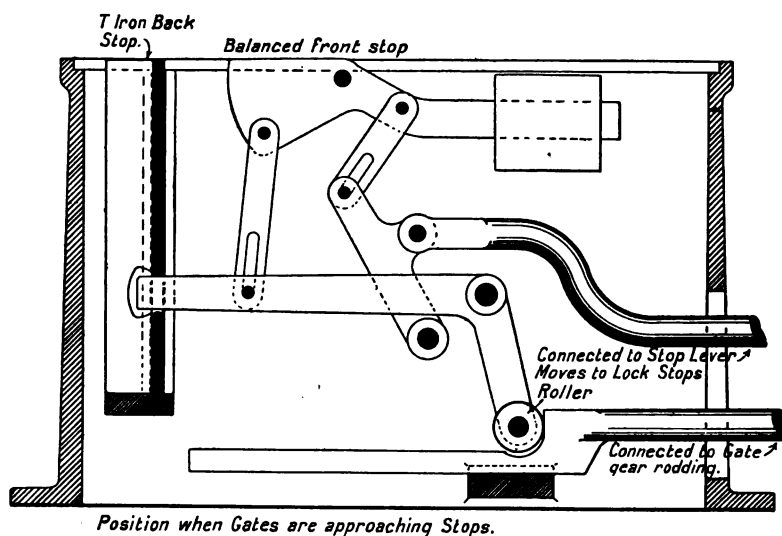


FIG. 171.

allowed to rise with the back stops (see Fig. 171). In some types, however, non-balanced front stops are used, and these are mechanically prevented from being raised until the back stops are up (see Fig. 172). To replace the gates the front stops have first to be lowered by the gate stop lever, and as the gates move away from the stops, the back stop gradually returns to its normal position level with the roadway. Fig. 173 shows a lay-out for automatic stops of this description with gates on the skew.

It is possible to have gate stops incorporating all the

safeguards above described, but in service it is found that complicated devices give far more trouble than devices which are simpler, but which may be less perfect theoretically.

As gate stops are fixed in the middle of a roadway, it is obvious that the less attention and examination they require the better. They are liable to be silted up with mud, and in

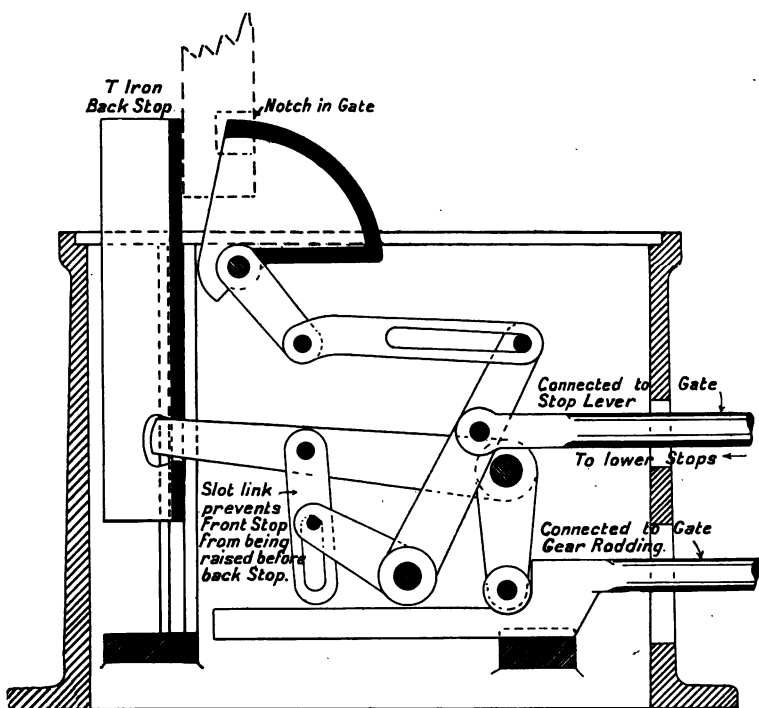


FIG. 172.

bad weather flooded with surface drainage; and for any machine to work satisfactorily under these severe conditions, requires the simplest possible mechanical motions, strong bearings and parts, and, if possible, some means for removing silt. Efficient drainage is necessary, or else a cover which can be removed for baling out water and mud, must be provided.

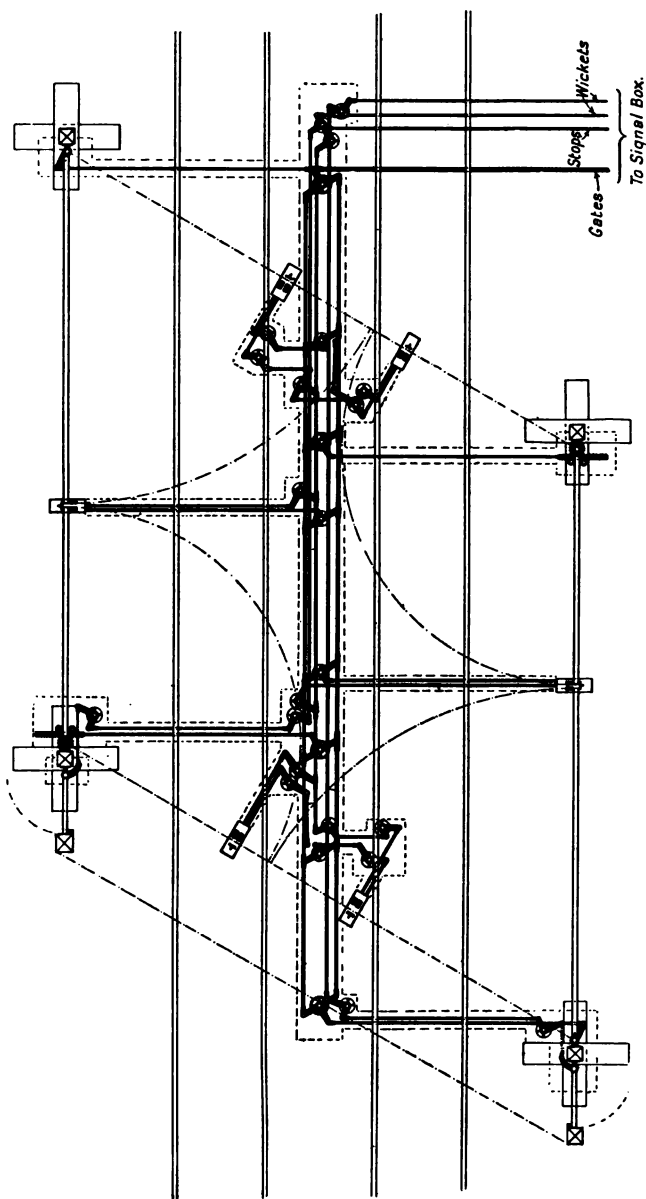


FIG. 173.—Arrangement of Rods, Cranks, etc., for Gates on the Skew with Automatic Gate Stops.

WICKET GATES.

In addition to the main gates, small gates are fixed at the side to allow pedestrians to pass when the main gates are closed against the roadway. These gates (termed "wicket gates") are *controlled* from the signal box. Sometimes where there are short gates on both sides of the crossing, all four gates are worked in a manner similar to the main gates, but in most cases the gates close themselves by means of a gravity counterbalance, and they are either bolted in the closed position, or else held in the closed position by means of a chain or slotted rod. A common way of causing the gates to be self-closing is to design the bearing so that when opened the gate rises slightly on a helical path; the whole weight of the gate then tends to make it close itself. Occasionally a weight in a pit with a chain and quadrant portion of a wheel is fitted to the gates below street level to make them close. It is preferable to hold the gates closed by means of a slot, or chain, rather than a bolt, as should the wickets be slightly open it is impossible to bolt them. In the case of the chain or slot, when the wicket lever is pulled, the gates are held tightly against the gate post, it being of no consequence should they not be closing properly by their own weight (or a counterbalance weight).

GEAR FOR WORKING GATES FROM SIGNAL BOX.

There are many types of gearing for operating the level crossing gates. A very common arrangement is that of a wheel geared to a leading screw; a large nut on this screw is connected by means of a link to a down rod and thus on to a leading-off crank as shown in Fig. 174. Another way of utilising a leading screw is shown in Fig. 175, the nut engaging directly on to a crank. Fig. 176 shows a device consisting of a train of wheels engaging with a segment of a circle fitted to a lever, the lever being made to suit the locking frame. The lever is made of a stronger section than the ordinary point or signal levers.

The screw gear types are usually fixed near the window a

the end of the box adjoining the gates, and are independent of the locking frame. The tooth gearing types are usually fixed as a part of the interlocking frame, and are placed at that end of the frame which is the nearer to the gates.

To effect the interlocking between the gate gear and the signals an independent lock lever is sometimes introduced, the lock itself generally being an ordinary facing point lock shoe fitted on timbers below the floor. A rod is taken from

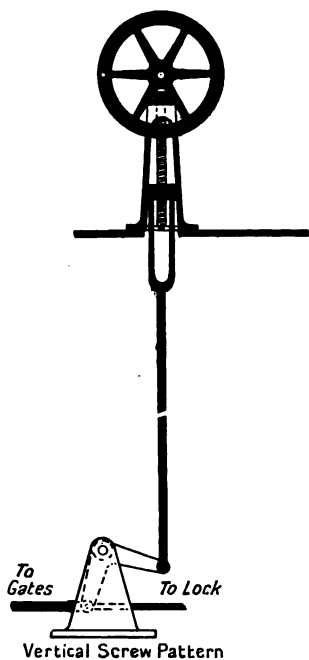


FIG. 174.—Gate Gearing.

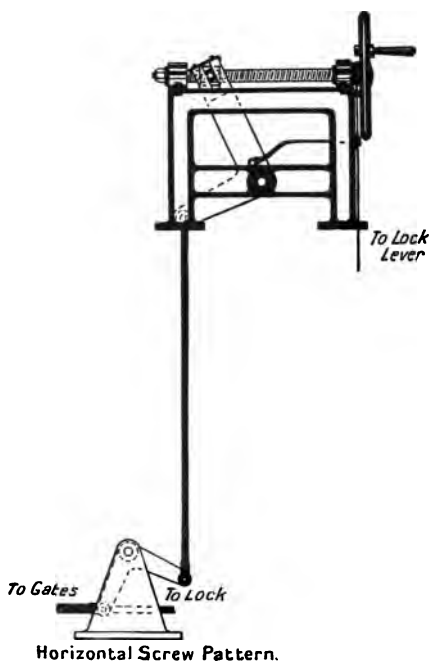


FIG. 175.—Gate Gearing.

the leading-off gate crank to the lock, and this rod operates a slide with one hole in it, the hole being made to fit the lock plunger. The lock plunger is connected to the lock lever, and it is arranged that when the lock lever is normal the gates are bolted across the highway. The main line running signal levers lock this lever, so that should the running signals for a train approaching the gates be *off*, it is not possible for the gates to be moved across the railway. To

place the gates across the railway the lock lever is pulled ; this withdraws the bolt, and when the gates have been placed across the railway, it is impossible for the lock lever to be returned to the *NORMAL* position, as the slide in the lock shoe operated by the gate leading-off crank prevents the lock plunger from entering. Not until the gates have been placed

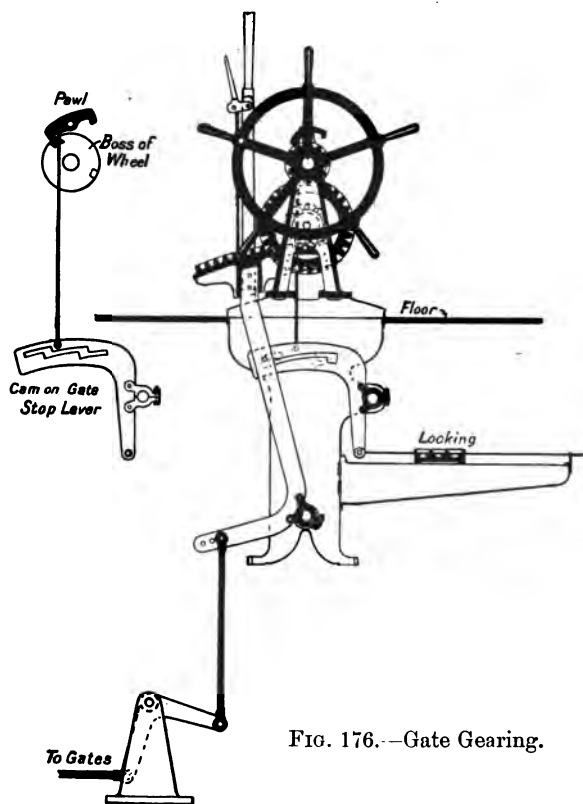


FIG. 176.—Gate Gearing.

across the roadway can the lock lever be replaced. This is a very simple device, but it allows the signalman to strain the connections between the gate wheel and the lock shoe should he attempt to move the gates with the lock lever normal. A more efficient method is to have a small pawl on the gate gearing which engages in a notch cut in the boss of the gate

wheel (see Fig. 176). This pawl may be worked from the gate stop lever if gate stops of suitable pattern are used, such as shown in Fig. 170; but if gate stops of the pattern shown in Fig. 169 are used, an independent lock lever must be employed.

The arrangement of working stops, as in Fig. 170, and gate gear, as in Fig. 176, is thus:—

Normally the gates are across the highway, and the gate stop lever also is in the “normal” position in the locking frame. This allows traffic on the railway to proceed. To set the gates for the highway, the gate stop lever is moved four-fifths over; this takes the pawl out of the notch in the gate wheel boss by means of a cam, and allows the gate wheel to be turned. A description of the movements of the corresponding stops has been given on p. 188.

When the gates are *home*, inside the stops, the gate stop lever is pulled right over; this places the opposite end of the pawl into a notch in the gate-wheel boss. To replace the gates a similar procedure takes place, the stop lever being placed four-fifths back to take the pawl out of the notch. This arrangement ensures that the gate-stop lever is in the correct position to place the stops ready for receiving the gates; and it is not possible to strain the connections by attempting to wind the gates without first having lowered the stops.

Should the gates first be moved in one direction (with the stops placed correctly to receive them), and the signalman wish to return the gates to the original position, it would be possible for him to do so without having placed the stop lever in the correct position for this movement; to prevent this a ratchet pawl is sometimes fitted, so that when once the signalman has commenced to move the gates in one direction he cannot reverse the direction of motion until the gates have been moved to the full distance, and the stop lever placed in the correct position for the reverse movement.

The wicket gates are usually worked by ordinary levers in the interlocking frame, but without any interlocking attached.

Sometimes small two-lever dwarf frames are used, these

being fixed on the floor of the box near the windows overlooking the gates.

At very busy crossings some form of warning gong is occasionally provided to warn users of the highway that the gates are about to be closed against the roadway. A very good device is a large-size electric bell fitted up inside a casing with louvre boards; the bell circuit is closed by the first motion of the gate-stop lever, and the last motion of the gate-stop lever breaks the circuit. A trip contact is employed to prevent the bell from ringing when the gates are being opened again for the roadway.

At level crossings which are not block posts, and where the road gates open away from the railway, an automatic warning gong is sometimes used to give warning of an approaching train; in such cases the circuit is made up as the approaching train passes over a treadle some distance from the crossing, and the circuit broken when the train runs over another treadle ahead of the crossing. For double lines a separate relay circuit is required for each line, and for single lines the treadles are in pairs, the outer treadles moving the relay to the "cut out" position, and the inner treadles moving the relay to the "cut in" position so as to cause the bell to ring. Polarised relays are generally used for this work.

LOCKS FOR GROUND FRAMES, &c.

It is frequently necessary to fix a small dwarf frame to work a pair of points which are further from a signal box than the distance allowed by the Board of Trade for operating points (300 yards). The lever working such points must be locked, and to unlock the lever, permission must be obtained from the main box. The frame for working the points can be a full-sized one if required, but as a rule no signal box is built, and the frame being fixed at about ground level (called a "ground frame") a long lever would not be suitable for leading out the connections (Fig. 177).

The ground frame should be covered over with a wooden hut, and either an electric bell (with code of beats), or a

telephone installed for communication with the main signal box.

It is usual to have a release lever in the main box and

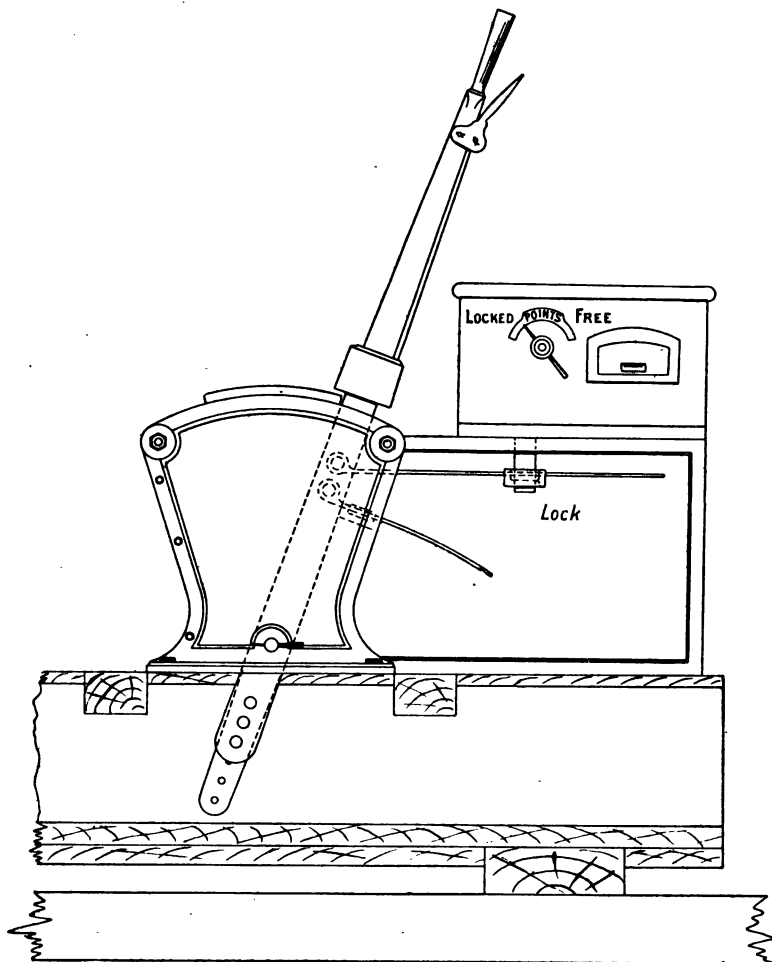


FIG. 177.—Ground Frame with Tablet Lock for Siding on Single Line.

a corresponding release lever in the ground frame, with the two release levers interlocked. There are several types of lock for effecting this, the simplest being a lock and key

of the "Annett" type. Fig. 178. This is a simple lock bolted to the release levers (one lock on each). Taking the

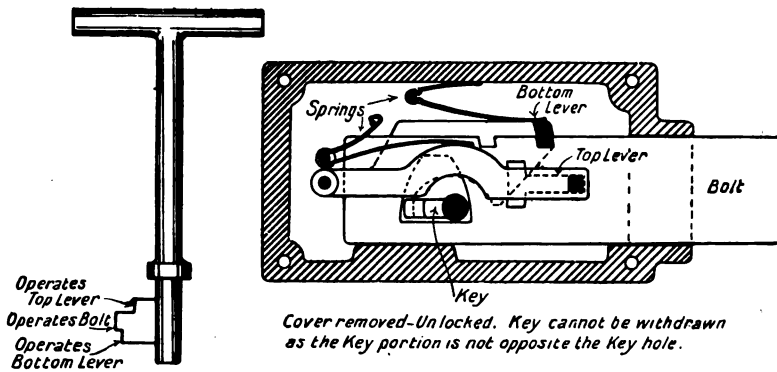


FIG. 178.—Annett's Lock.

release lever in the main box: When the lever is normal, the key is in the lock, the bolt of the lock being in the "unlocked" position. It is arranged that it is not possible for the key to be withdrawn unless the bolt of the lock has been put into the locked position, and the bolt cannot be placed in that position so long as the lever is normal, because the bolt presses against some portion of the locking frame. When the release lever has been pulled over, the bolt of the lock comes opposite either a hole in the frame, or a notch cut for the purpose (see Fig. 179); the key can now be turned placing the bolt in the notch or hole, as the case may be, and on being turned it can be withdrawn and carried to the ground frame. The Annett

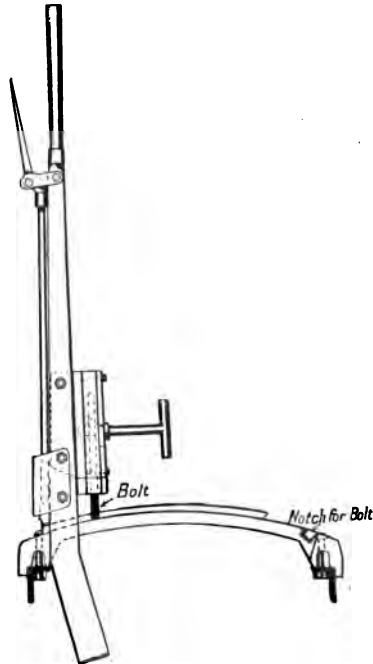


FIG. 179.—Annett's Lock on Lever.

lock on the release lever in the ground frame will be *locked*, with the bolt either in a notch or hole in the frame; on inserting and turning the key the bolt is lifted and the lever can be pulled over, and while the lever is over it is impossible to withdraw the key, as there is no notch or hole for the bolt to enter when this lever is pulled; hence it is not possible for the key to be taken back to the signal box to replace the release lever there until the release lever in the ground frame has been replaced and locked in the normal position. The release lever in the main signal box will lock all conflicting points and signals, and the release lever in the ground frame will unlock the necessary levers for moving the points, &c., there.

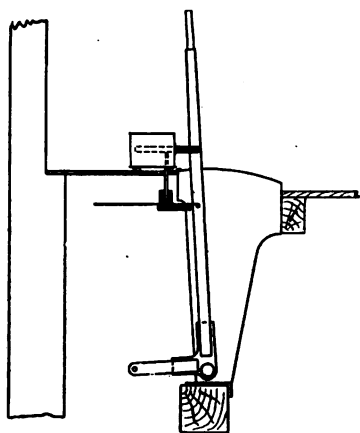


FIG. 180.—Staff Lock on Lever.

Another method of fixing an Annett lock is to drill a hole through the end of the bolt and connect the bolt to an interlocking plunger through the medium of a crank. The interlocking can then be arranged to lock any levers which may be required without the use of a special RELEASE lever.

Instead of a simple key, a staff with a key formed on it is sometimes used, and the lock in this case, being much larger, cannot be bolted to the release lever. The lock is placed at the back of the levers and engages in a locking plunger attached to the release lever (see Fig. 180). The bolt of the lock enters into a hole in the locking plunger, this hole being drilled to suit according as the lever requires to be locked when "normal," or when "pulled."

When it is desired to save the necessity of carrying the key between the main signal box and the ground frame, a lock operated by point rodding is generally adopted. A simple device is to use a common facing point lock; this is placed half-way between the signal box and the ground frame. One

release lever works the bolt and the other release lever works the slide, it being arranged that the ground frame release lever is locked normally, while the main signal box lever on being pulled, withdraws the bolt and allows the ground frame lever to be pulled. When this lever has been pulled, it is not possible for the bolt to be replaced; consequently, unless the rodding is forced, the main signal box release lever cannot be restored to the normal position. Fig. 181 shows an alternative device instead of a common facing point lock. This device, it will be noticed, like the facing point lock, depends on the point rodding holding good for its faithful working, as should the rods fail, the locking between the two release levers is destroyed. Since rods are more liable to fail when in compression than tension, the rods are arranged to be in tension



FIG. 181.—Lock for Ground Frame.

all the way, and this, of course, precludes the use of compensators.

A more trustworthy arrangement is to take a rod from the release lever in the signal box to the release lever in the ground frame, and fix a lock directly on the release lever; while for the return locking of the release lever in the main signal box a rod is taken from the release lever in the ground frame to a similar lock on the release lever in the signal box. This lock generally takes the form of a simple plunger working in the ordinary interlocking channels (Fig. 182).

In order to inform the men concerned when the lock has been released, an indicator is fixed above the floor and connected to the crank working the lock. The indicator often takes the form of a miniature signal arm, the arm when horizontal indicating **LOCKED**, and when inclined indicating **FREE**. Another device is to have a small case with a slide

inside; this shows **LOCKED** or **FREE** through an opening in the face of the case.

Locks of this description are often used for effecting locking between two adjacent signal boxes, and sometimes a similar lock, but operated by wire, is installed for preventing the signalman from pulling his distant signal lever until the distant signal of a box ahead has been pulled. Where the

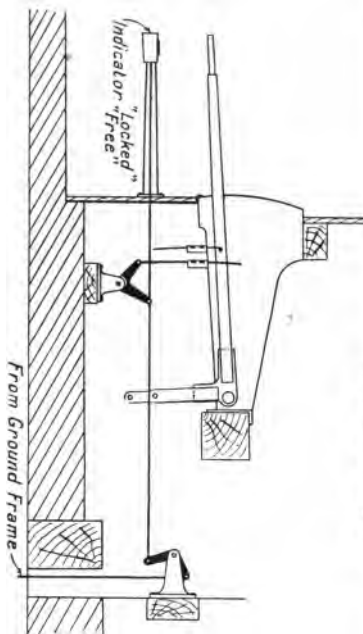


FIG. 182.—Release Lever for Ground Frame.

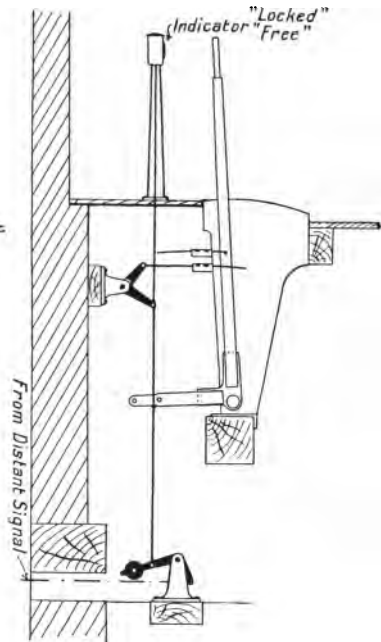


FIG. 183.—Wire-worked Lock for Distant Signal Lever.

lock is operated by wire, a counterbalance weight is required to replace the lock (Fig. 183).

The most efficient lock is, perhaps, an electric lock, and this adds no weight to the levers, as in the case of rod locks. Fig. 184 shows a simple electric lock suitable for this purpose which consists of a common electro-magnet; to one end of the armature a pin is attached, and this pin enters into a hole drilled in one of the interlocking plungers, so that in this

position the lever is **LOCKED**. When an electric current flows through the coil, the armature is raised, thus lifting the pin out of the hole in the interlocking plunger, and the lever is free to be pulled.

Fig. 185 shows the wiring connections for one lever releasing another. It is absolutely necessary with this type of lock to ensure that the pin is in the hole in the locking plunger of the release lever, before it is possible to send an electric current to free the other release lever. This is effected by including a contact worked by the armature in the releasing circuit. A device called a "commutator" is fixed to each lever, and the commutator only allows the current to flow when the lever is in the correct position. In order to prevent the current from

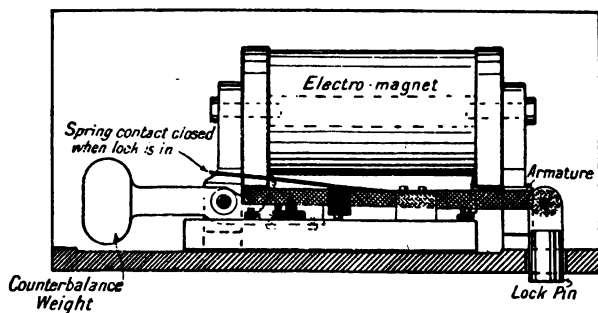


FIG. 184.—Electric Lock.

flowing during the whole of the time that the releasing lever is in the correct position, and also to prevent the battery current from releasing the wrong lock, a two-way contact is inserted in the circuit at some convenient position both in the main signal box and in the ground frame hut.

This contact is worked off the catch rod of the lever, or it takes the form of a simple push-button, which is either fixed immediately behind the lever or in the floor, to be depressed by the foot.

Taking the circuit as shown in Fig. 185, and commencing at the battery marked "A," the wire first goes to the commutator "a" fixed on the lever in the box A. This commutator only allows current to flow to the line wire when the lever is pulled.

When the lever is over, direct metallic connection is made to the line wire via the contact on the lock-armature and press button, and following the line wire to the "ground-frame," it leads on to the contact button; when this button is pressed in, there is a direct connection made to the electric lock and on to "earth," and as one end of the battery "A" is connected to "earth," an electric current can flow through the lock coils at ground frame B. This lifts the lock, and the lever can be pulled over.

When the lever at A is pulled over, the pin attached to the lock-armature drops into the hole in the plunger attached to

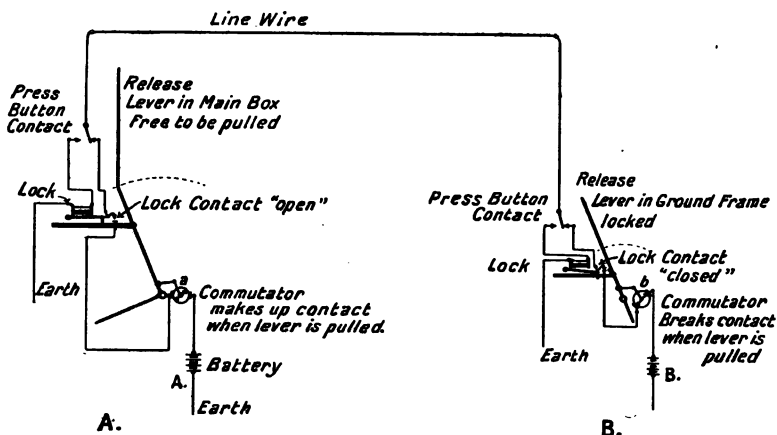


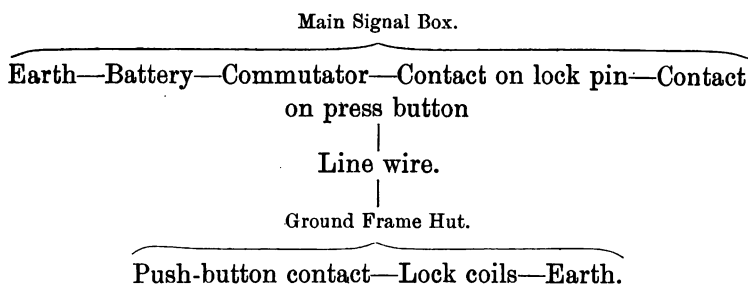
FIG. 185.—Diagram of Wiring for Electric Locking between Two Boxes.

the lever, and this prevents the lever at A from being put back. To put back the lever at A, an electric current must be made to pass through the lock coils at A.

No current can be obtained from Battery "A" for this purpose, because it is cut out by the press-button. The releasing current can only come from Battery "B," and current can only be obtained from this battery when Commutator "b," the lock in the locking plunger, and the contact on the press-button are in the normal position. Therefore it is necessary first to replace the lever in the ground frame, and as soon as this is done the pin drops into the hole in the

plunger. This completes the circuit at B. Then, when the contact button at A is pushed in, the lock pin will lift out of the plunger and allow the lever to be replaced.

The complete circuit therefore is :—



Another type of lock often used for this purpose is Messrs. Sykes' Electric Lock.

A set of permanent magnets is employed; to the ends of the permanent magnets ordinary electro-magnets are fitted, and an armature is held up by the magnetism induced by the permanent magnets in the cores of the electro-magnets. To release the armature the magnetism induced in the cores of the electro-magnets must be neutralised. This is readily done by sending a current round the coils in such a direction that it sets up a magnetic field of opposite polarity to that induced by the permanent magnets.

Fig. 186 shows the general wiring arrangements for one lever to release another lever on this system.

The lock piece engages in the locking plunger when the armature is held up, and to take the lock off the plunger it is necessary to make the armature drop. To re-lock the lever the armature has to be raised. This raising of the armature may be effected by hand, but it is generally done automatically by the lever itself. Taking the arrangement as illustrated, the instrument is fixed above the levers with a down rod connecting the instrument with the lock piece, which is below floor-level. The down rod is held up in the locked position by resting on the top of the small crank marked *a* which is attached to the armature. When a current is sent round the

coils and the magnetism induced by the permanent magnets neutralised, the crank is forced clear of the down rod by a small spring marked B. The down rod now drops by its own weight, and lifts the lock out of the notch in the locking plunger. This allows the lever to be pulled over. On putting the lever back to the normal position, a small pawl marked C engages with the roller on the bottom end of the down rod, and this forces the down rod *up*. On the down rod is a stud marked *d* which presses on the bottom of the armature crank and places the armature once more against the cores of the

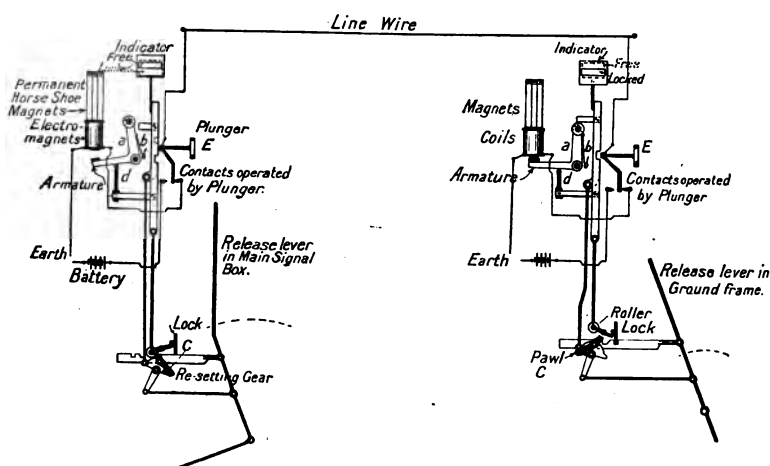


FIG. 186.—Wiring Diagram for Electric Locking between Two Boxes using Sykes' Locks.

electro-magnet, and, unless the neutralising current is flowing, the permanent magnets will cause the armature to be held tightly against the cores. In practice, the soft iron of the armature is never allowed to touch magnet cores, and either an air gap is maintained or some non-magnetic material is used to keep them apart.

The wiring arrangements are similar to the system first described, but the releasing current is sent by the signalman pushing in plunger marked E. This plunger can only be pushed in when the down rod is *up*—that is to say, in the position for the lever to be locked; to ensure that the

lever is in the correct position for giving the release, a second slide, with a notch in it, is provided ; the notch in this slide is opposite the plunger only when the lever is in the required position. This device is in place of the commutators used in Fig. 185.

In order to inform the signalman when the lever is released an indicator is fastened to the down rod ; this shows the word "LOCKED" when the armature is held up, and "FREE" when the down rod is in the down position with the lock lifted out of the notch.

This lock is more complicated than the simple coil lock, but has the advantage that the releasing current must be of the correct strength and must flow in the correct direction. If the current is too weak, it will not neutralise the induced magnetism of the permanent magnets, and if the current is sent in the wrong direction, it only causes the armature to be held the tighter ; hence it is almost impossible for a stray current to release the instrument.

LOCKS FOR SIDINGS ON SINGLE LINES.

Sidings situated on a single line at a distance from a staff or tablet station are fitted with a lock ; to gain access to the siding the staff or tablet must be used to release the lock.

If a staff is employed, a key is formed on it, and this fits into a lock as shown in Figs. 179 and 180. Where the train tablet is in use this is not possible, but the tablet itself is employed to give the release. Fig. 187 shows a diagram of *Tyer's Patent Tablet Lock*. Normally the slide is in mid-position, half in and half out of the lock. In this position the lever is locked. When the lock is required to be taken off the lever, the slide is drawn out as far as possible, the tablet placed on it, and the slide is then pushed in. If the tablet is the correct one for the section, it will lift the lock-detecting levers and allow the slide to be pushed right into the lock ; in this position the lever can be pulled. When the lever has been pulled, the slide is locked, and cannot be pulled out to regain the tablet. When the lever has been put back to normal position the slide can again be pulled out and the tablet taken away.

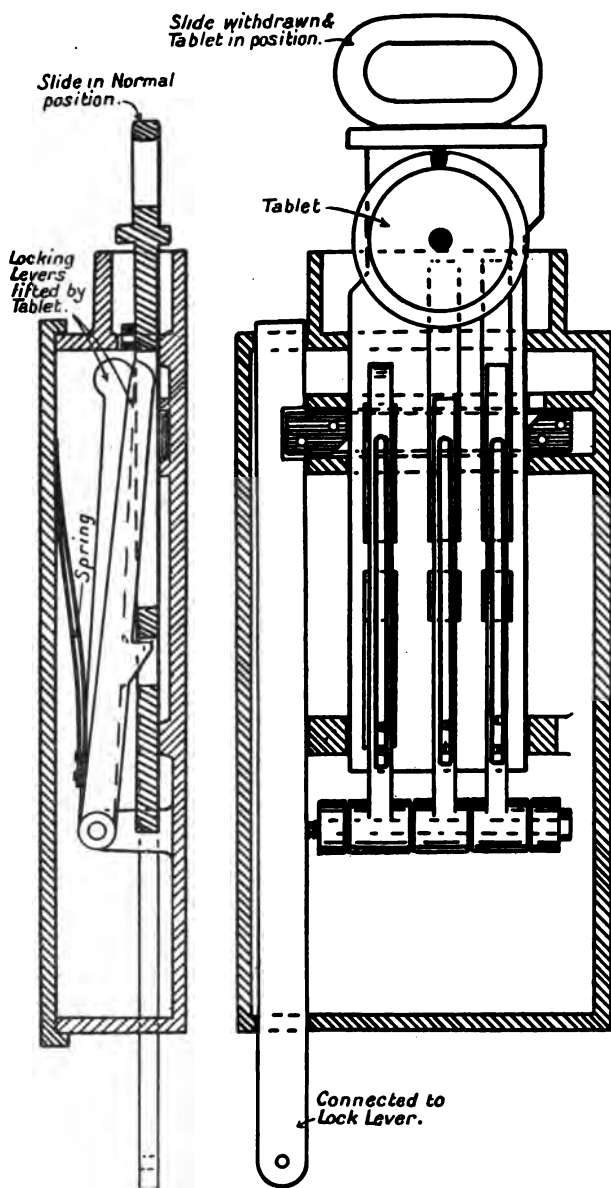


FIG. 187.—Tyer's Tablet Lock.

Fig. 188 shows a diagram of Stevens' patent for the same purpose.

The tablet is placed in the lock after the handle marked A has been lifted; the placing of the tablet in the lock presses back the piece marked B, and when the handle A is dropped, a pin passing through the top of the casting, of which the handle A is a portion, remains up a distance equal to the thickness of the tablet. If the tablet is of the correct diameter and thickness, then the detecting piece at the back, and the lever connected to the top detecting pin, allow the releasing handle C to be turned from "LOCKED" to "FREE." This lifts the bolt and allows the lever to be pulled. When the releasing handle has been turned to FREE, the small handle A cannot be lifted to gain access to the tablet, hence the tablet is locked in the instrument.

When the lever is pulled over, it is impossible for the handle C to be put back from FREE to LOCKED, as the bolt worked by that handle presses on the solid metal of the lock slide. To regain possession of the tablet the lever must be replaced in the normal position, and this allows the handle C to be turned to "LOCKED," which again permits the handle A to be lifted and the tablet extracted.

The essential requirements of any pattern tablet lock are:—

- (1) Only the correct tablet must release the lock.
- (2) The tablet must be locked in the instrument until the lever has been restored to its normal position.

SIGNAL REPEATERS.

When a signal is out of the signalman's sight, some device is necessary to indicate to him when the signal is at DANGER and when it is at CLEAR. The usual method of repeating a signal arm is by fixing a commutator on the signal post, the commutator being worked by the arm. The contacts of the commutator are so arranged that when the arm is horizontal, or not drooping more than 5 degrees, an electric current is sent in one direction along the line wire to an indicator in the signal box. When the arm droops more than the prescribed

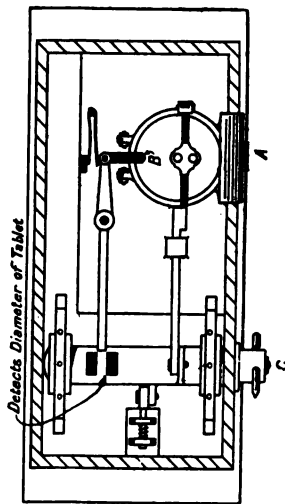
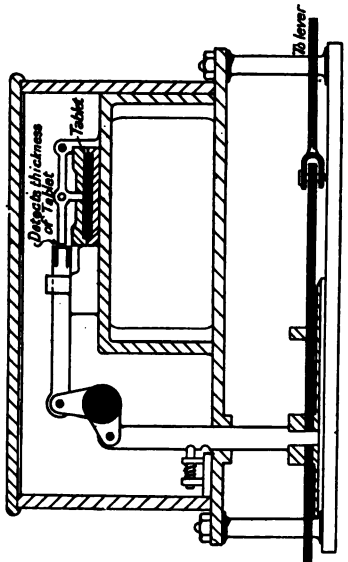
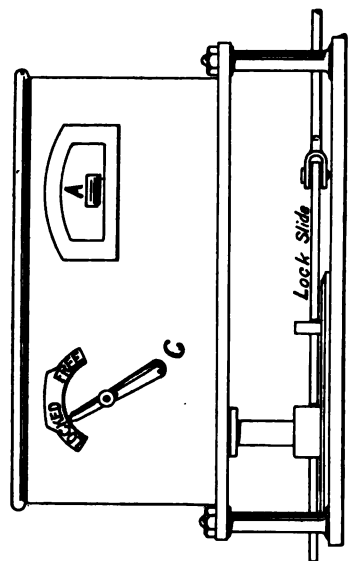


FIG. 188.—Stevens' Tablet Lock.

amount, and until it reaches about 35 degrees (which latter is considered a correct CLEAR signal), no current is sent along the line wire, and when the arm is between about 35 degrees and fully off, a current of opposite direction is sent along the line wire (Fig. 189).

At the signal box the indicator consists of a magnetic needle suspended in the field of an electric coil; the needle is connected to a spindle, and a miniature representation of a

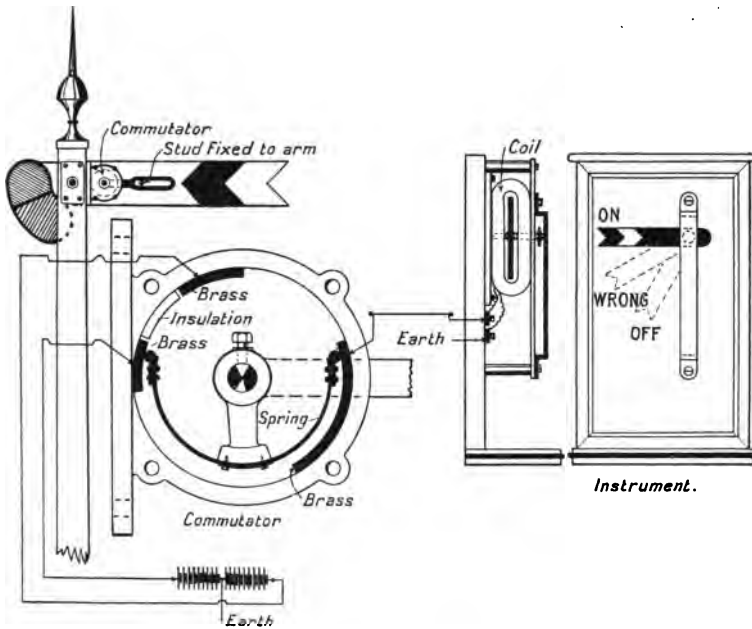


FIG. 189.—Signal Arm Repeater.

signal arm is also attached to the same spindle. When the current flows in the first mentioned direction the magnetic field set up round the needle urges it in a direction which causes the miniature arm to take up a horizontal position (a small stop pin prevents it from moving beyond the horizontal position). When no current flows through the coil, the needle returns to a neutral position by gravity, and the arm in this position indicates OUT OF ORDER, or WRONG. When the current flows in the reverse direction, the needle is urged in the

opposite direction, which places the miniature arm fully off, indicating CLEAR.

This instrument is termed a "three-position" instrument, as it indicates the signal when "ON," "DROOPING" or "OUT OF ORDER," and "OFF." It will be noticed that any failure of current indicates "OUT OF ORDER."

Some repeaters were employed at one time which indicated "ON" when no current flowed, and a current was sent only when the signal was at clear, this being termed a "two-position" instrument.

Repeaters are most commonly fitted to distant signals, as these signals are often placed about 1,000 yards from the signal box, and this great distance in many cases places them out of the signalman's view; when the distant signal is the sole arm on the post only one repeater is required, working in conjunction with the arm.

It is the practice on many railways, in cases where the distant signal is fitted lower down on the post carrying the starting signal for the box in the rear, to repeat the slot lever in addition to repeating the arm of the signal. The reason for repeating the slot lever is to inform the signalman how his portion of the signal is working, as should he pull his lever, and the arm repeater show that the arm did not move, he would be uncertain as to whether he had performed his portion of the work correctly, or whether the signalman in the rear box had his starting signal in the danger position, thus holding the distant arm at danger. It is desirable to give the signalman as much information as possible as to the working of his signals, but it is not of *vital* importance that he should have his slot lever repeated, because should he be in doubt he can inquire as to the position of the starting signal of the rear box by telephone. It is, however, of *vital* importance that he should know the position of the signal arm, and for this reason many railway companies do not go to the expense of fitting the slot levers with repeaters in addition to repeating the signal arm.

It is also necessary to repeat the light of a signal in addition to repeating the arm, when it cannot be seen by the

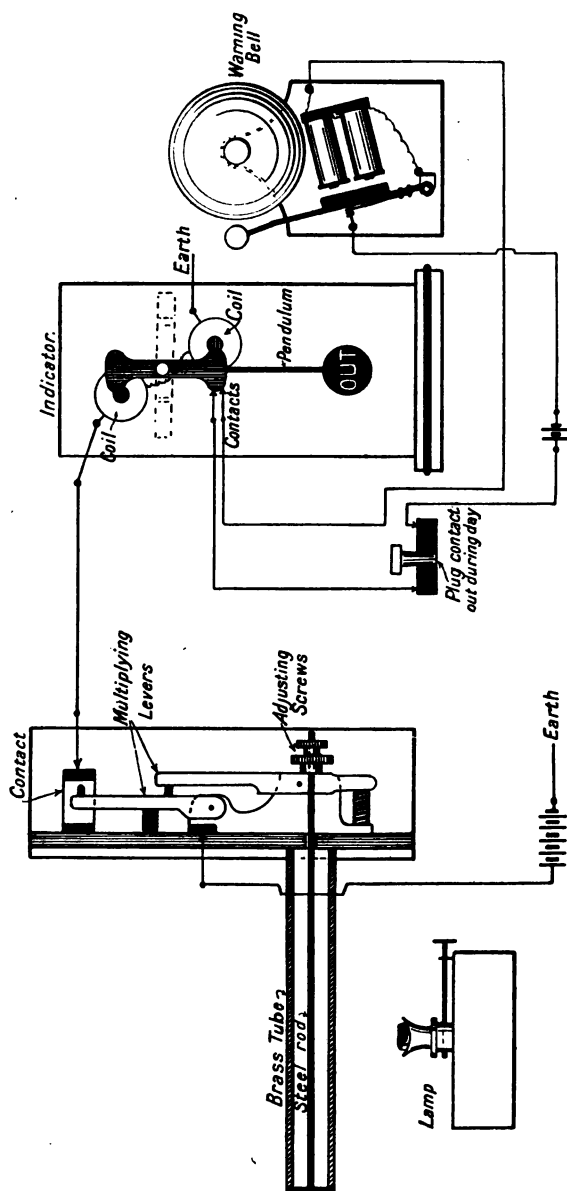


FIG. 190.—Signal Light Repeater.

signalman. A light repeater works on the principle that a lamp when alight gives off heat, and that different metals (such as iron and copper) have different coefficients of expansion. Two dissimilar metals are coupled together in such a manner that any variation of temperature causes one piece to project beyond the other; the difference is very small, but by a system of levers this small difference is amplified sufficiently to make or break an electric contact. Fig. 190 shows one form of light repeater. The tube is made of brass, and the inside rod of steel. Both are fixed at *one* end, and the free end of the

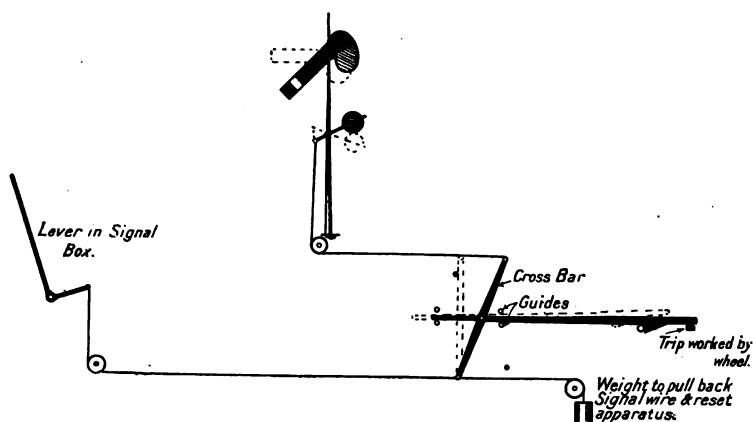


FIG. 191.—Mechanical Signal Reverser.

steel is connected to a lever; this lever rests on another one, to the end of which a contact is fitted. The device is adjusted so that when *cold* the contact is *broken*, but when the lamp is alight the heat causes the brass tube to expand more rapidly than the iron rod, thus giving a relative motion between them, and so moving the levers sufficiently to make up the contact; this sends a current along the line wire to the signal box. Should the lamp go out, the tube and rod return to the normal temperature and the contact is broken.

At the signal box an instrument is fixed, which, when a current is flowing, indicates "LIGHT IN," and any cessation of current, from whatever cause, allows the indicator to return

by gravity to its normal position, which indicates "LIGHT OUT." When the indicator falls to the "LIGHT OUT" position, it makes a contact, which closes an independent bell circuit, and the bell rings to call the signalman's attention to the light being out. To prevent the bell from ringing during the day-time, a small switch is provided, which completes the bell circuit when required.

Where the signals are electrically lighted, a small glow-lamp—fixed in the signal box—is included in the lighting circuit of the signal to be repeated. Any failure of light in the signal is indicated by the glow-lamp going out.

When the distant signal is combined on the same post as the starting signal of the rear box, the signalman at that box is responsible for observing the lights of both signals, and the distant signal light is not then repeated to the box working the signal unless the rear box is switched out during hours of darkness.

SIGNAL REVERSERS.

It is sometimes desirable to arrange that the train passing a certain point shall automatically place the signal behind it to danger. This can be done mechanically, as shown in Fig. 191. The signal wire is taken to a cross-bar

instead of directly on to the counterbalance lever, and the opposite end of the cross-bar is connected to a catch, this catch being operated by a treadle placed by the side of the running rail, so that a train passing over the treadle releases the catch and allows the signal arm to go to danger. Either the flanges of the wheels operate the treadle, or preferably the depression of

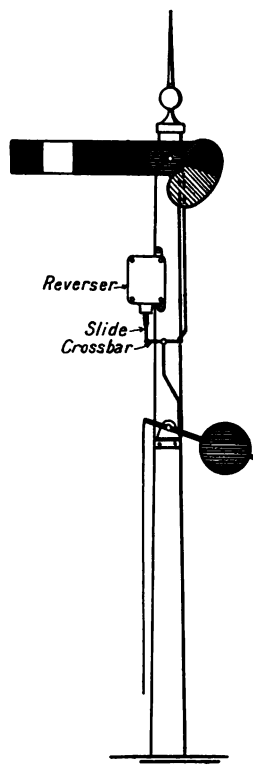


FIG. 192.—Arrangement of Reverser on Post.

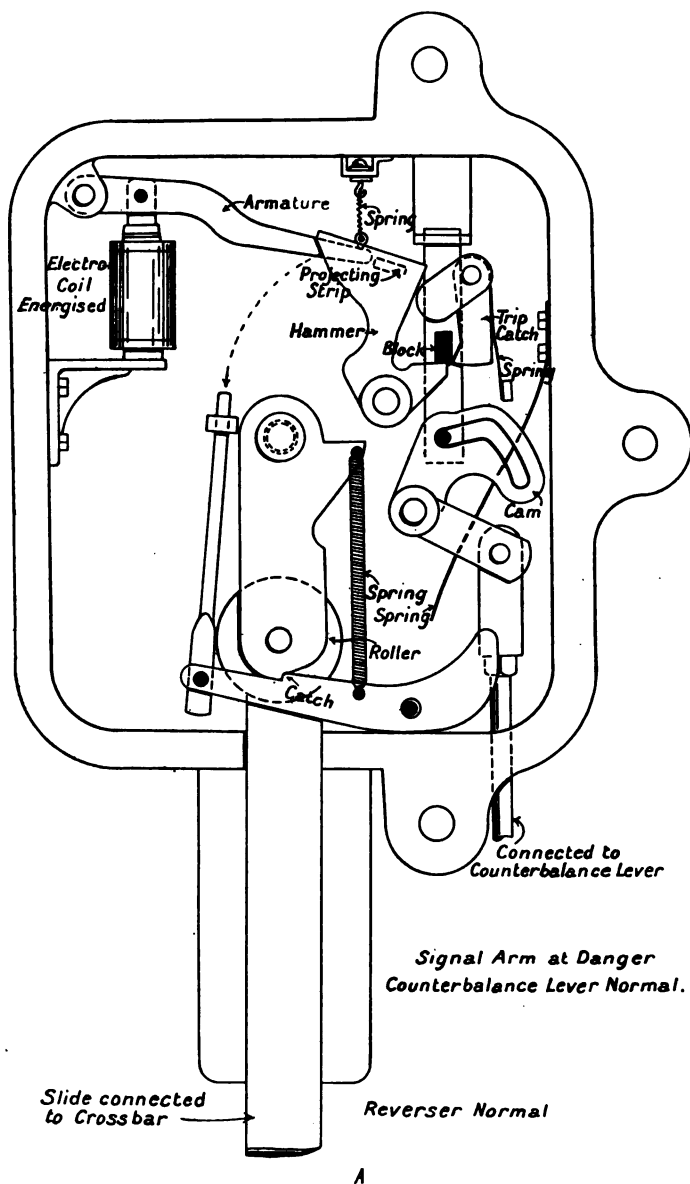
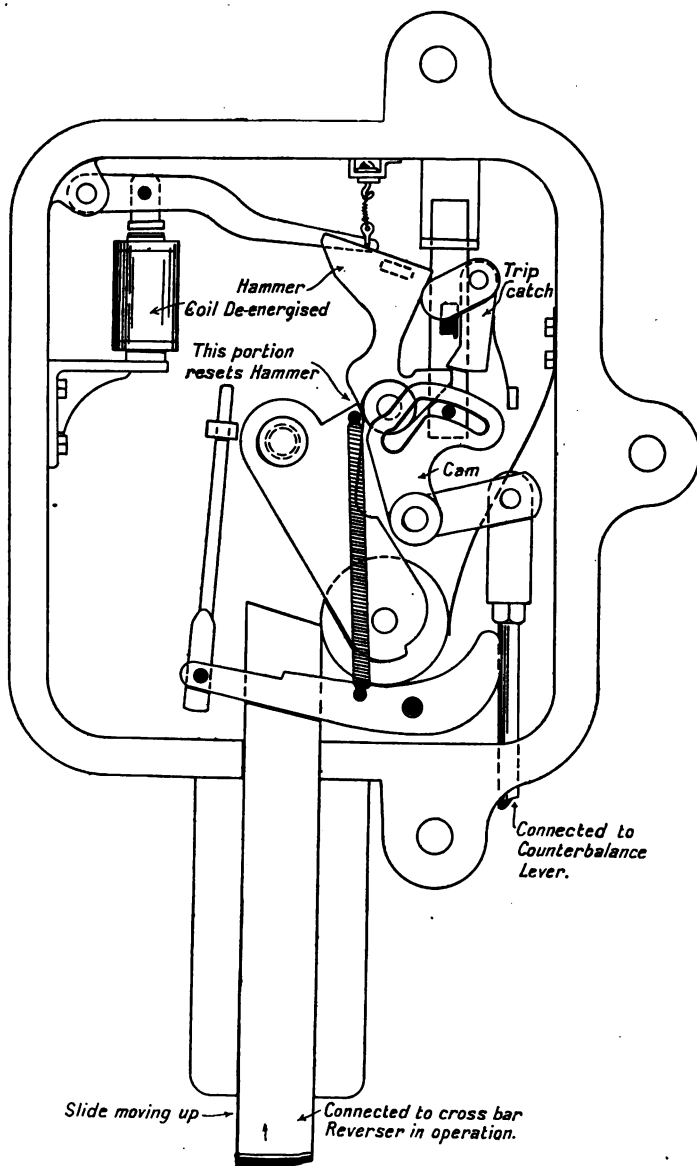


FIG. 193.—Sykes' Reverser arranged so that



a cessation of Current Reverses the Signal.

the rail is used for its operation. To pull the signal off again, the lever in the signal box has to be replaced and pulled a second time. It is, however, usual to effect the reversing of a signal by some electrical method, the device generally adopted being "Sykes' Reverser" (commonly called "Sykes' Banjo").

This is fixed on the signal post, as shown in Fig. 192, and acts in a similar manner to the mechanical reverser last described.

The signal wire is taken directly to the counterbalance lever, but instead of the signal connecting rod being fastened to the counterbalance lever, it is connected to the cross-bar. The opposite end of the cross-bar is connected to the slide of the reverser, the centre connection being taken to the counterbalance lever. When the signal is pulled off, the slide of the reverser endeavours to move up; it is, however, prevented from rising by the roller on which it presses (see Fig. 193). This roller is fastened to an arm which is prevented from swinging by a small catch. To reverse the signal the hammer is allowed to fall on the rod connected to this catch. When this occurs, the catch is forced clear of the arm, the slide is then able to rise, pressing on the roller, and so causing the arm to swing to the right. As the arm swings the cam shaped portion at the top of the arm engages with the hammer and restores it to its normal position. When the slide of the reverser moves up, it allows the connecting rod of the signal to move in the opposite direction, thus putting the signal to danger. During this motion the cross-bar swings with the pin of the centre connection for its bearing.

The hammer is held up by a lever connected to the end of the armature of an electro-magnet.

The reverser, illustrated in Fig. 193, is arranged so that a cessation of current causes the signal to be reversed. In this type some means must be adopted to prevent the hammer from falling whilst the counterbalance lever is in the normal position, as, in order to save current, a contact is placed on the signal lever which "cuts in" the current as soon as the signal lever is moved from its normal position. The stud on the slide moved by the cam motion in the reverser prevents the

hammer from falling whilst the signal lever is normal. When the counterbalance lever is lifted, the hammer moves forward slightly, until it is stopped by the armature lever (the lever is in the correct position for stopping the hammer only when the coil is energised). The trip catch piece moves forward at the same time as the hammer, and is caught by the back of the hammer; when the hammer falls it moves slightly forward again. While the hammer is being re-set, the catch is moved, and when the hammer is completely re-set, the catch flies forward and holds the hammer *up* until the counterbalance lever resumes its normal position. The stud now holds the hammer

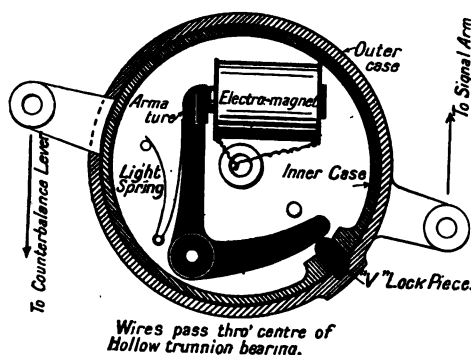


FIG. 194.—Semi-rotary Reverser for Signals.

up again, and the catch piece is then returned to its normal position.

Very often it is arranged that a momentary current causes the hammer to fall. The trip catch portion is then dispensed with, and the armature is placed below the electro-magnets; the lever holds the hammer in position until a momentary current lifts it and allows the hammer to fall.

Reversers of different patterns and designed on different principles are in use; one of the simplest forms is shown in Fig. 194. An electro-magnet together with an armature is fitted inside a rotatable case. The case consists of two portions, each capable of rotating partially on the same centre; one portion is connected to the signal arm, and the other is connected to the counterbalance lever. When an

electric current flows through the coils, the two portions act together, and if the counterbalance lever is raised the signal arm is lowered; when the current ceases to flow through the coils the armature is forced back and the two portions are free to move independently. When this occurs there is nothing to hold the arm in the "off" position, it therefore goes to danger owing to the counterbalancing effort of the spectacle, and the weight of the connecting rod.

Treadles.

Contacts operated by a train for making or breaking electric circuits are generally termed treadles.

Practically all treadles depend on the fact that when a loaded wheel passes over a rail the rail is depressed. This depression is very much intensified by some means, and the motion obtained is employed to "make" or "break" an electric circuit. The make or break device may be a simple "wipe" contact, as used in a signal repeater, see Fig. 195, c, or it may be a mercury contact, as in Fig. 195, d. With the mercury contact, mercury is poured into an iron chamber, and the insulated wire fitted inside the chamber, so that when the device is in the normal position the wire is clear of the mercury, thus breaking an electric circuit, and when it is in the reverse position the wire dips into the mercury, completing the circuit.

The iron chamber referred to is fitted with bearings, one end of it engaging with a multiplying lever which is operated by the deflection of the rail.

Another device using mercury is Siemens' treadle (Fig. 196). In this treadle a comparatively large body of mercury is placed in a container below the rail; the top of the container is of corrugated plate, which is allowed to press against the under side of the rail by means of a plunger. From the container a small bore tube is taken which ends in a cup at a higher level than the container. When a train passes over the treadle the mercury is forced from the container up the tube into the cup, and so comes in contact with a wire, making up a circuit. The mercury is allowed to return by means of a duct to the main

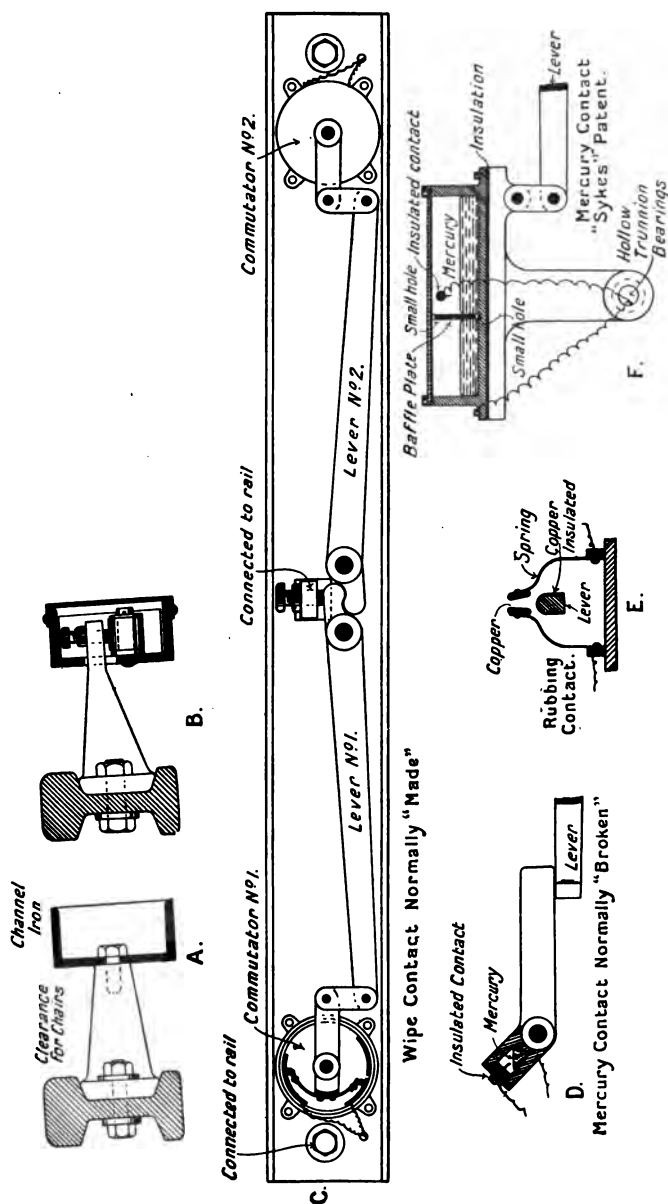


Fig. 195.—Treadle Contacts.

container after the train has passed, the mercury acting like water in a hydraulic ram.

It can also be arranged that the wire dips into the mercury normally, and that the passing of the train forces the mercury up the tube into the cup; when the wheel is off the treadle the mercury recedes down the tube, thus breaking the circuit momentarily.

The treadles of whatever type are in most cases attached entirely to the rail, the weight of the train causes the rail to deflect between the treadle supports, and this deflection alone must be sufficient to work the treadle. It is important to see that the deflection is sufficient to work the contacts, but at the

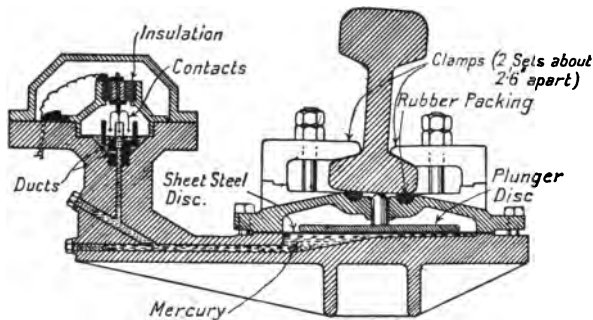


FIG. 196.—Siemens' Treadle.

same time it should not be possible to operate the treadles with a light platelayer's bogie, or anything but a heavy vehicle.

These devices are used for high speed running where momentary makes or breaks only are required. Where it is required to indicate the presence of a standing train, and maintain a signal at danger, a balanced bar is fitted. Fig. 197 shows an end view of a balanced bar. The flange of the wheel presses the L iron down, and so makes or breaks an electric circuit. When the wheels are off the bar it returns to its normal position by means of gravity, the I section iron counterbalancing the L iron portion of the bar. The contacts worked by this bar are as a rule of the simple "slide" or "wipe" pattern. Balanced bars of this type are commonly used at fouling points to reverse, or keep at danger, a conflicting

signal, and they are also connected up to electric locks preventing certain signal, or point, levers from being pulled whilst a train is on the bar.

In some systems of signalling the balanced bar is used instead of a facing point lock-bar, the facing point bolt being worked along with the points by means of an escape crank. When a wheel depresses the bar, an electric lock holds the point and bolt lever from being moved, and when there are no wheels depressing the bar the points may be moved as required.

In order to minimise the shock of the wheel depressing the

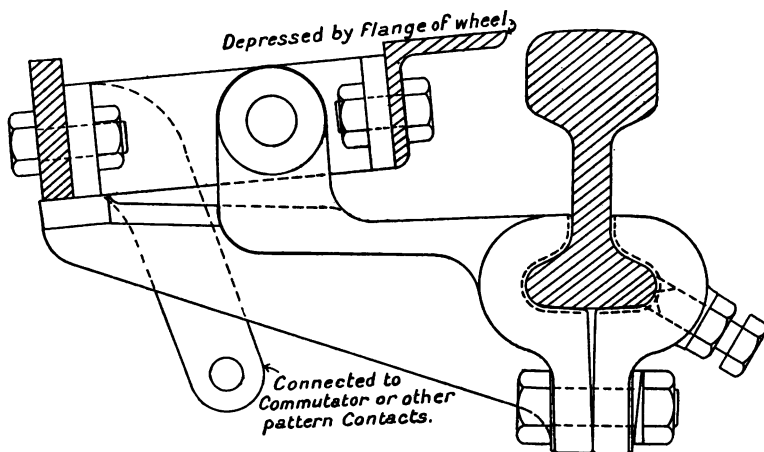


FIG. 197.—Balanced Bar.

bar, the extreme ends of the bar are bent down to form a ramp; this causes the bar to be depressed more gradually.

Fouling bars are chiefly used at junctions where the fouling point cannot be easily seen from the signal box. There are also cases where the fouling point of a siding cannot clearly be seen from the signal box, and a fouling bar, placed along the stock rail (outside), is made to lock the point lever, thus preventing the catch points being moved until the train is completely inside the siding. Bars of this description are also used where the view of vehicles standing in a platform, or dock, is bad. The bars in this case operate an

indicator in the signal box, and at the same time lock up all incoming signals, except calling-on signals, so far as that platform or dock is concerned. Where fouling bars are used for this purpose they should be spaced along the platform line at such a pitch that no vehicles can be left standing between the bars. On long platform lines this would necessitate a large number of bars, and to economise, the bars are often placed at greater intervals, in which case there should be instructions issued that all vehicles left in docks so equipped must be left standing on one or more bars, and some form of indicator should be fixed to mark the position of the bars, so that the trainmen can see, without difficulty, where to leave the vehicles, and be certain that a bar is depressed. Fouling bars, like lock-bars, must be longer than the greatest wheel base of the vehicles using the line.

Electric Detection.

In a complicated station yard it often happens that one signal is required to detect several sets of facing points, and also conversely that a particular set of facing points is detected by several signals.

It is frequently very difficult to fix mechanical detectors in satisfactory positions, and after they have been fixed, they are often a source of trouble owing to the difficulty in correctly adjusting the wire between the different detectors. To assist the working of the signals, electric detection is now being employed at complicated places by many companies.

Electric contacts are fitted to the facing points, one set of contacts is closed when the points are normal, whilst another set of contacts is closed when the points are reversed, the normal contacts being opened by the motion of the points.

With one system of electrical detection each signal has its own circuit outside, and unless all the points are in the required position for the train to run in obedience to that particular signal, an electric lock on the signal lever prevents its being pulled (see Fig. 198). With this arrangement a large number of electric contacts for the signal lock circuit are scattered about the station yard, and in the event of a failure

some difficulty is occasionally experienced in tracing out the signal circuits.

To simplify the circuits and concentrate as many contacts as possible in the signal box, electric relays are sometimes used. The relays, if "polarised," have three positions for the armature (or two independent non-polarised relays can be used) to correspond with the position of the points "normal," "half-over," and "over." The armature of the relay has contacts on it to correspond with the signal circuits of the points requiring to be detected (see Fig. 199).

There is a slight objection to the use of relays, as should an

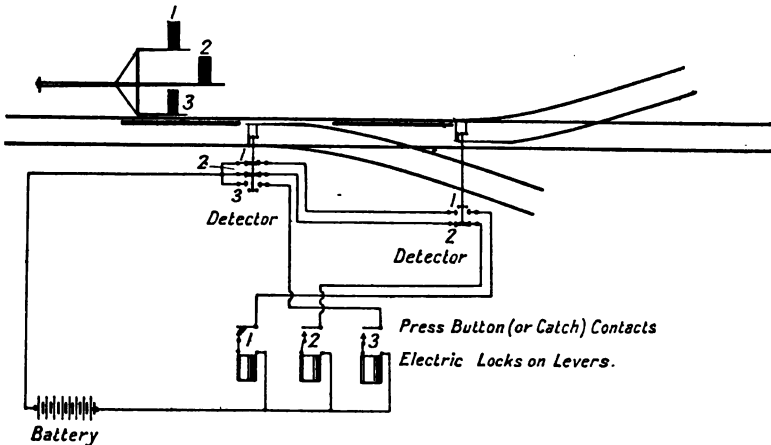


FIG. 198.—Wiring Diagram for Electric Detection.

armature fail to act it would be possible to pull the signal off with the points lying in the wrong direction. This, of course, can only happen if two failures occur at once, viz., the failure of the armature, and a failure of the point connections.

With electric detection great care must be taken to see that the contacts are correctly adjusted. It is essential that the points shall not only be in the correct position, but that they shall be tightly held in that position; hence the contacts must be adjusted so that if the point blade does not lie tightly against the stock rail the contact will be open. If, however, the adjustment is made too fine, there is considerable risk of

the blades moving very slightly during the passage of the train

and breaking the contact. If the bolt of the facing points is also detected, the detection of the blades need not be so fine, as the fact of the bolt being in ensures that the point blades are tight against the stock rail.

It should be noted that if the detector is simply used to lock the signal lever, it is of no moment should the contact be broken whilst the train is running over the points, as the signal lever will then be pulled; if, however, the detector contact carries current to maintain the signal in the clear position, as would be the case if a reverser current flowed through it, it is

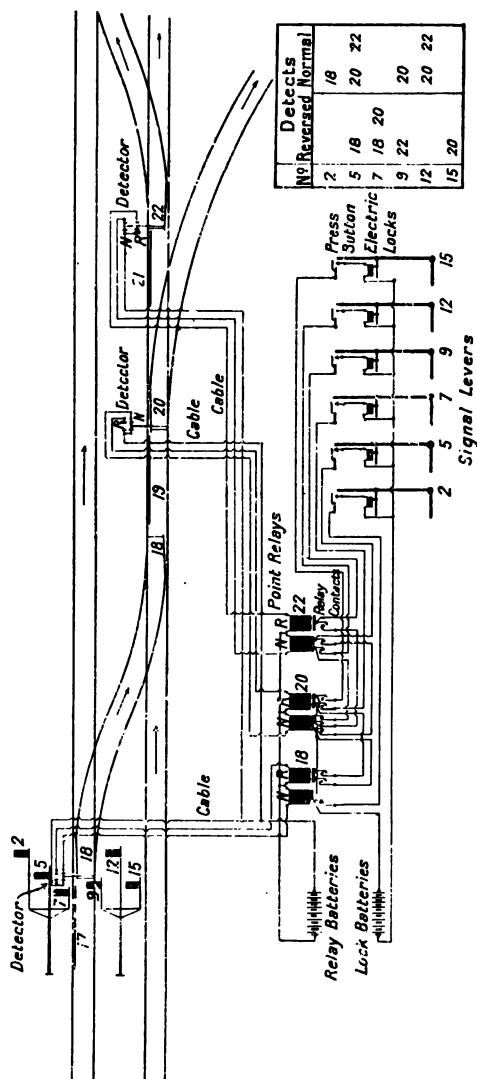


FIG. 199.—Electric Detection using Relays.

very important that the signal shall not be put to danger owing to the detection being too fine.

CHAPTER IX

SIGNALLING SCHEMES

In preparing a signalling scheme for any place, it is first necessary to obtain a plan (drawn to scale) of all the lines and point connections. The most convenient scale for such a plan is 33 feet to 1 inch. If the scale is much smaller it is very difficult to show the signals on the plan clearly, and if the scale is much larger the plan becomes inconveniently large.

A plan for signalling purposes should always be drawn so that, when looking at it with the lettering the right way up, the lines, etc., will appear in the same position as the actual rails will look as viewed from the signal box when a person faces the locking frame. At places where it is arranged that the signalman faces the lines when pulling the levers, the plan will have the signal box at the bottom of it, but where the signalman works with his back to the lines, the signal box will appear at the top of the plan.

Fig. 200 (on folding plate at the end of the book) shows a reduced copy of a plan as received from the engineer. All permanent structures, etc., together with mile posts, and the gradients for some distance on either side of the place, and the north point should be indicated on the plan.

The plan shows the centre line of each rail. Thus a single line of railway is indicated by two lines, one for each rail. In preparing sketches for use it is convenient to adopt only one line for each pair of rails, and if the sketch is drawn to a scale, the line would represent the centre of the 4-ft. way. Thus a double line of railway would be indicated by two lines, which would scale about 11 ft. between them, that being the distance between the centres of the 4-ft. ways, where a 6-ft. way is provided between the running lines.

One of the most important items of a signalling scheme is

deciding the "set" or "lie" of the points. That is, to determine in which position the point tongues shall lie when the lever working them is in its NORMAL position in the interlocking frame.



FIG. 201.—Conventional Method of indicating the "Set" of Points.

All the signals, points, etc., are shown on a plan as they stand when the respective levers working them are in the NORMAL position.

On a plan as supplied by the engineer the "lie of the points" is indicated by drawing a line to represent the switch tongue, which lies open (see Fig. 201). Sometimes this line is drawn at an exaggerated angle in order to emphasise the direction in

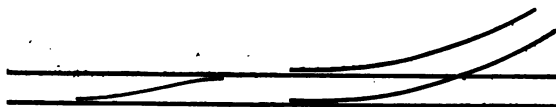


FIG. 202.—"Set" of Points for Junction and Cross-over.

which it lies. With sketches of the single line type the set of the points is indicated by showing the rails over which the train would run as a continuous line, and the portion over which the train does *not* run, when the points are in the normal position, as ending near the continuous line. Fig. 202

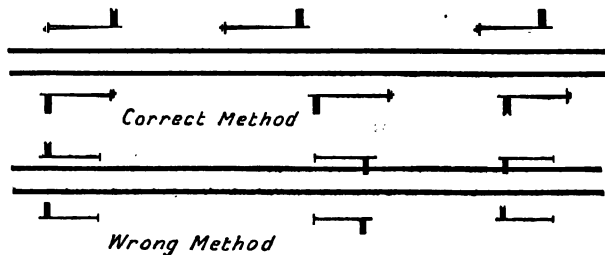


FIG. 203.—Conventional Method of indicating Signals on a Plan.

shows the lie of points for a simple junction and for a cross-over road.

The signals are shown on the plan as they would be seen by the driver, if they were laid down parallel to the track (see Fig. 203). Slotted signals are shown by the convention

previously described (Fig. 20, p. 27). Disc signals are usually shown as a circle, with the addition of a short base (Fig. 204).

Lock-bars are indicated by drawing a line parallel to the line representing the rails close against the points to which the bar belongs (Fig. 205).



FIG. 204.

Detectors are sometimes shown as a small cross near the points detected, but it is generally more convenient to give a table showing the point detection.

Clearance or fouling bars are shown in the same manner as lock-bars, the line being drawn in the relative position occupied by the fouling bar. If the bars are worked by levers in the signal box, no remark further than adding the lever



A.—Inside Lock-bar.



B.—Lock-bar for Single Line Sketch.

FIG. 205.

number is required; if, however, the bars are depressed by the wheels of the train, and operate electrical contacts, this is indicated by writing electric fouling bar or the initials E.F.B. by the side of the line.

For roughing out a scheme before finally placing the signals, etc., on the scale plan, it is generally very convenient to make a sketch, foolscap size, not rigidly to scale, but approximately so, longitudinally, and spread out horizontally. Taking an example as in Fig. 206 (on folding plate at end of book):—

The position of the signal box is the first item to be settled. Several important requirements have to be complied with in fixing this. First the box must be situated so that the points are within the limits allowed by the Board of Trade. At the

place under consideration all the points are trailing points, therefore the limit is 300 yards from the box. The extreme distance between points scales about 400 yards; the greatest distance possible under Board of Trade regulations is 600 yards. It is therefore obvious that there is a distance of 200 yards (100 yards on either side of the mid position) in which the signal box can be placed without having the trailing points beyond the allowed distance from the box.

The next factor to be taken into consideration is that of the view to be obtained from any site within the above limits. The curvature of the line, heights of buildings, trees, etc., have to be considered, and in many cases it is impossible to fix on the best site without visiting the place. The Board of Trade regulations require that the signalman shall have a good view of the railway, shall be able to see all the point connections, signals (unless they are repeated), and trains standing at the signals. Should there be no obstructions to the view of the signalman, the signal box should be placed as near as possible to the majority of the point connections. Not only does this assist the signalman in supervising any shunting movements, but it obviously reduces the cost of the installation, and correspondingly reduces the cost of maintenance.

Having fixed the site for the signal box, the points to be connected to the signal box, together with the way the point tongues are to lie, must next be considered.

All points directly on the passenger lines must be connected to the signal box, unless they are siding trailing points, when, in very rare circumstances, they may be treated like runaway points, and balanced ground levers used.

All points which act as trap or safety points for sidings or goods lines, also main line cross-over roads, must under all conditions be connected to an interlocking frame. Points which are on sidings inside the catch, or trap points, may be worked by hand ball levers of any approved type. As a general rule it is preferable to work all points inside the catch points in this manner. If, for the convenience of traffic, siding points inside the catch points are connected to the signal box, care must be taken to see that the points so connected are

adequately protected by ground (or other) signals; if not, there is a liability of the points being "run through" in shunting, or the train split on the points when running over them in the facing direction.

Points not worked from the signal box, as a rule, are indicated on the plan by *not* showing the "set" of the points, but by running the two lines together and making a cross line at the joining point.

In deciding which way the point tongues shall lie when normal, cross-over roads are invariably arranged so that when in the normal position no vehicles can be passed from one line to the other. The siding points joining the main line are usually set so that no vehicles can be put into the sidings from the main line. (There are exceptions to this, as at a place where there is a heavy falling gradient, when it is sometimes convenient to use the trailing points of a siding as runaway catch points.) The points leading from the siding to the main lines must invariably be set so that no vehicles can gain access to the main line when the points are in the NORMAL position.

Taking the UP LINE first, a distant and a home signal is required to protect the north cross-over road (see B. O. T. Rules, p. 8). The home signal must be placed clear of the *fouling point* of the cross-over road, the fouling point being opposite the north end of the cross-over road, as at this point the 6 ft. clearance commences to close in. The signal may be placed exactly at the fouling point, but it is preferable to place it slightly clear of the exact fouling point, about 30 ft. back being a reasonable distance.

It is the general rule to place the signals on the driver's left hand, and about 6 ft. from the running rail, but should there be any obstruction to the view of either the driver or signalman, the signal may be placed on the right-hand side of the line; this is always considered as being on the *wrong* side of the line, and signals are only placed on the wrong side when it is not possible to fix them satisfactorily on the left-hand side.

A common height for a home signal is 25 ft., but should there be any obstruction of the view of either the driver or

signalman, the proper height can only be determined by sighting with poles on the ground. It may be necessary to make it slightly lower, or considerably higher, and signals 50 and 60 ft. in height are in use. Generally, however, it is found that low signals are preferable to high ones.

The position of the distant signal depends on the gradient of the line leading up to the home signal. Referring to the engineer's plan (Fig. 200) it will be seen that the gradient is practically level, and in that case the correct distance for the distant signal will be about 800 yards out from the home signal. With the distant signal the question of the driver's view is all-important, and the precise position can only be decided on inspecting the place. If possible the signal should be placed so that it can be seen from the signal box, but under no conditions must the driver's view be impaired to improve the view from the signal box. If the signalman cannot see the distant signal it must be repeated in the signal box.

Should there be no obstruction to view, a post giving 20 ft. from rail level to the centre of the arm would be a suitable height for a distant signal.

It is usual to place a signal at the end of a platform to act as a starting signal; where it can be arranged it is advantageous to place the signal slightly ahead of the platform to allow the engine to draw clear of the platform, and leave the whole length of the platform free for the passenger coaches. The distance between this signal and the next point connection joining on to the UP LINE being short, this signal will efficiently protect it, so that it will not be necessary to provide a signal between the starting signal and the cross-over road. A suitable height for this signal is 15 ft.

An advanced starting signal will be required ahead of the siding connection to allow a train to go ahead far enough for the tail of the train to be clear of the siding points, so that it can be backed into the siding if required. The length of trains on the section of line will rule the distance that this signal is placed ahead of the points, but on most main lines a conventional "train's length" is regarded as being 400 yards.

It is imperative, however, that this signal shall not be placed in a position which gives a bad view from the signal box. Both the signal and a train (or light engine) must be clearly visible from the signal box: if the nature of the line does not enable the signal to be seen at the required distance out from the trailing points, it must be placed as far as possible, keeping it within view of the box, and if many long trains have to be backed into the siding a SHUNTING signal should be added below the advanced starting signal.

A suitable height for this signal is 15 ft. to 20 ft. Where the line is straight and all the stop signals can be seen at the same time by a driver as he approaches the station, there should be no possibility of the signal lights coming in line with each other. If the advanced starting signal is 15 ft. high, the starting signal 20 ft. high, and the home signal 25 ft. high, there will be no confusion, but if the signals nearest the driver are *lower* than any of the signals further away, there is a possibility of the lights merging together in one position of the engine when approaching them.

The signals for the DOWN LINE will be similar to those just described on the UP LINE. The home signal must be placed so as to protect the south cross-over, it being the first fouling point encountered on the DOWN LINE. Care must be taken here to ensure that there is sufficient space between the main line and the sidings for this signal. The Board of Trade regulations require at least 2 ft. 4 ins. clearance between any fixed structure and the widest carriage in use on the line. The usual load gauge overhangs the outside edge of the rails about 2 ft. (see Fig. 207). This load gauge would permit of a signal being erected 4 ft. 4 ins. from the edge of the rail. It is, however, usual to allow a greater margin than this, and a space of 11 ft. between the rails is commonly provided, and taking a post as being 14 ins. square at ground level, this allows a margin of about 7 ins. on both sides of the post over the minimum allowed by the Board of Trade.

The distant signal for the DOWN LINE should be carried out about 650 yards from the home signal, there being a *rising* gradient of 1 in 100 shown on the plan. As this is steeper

than the Board of Trade allow for station limits without run-away catch points, these must be laid about 400 yards in the

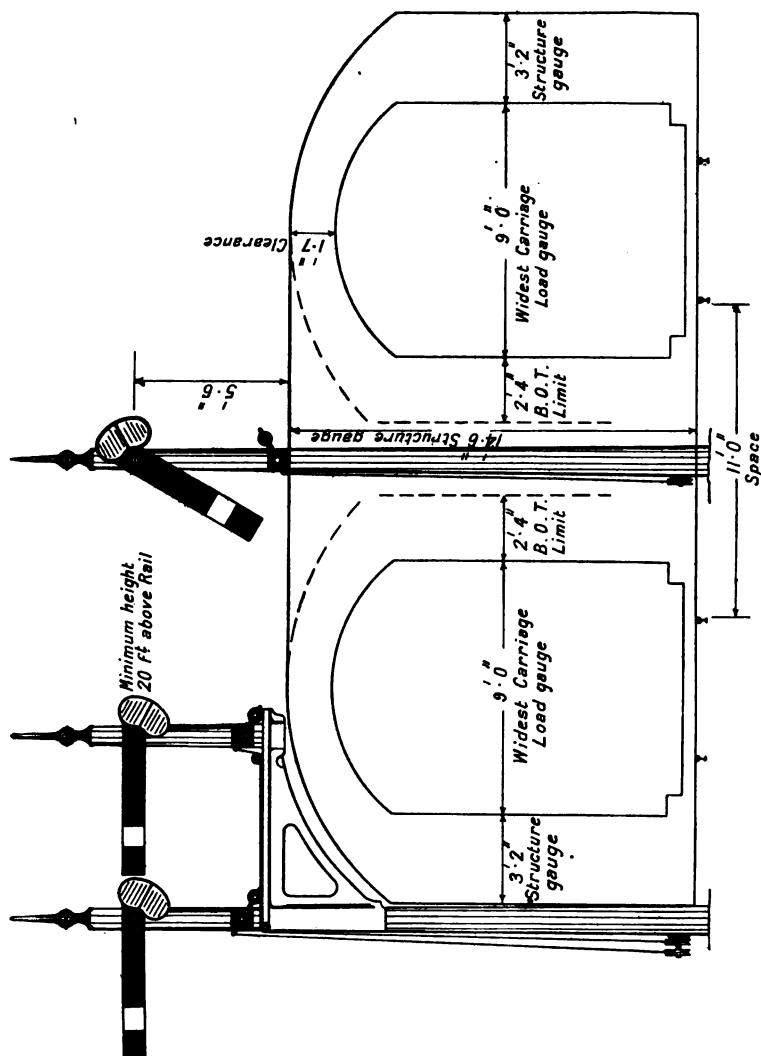
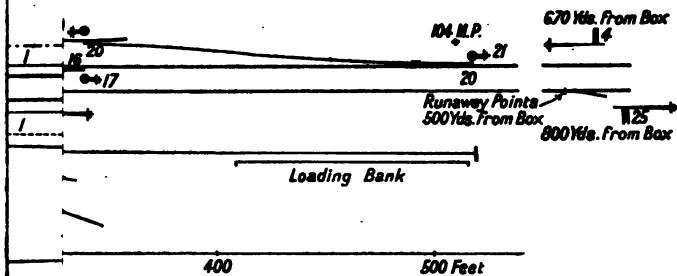
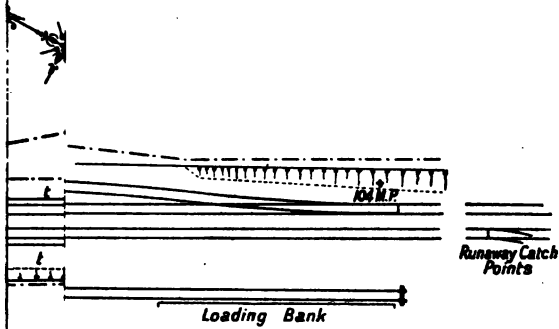


FIG. 207.—Structure and Load Gauge.

rear of the home signal (400 yards being a conventional train's length).

The starting and advanced starting signals present no difficulty.





Ground disc signals* will be required to control shunting movements through the cross-over roads, and to and from the sidings.

Taking the north cross-over road, a disc signal will be fixed at the extreme end of the cross-over, facing a driver on the DOWN LINE, when standing ahead of the points ready for backing through the cross-over.

There is some divergence of practice as to which side of the line a disc signal should be placed. On some railways this signal would be placed on the outside of the line, the idea being to place it well away from the UP LINE, as it only refers to engines or trains on the DOWN LINE.

Should the signal be placed on the outside of the line it must be not less than 5 ft. 6 ins. from rail, if post office nets on mail vans require to be cleared.

On several railways, however, the disc signal would be placed in the 6-ft. way between the two running lines, the idea being that the disc should, if possible, be placed on that side of the line to which the driver goes when obeying the signal. In this case of a cross-over road, the driver would go to the left; therefore the disc signal would be fixed on the left-hand side of the line, and this places it in the 6-ft. way.

Another ruling adopted by some companies is to place the disc signal on the left-hand side of drivers, that is when the driver faces the signal. This would place all signals for backing off the main line, either to a siding or through a cross-over road, into the 6-ft. way, and all signals for coming out of a siding to the main line on the outside of the siding. It is seldom, however, that any particular ruling can be strictly adhered to, the question of a good view being of the utmost importance.

A similar disc signal would be placed in the 6-ft. way at the south end of this cross-over road to take drivers from the UP to the Down line.

The disc signals should be fitted with detectors, so that

* Miniature Semaphore Signals can be used instead of Discs, but for convenience the term "disc" is used to mean any type of ground signal.

unless the points are properly over it is not possible for the signal to be cleared. It is advisable to fit detectors, although, being movements not connected with passenger trains, the Board of Trade do not insist on the points being so fitted, but the detector can be regarded as an "insurance," the cost of a detector being insignificant in comparison with the expense involved should a train become derailed in using the cross-over, owing to the points not being correctly in position.

The points leading to the DOWN LINE SIDING are situated near the signal box, so that a signal might be considered as being unnecessary for backing into the siding, because it would be quite easy for the signalman to hand-signal the train in. It is, however, desirable to limit, as much as possible, the amount of hand signalling necessary even at a small signal box, as should there happen to be two trains at the station at the same time, there is a possibility of the hand signals being misunderstood. Apart from this there is greater safety in fixing a signal, as, while the signal is pulled clear, it is impossible for the points to be moved, therefore so long as the driver or shunter can see the signal at clear he knows that he can move the train with confidence; without the signal, however, the outdoor men have no guarantee against the signalman moving the points and splitting the train without warning. There is also the security afforded by the fitting of the detector in connection with the disc signal.

At a station where the sidings are very seldom used, it might not be economical to fix signals for backing in, and should there be any doubt as to the points holding closely, this can be ensured by clamping the points before the train is backed in. At all places, however, where the sidings are used every day it pays in the long run to equip all the siding and cross-over points with signals and detectors.

The disc signal for backing into the siding at this place would be placed by the side of the DOWN LINE at the end of the points, and on the right-hand side of the drivers when backing into the siding. A signal for moving out of the siding

on to the main line must be fitted at the catch points of the siding. It is usual to fix this signal on the driver's left hand, similar to the running signals, irrespective of the direction in which the points lead. If the signal were placed in accordance with the direction in which the points lead, it would be placed on the driver's right hand. This is sometimes done, and there is no definite ruling as to which side of the sidings the signal should be placed, the all-important question of view often making it impossible to carry out rigidly any general regulation.

The south cross-over road should be fitted with disc signals in a similar manner to the north cross-over road. Where the siding and cross-over road points come very closely together the respective signals are, on some railways, placed side by side; on other railways, however, the signals are placed as near as possible to the points through which they control traffic. Theoretically it is preferable to place the signals side by side in such cases, as should there be any misunderstanding between the driver and the signalman as to the movement required, the driver might stand over one set of points waiting for the signal of the other set, whilst the signalman might pull over the first-mentioned set of points amongst the wheels of the train. If both signals are situated at the same place, the driver must clear both points, and no mistake can occur.

There is a slight practical disadvantage in placing the signals together. The signal for the cross-over road being some few yards from the points makes it less easy to carry out the necessary detection of the points, as for this purpose the signal wire requires to be led from the detector at the points to the signal. In most cases the signal and detector are combined, or else connected by means of a short rod.

If the cross-over road signal is placed by the side of the siding signal, it would be made to detect both points. It would detect the siding points WHEN NORMAL, and the cross-over road points WHEN REVERSED in the ordinary manner, so that unless the siding points are in their correct normal position, and the cross-over road correctly pulled over, it is impossible for the cross-over road signal to be cleared.

The UP LINE SIDING should be equipped with signals in the same manner as the DOWN LINE SIDING.

If these sidings are used simply for Refuging Trains, some railways fix semaphore signals for drawing out on to the main line.

Fig. 208 (folding plate at end of book) shows a wayside station with level crossing gates. The position of the level crossing determines to a large extent the position of the signal box. If the gates are to be worked from the signal box, it is essential that the box shall be built as near the crossing as possible, in order to give the signalman the best possible view of the roadway. It would be possible to place the box at the other end of the platform, but in this case a special box would have to be built for controlling the gates, and in addition some system of locking would have to be introduced between the main signal box and the gate box. By placing the signal box as shown on sketch most of the points can be worked from the signal box; one set, however, at the west end is out of range. It will be necessary, therefore, to control this set of points by means of a ground frame interlocked with the main signal box.

Taking the "set" of the points first:—there are only two pairs of points joining the UP LINE, and the siding points will be set as explained previously, but the cross-over points are complicated with a "single slip" connection to the down sidings. It is usual to take the cross-over road independently, and set it as though no slips had to be considered. The slip points are then set so that they do not interfere with the use of the cross-over road. The points joining the DOWN LINE are simple cases of siding connections, and are set so that they do not interfere with the main line, and the ends of the connections joining the sidings must be set so that no vehicles can gain access to the main line. There is an alternative method of setting the slip points, as shown in Fig. 209. The ends of the cross-over road are set as previously described, but the single slip point is set so that a train backing from the UP LINE over the cross-over road would run on to the down sidings, and not on to the DOWN LINE. The end of this

connection joining the down siding is of course set so that no vehicles can foul the main line. This method of setting a slip point is seldom employed, as it involves the use of an additional lever to work it; in most cases of slip points an endeavour is made to set the points so that they take the form of simple cross-over roads.

Taking the UP LINE signals:—

The distant signal will be placed at the usual distance from the home signal.

The home signal must be placed clear of the cross-over road fouling point. If there is sufficient space between the siding and the main line, the signal will be placed in that space, but if the space is not sufficient, the signal must be placed clear of the siding in order not to foul the structure gauge. This signal is shown with three arms on it; the top arm is high to give

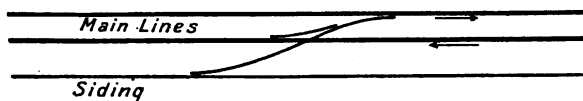


FIG. 209.—Alternative Method of Setting Slip Points.

the drivers a good view *over* the bridge, and the intermediate arm is placed so as to be seen below the bridge (see Fig. 38, p. 42). These signal arms work together. The bottom arm is a short calling-on signal to enable the signalman to indicate to the driver that he is required to draw up to the platform cautiously, whilst the gates are across the railway.

The starting signal is placed at the end of the Up platform and assists in protecting the gates. The advanced starting signal is placed a train's length ahead of the level crossing.

DOWN LINE SIGNALS.

The distant signal is placed the usual distance from the home signal.

The home signal is placed clear of the gates to protect them.

The starting signal is placed at the end of the platform, but clear of the cross-over road fouling point.

The advanced starting signal is placed as far out as can be

permitted; having regard to the signalman's view, it is also placed on the wrong side of the line, so that the line of sight may clear the abutments of the bridge.

A SHUNTING signal is placed lower down on the post carrying the advanced starting signal, for the purpose of allowing a train to draw past the advanced starting signal when at danger, and so clearing the siding points with a long train (see p. 47).

Siding Signals.

The UP siding is equipped with disc signals for entering and leaving, the discs being placed as previously described.

The cross-over road is equipped with signals for moving in each direction, the signal for moving from the Down to the UP LINE being placed at the fouling point of the connection to the down siding. The signal from the UP to the DOWN LINE is placed opposite the signal to the UP siding, and reads both for the movement from the UP LINE to the DOWN LINE, and from the UP LINE to the Down Siding. This means that the signal referred to can be pulled to clear, whichever position the slip points may happen to be in, and accordingly this signal does not tell the driver whether he is going to the DOWN LINE or to the Down Siding. In foggy weather this might lead to a collision, as, should the signalman intend to shunt a train into the siding, and should he only pull the cross-over points before clearing the signal, he might not be aware that the train was on the main line, instead of in the siding.

The down siding points have signals to, and from, the siding; and the siding end of the slip connection has a signal from the siding to the UP LINE.

The siding connection at the extreme west end of the yard is worked from the small ground frame, and as a shunter must be on the ground when a train is backed into the siding, it is usual to provide a signal for *leaving* the sidings only.

Fig. 210 (folding plate at end of book) shows the signalling for a double line junction with an additional goods line.

The signal box is erected as near the facing points as possible, consistent with giving the best view to the signalman and keeping the extreme points within the Board of Trade limits.

To determine the "set" of the points :—

Taking first the facing points from the Up Main line to the Up Goods line (south end), these must be set to resemble a common cross-over road.

The cross-over road points are set in the usual manner. The facing points from the Down Main to the Branch line are shown set for the Main line. Some railways adopt the system of making the facing points invariably lie to the *left hand*, the idea being that should a train over-run it would be sent to the left line, which line does not cross or foul any other line. If the train over-runs with the points set for the main line it fouls the up branch line at the diamond crossing. This latter arrangement appears to be less safe than the other arrangement, and it would be so in practice if the signalmen invariably replaced all the levers after use. Under service conditions, however, when the majority of the trains run along the main line, it would entail a large number of additional lever movements if the facing points were to be moved twice for every main line train. It is very seldom that trains over-run at junctions, and when this does occur it is more likely that an over-running train would collide with a train which might be standing on the branch line than that it should meet a train coming off the branch at the crossing, as the BLOCK TELEGRAPH RULES do not allow, under ordinary conditions, of a train being accepted from the rear signal box on the branch line at the same time that another train is running along the main line, with the points set for the main line.

It is the general practice to set the facing points for the most important line, as if this is not done the signalman will have the facing point lever in the "reversed" position, except when requiring to send a train to the less important line.

The trailing points from the branch line to the up main line are also set for the most important line. It should be noted that although the facing points *may* be set either for the branch line or the main line, the trailing points *must not* be set for the branch line *unless the facing points are also in that position*. Under no conditions must the trailing points, in a case such as this, be in a position for trains to come off the branch unless

the facing points are so set that a train over-running will be sent to the branch, clear of the train coming off the branch. In practice this is ensured by the interlocking of the levers.

The points from the main line to the goods line (north end) are set as for a simple cross-over. The facing point end on the main line could be set so as to put a train on to the goods line in case of an over-running train, but it is preferable to set this point for the main line and to allow the signalman to use his discretion as to pulling the lever in case of an emergency, or in the event of requiring to accept a train off the branch and on the up main line at the same time. The north cross-over road is set in the usual manner.

Down Line Signals.

As there is a facing junction on the down line, junction distant signals are required if the line is laid out for fast traffic (see p. 23). The signal for the branch line is set on a bracket to the left, the arm being lower down than the arm for the main line. The main line signal arm may be on the main post, or on the right-hand side of a double bracket, according to choice. The signal post must be placed the usual distance from the home signals.

The home signals are a duplication of the distant signals, and must be placed clear of the cross-over road fouling point. The branch and main lines are equipped with starting signals, situated about a train's length ahead of the fouling point of the diamond crossing and cross-over road respectively, with due regard to the question of the signalman's view.

Up Line Signals.

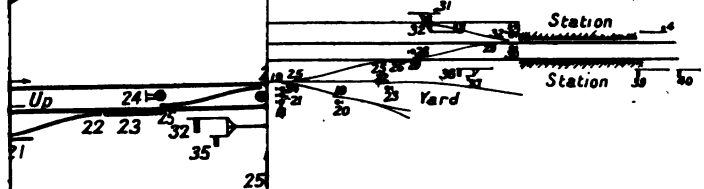
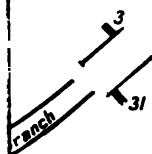
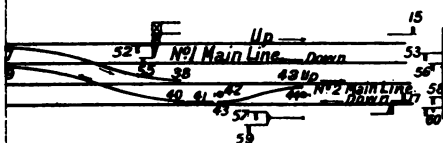
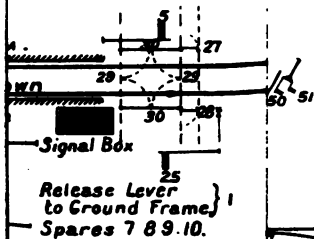
The distant signal for the up branch line must be placed the usual distance from the home signal; there will be only one arm, no signal being given for the goods line. The home signal for the up branch line must be placed well back from the junction fouling point. It will be noticed that from the branch line two routes are available—(1) to the main line, (2) to the goods line. It would be possible to place two signals at this

spot, one for each route. This, however, would place the dividing signals about 180 yards from the points to which they refer, and it is not desirable to have the dividing signals quite so far from the facing points, unless some device is installed to prevent the signalman from moving the points after having replaced the signal to danger, and before the train has arrived on the lock-bar. In many instances it would lead to a very complicated run of signals for a driver to pick out, if the dividing signals were placed close to each set of facing points, but as a general principle dividing signals should not be placed further from the facing points to which they refer than about 120 yards, unless the above-mentioned precautions against moving the facing points are taken. The simplest system for ensuring this "holding the road" is the fixing of an intermediate lock-bar (but without a facing point lock of any description attached) about halfway between the signal and the facing points, this bar being so interlocked that when the train is on this bar it is impossible to move the facing points ahead. This "holding the road" can also be effected by means of an electric lock and treadle rail contact.

If at a place of this description the dividing signals placed at the facing points cannot easily be seen, it is the general practice to duplicate the junction signals at the outer home signal in order to give the best possible view to the drivers, informing them as soon as possible which route has been set for them. This is specially necessary for *high speed* running, but at ordinary places, where the signals at the facing points can easily be picked out a good distance away, it is quite sufficient to place a single home signal as an outer signal, and the dividing signals at the facing points only.

The distant signal for the up main line is fixed in the same way as the corresponding signal from the branch line.

The home signal for the up main line is placed at the cross-over road fouling point, and there must be a low arm on the left-hand side for the goods line. Dividing signals must be placed clear of the facing point lock-bar of the points leading to the goods line (south end). These signals cannot be fixed between the main and goods line, as the space will not permit



signal from the Down to the Up line at the north cross-over road reads either to the main line or to the goods line. Should there be much shunting done over these cross-over roads, additional signals for each route should be provided.

A disc signal has been shown at the goods line end of the south connection to the same line. This signal is for

backing from the goods line to the Down Main line or to the down branch line; it must *not* be pulled to allow a train to run on to the Up Line, as this would be providing a signal for a movement in the *wrong direction*. Similarly, the disc signal shown at the goods line end of the north connection is for backing from the goods line to the Down line only.

Fig. 211 shows the signalling of a more complicated place, involving two signal boxes. This place has been signalled for *every legitimate* movement. The

chief items of interest are:—

Goods lines are fitted with catch points, and the facing catch points are equipped with a facing point lock-bar so as to ensure safety for *fast* goods traffic. Facing point bars would not be fixed for *slow* goods traffic, and it is not compulsory to fit any goods line points with lock-bars.

The manner in which the distant signals for both boxes are



FIG. 212.

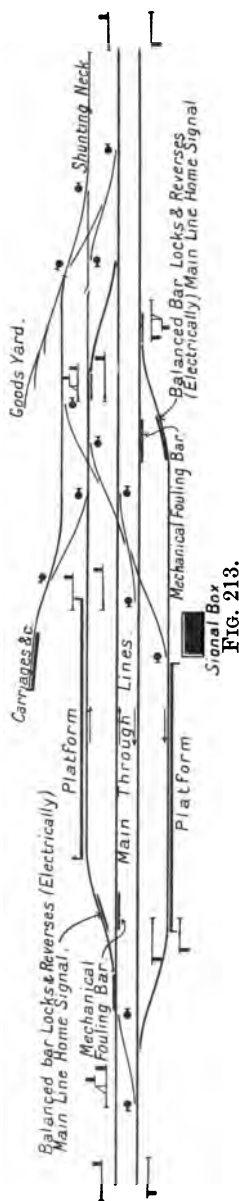


FIG. 213.

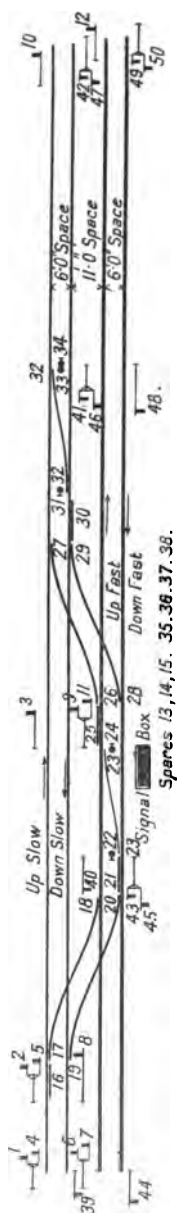


FIG. 214.

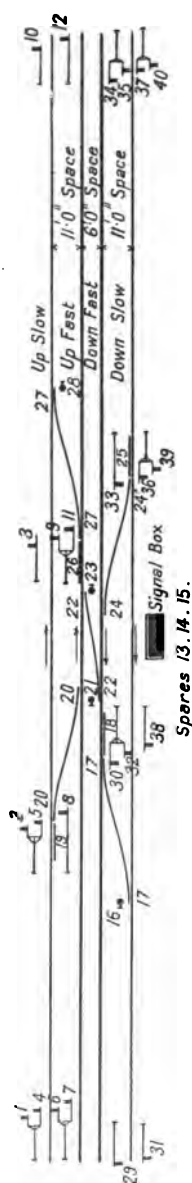


FIG. 215.

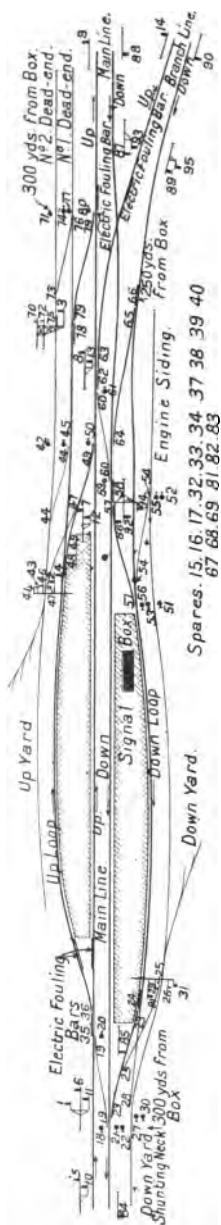


FIG. 217.

combined on posts carrying stop signals is also worth noticing.

Figs. 212, 213, 214, 215, 216,* 217, 218,* 219* give the signalling arrangements of several typical places. The running junctions and wayside stations illustrated are comparatively easy to signal. There are, however, two opposing factors which come into play in cases where high speed running is the rule, and at the same time slow traffic has to be manipulated. It is not desirable to have the signals too close together; the minimum distance should not be less than 120 yards, as, otherwise, the driver running at high speed will have difficulty in picking them out, while, on the other hand, if signals are sparingly laid out it is not convenient for shunting purposes. At places where the traffic is mixed, it is advisable fully to signal the various fouling points and place junction signals comparatively near the junction points, rather than allow the maximum distance from a protecting signal to the fouling point. In such circumstances retaining bars, or other devices, are placed to hold the road, and the junction signals are all grouped together at one spot, but in order to accommodate high speed running the junction signals should be duplicated at the outer home signals. Fig. 217 is signalled on this principle.

At a terminal station speeds are comparatively slow, and generally there is a considerable amount of shunting from one platform line to another, for which provision must be made. If the running *in* and *out* of the platform lines *only* had to be considered, the most convenient arrangement would be one outer home signal at the first fouling point, and at some convenient dividing point further in to place the dividing signals, one for each platform line. Taking Fig. 219 (folding plate 3 at end of book), the outer signal No. 2 would remain, but at the first signal bridge there would be as many signals for the main line as there are platform lines, which at this place would involve nine signals. This number of signals could not conveniently be placed all near the main line, but by using an indicator signal (see Fig. 37, p. 41) this difficulty could be obviated. Placing the inner home signals at this spot would

* On folding plates at end of book.

leave a great distance from the signals to the facing points near the platforms, and consequently some device would be necessary to hold the road. The simplest is to make each lock-bar be released by the next bar ahead ; thus No. 48 Lock-bar would be released by 60 or 49, 67, and No. 60 would be released by 93 or 61, 64, and so on.* Before the signal is pulled, all the bars have to be pulled to hold the road over which the train is to be sent, and when the signal is replaced to danger it is not possible to move the lock-bars near the platforms until the outer lock-bars have first been put back owing to the locking, and the rear lock-bars cannot be replaced until the train has passed over them. It is thus possible to unlock each facing point as the train moves clear, ready for the next required movement, but the points cannot be unlocked out of their proper order. A more expensive but safer method (as it does not rely on the lock-bars holding good when forced against a running train) is the placing of a rail contact at the fouling point of the various platforms and the fitting of an electric lock on the inner home signals, so arranged that when a signal has been pulled it is locked in such a manner that it cannot be put far enough back to release the bar and point back-locking (but still far enough to place the signal at danger) until the last vehicle of the train has passed over the rail contact. This device, however, holds all traffic back until the last vehicle of the train has safely cleared the fouling point of the platform. In a similar manner for outgoing there need only be one indicating signal placed at the end of each platform line, with an advanced starting signal placed ahead of all the point connections. In service, however, it is necessary that a terminal station shall be signalled to allow for shunting as well as running movements. This can be arranged by placing disc signals at convenient places for backing into the platform lines. It will, however, be observed that most of the lines at a terminal station are worked in both directions, so that a train running *into* a platform line would *face* these disc signals ; thus, when the driver runs into the station he would

* The same effect can be obtained by "Bothway" locking ; thus 48 would lock 60 Bothways, and so on.

be required not to observe the disc signals, but when shunting he would be required to observe them, which is an undesirable arrangement.

If the station is signalled with dividing signals at reasonable intervals, little difficulty is experienced in holding the road; with slow speeds the drivers have no difficulty in picking out their signals, and no special shunting discs are required, as the signals for *running* can be used for all *shunting* purposes. It is very necessary for the expeditious working of a terminal station that all shunting movements shall be fully signalled and that there shall be no hand signalling required from the signalman. As there is no possibility of trains running away on the wrong line when backing into the platform lines, there is no need to hand-signal engines which are backing on to their trains—as is the case where there are through running lines,—and calling-on signals are used for this purpose.

Fig. 219 has been signalled on the above principle, and owing to the slow speeds of trains at a terminal station, where any facing points are more than 80 yards ahead of the dividing signal, the locking bars should be interlocked as mentioned previously.

The following is a description of all the signals at this place:—

1. Distant Signal for the Down Line. This signal should be fixed at danger. If it is desired to work this signal there would be no objection to allowing it to be cleared for all the long platforms, viz., Nos. 1, 2, 3, 6, but *not* to Nos. 4 and 5.
2. Outer Home Signal, Down Line.
3. Inner Home Signal, Down Line to Line A (*on Bridge No. 1*).
4. Intermediate Signal, Line A (*on Bridge No. 2*).
5. Calling-on Signal, Line A to No. 1 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
6. Direction Signal, Line A to No. 1 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
7. Calling-on Signal, Line A to No. 2 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).

8. Direction Signal, Line A to No. 2 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
9. Inner Home Signal, Down Line to Line B (*on Bridge No. 1*).
10. Intermediate Signal, Line B (*on Bridge No. 2*).
11. Calling-on Signal, Line B to No. 3 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
12. Direction Signal, Line B to No. 3 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
13. Calling-on Signal, Line B to No. 4 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 2*).
14. Direction Signal, Line B to No. 4 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 2*).
15. Inner Home Signal, Down Line to Line C (*on Bridge No. 1*).
16. Inner Home Signal, Down Line to Line D (*on Bridge No. 1*).
17. Intermediate Signal, Line D to Line C (*on Bridge No. 2*).
18. Calling-on Signal, Line C to No. 4 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 3*).
19. Direction Signal, Line C to No. 4 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 3*).
20. Calling-on Signal, Line C to No. 5 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 3*).
21. Direction Signal, Line C to No. 5 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 3*).
22. Intermediate Signal, Line D (*on Bridge No. 2*).
23. Direction Signal, Line C to Line D (*on Bridge No. 3*).
24. Calling-on Signal, Line D to No. 6 Platform Line.
25. Direction Signal, Line D to No. 6 Platform Line.
27. Backing Signal, Up to Down Line.
29. Backing Signal, Down to Up Line.
30. Backing Signal, Up Line to Engine Line.
32. Signal from Engine Line to Up Line.
33. Signal from Dead-end.
34. Signal from Engine Line to Dead-end.
35. Intermediate Signal, to Engine Line.

36. Signal from Engine Shed.
38. Signal from Sheds, etc., to Engine Line.
39. Signal, Engine Line to Dead-end or Up Main Line (*on Bridge No. 1*).
40. Signal, Engine Line to Engine Sheds (*on Bridge No. 1*).
41. Signal from Engine Sidings.
42. Signal, Engine Sheds Line to Line B.
43. Signal, Engine Sheds Line to Line D (*viâ Up Main Line*).
46. Signal, Up Main Line to Dead-end (*on Bridge No. 1*).
47. Signal, Up Main Line to Engine Sheds (*on Bridge No. 1*).
51. Signal, Carriage Sidings to Carriage Line (*on Bridge No. 1*).
52. Signal, Carriage Line to Carriage Sidings.
53. Signal, No. 1 Siding to Carriage Line.
54. Signal, Carriage Sidings to Line A (*on Bridge No. 1*).
55. Signal, Carriage Sidings to Line B (*on Bridge No. 1*).
56. Signal, Carriage Sidings to Line C (*on Bridge No. 1*).
58. Backing Signal, Line A to Carriage Sidings.
59. Signal, No. 2 Platform Line to Carriage Sidings (*viâ Line A*).
63. Signal, Line B to Carriage Sidings (*on Bridge No. 2*).
66. Signal, Line C to Carriage Sidings (*on Bridge No. 3*).
71. Signal, Engine Line to Line D.
73. Signal, Line D to Engine Line (*on Bridge No. 2*).
77. Signal, Line B to Line A, *viâ 79 points* (*on Bridge No. 2*).
85. Signal, Line B to No. 2 Siding (*on Bridge No. 4*).
87. Signal, No. 2 Siding to Line B.
88. Signal, Line B to No. 2 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).
92. Signal, Line A to No. 1 Siding (*on Bridge No. 4*).
97. Signal, No. 1 Siding to Line B.
98. Signal, Carriage Line to No. 1 Siding (*on Bridge No. 4*).
99. Signal, Carriage Line to No. 1 Platform Line (*on Bridge No. 4*).

- 103. Signal, No. 1 Platform Line to Carriage Line.
- 114. Signal, Line D to Carriage Sidings (*viâ* Line C).
- 115. Signal, Line D to No. 3 Siding.
- 118. Signal, No. 3 Siding to Line D.
- 130. Advanced Starting Signal, Up Line.
- 131. Intermediate Starting Signal, Up Line.
- 132. Direction Signal, Up Line (*on Bridge No. 1*).
- 133. Intermediate Signal, Line B (*on Bridge No. 2*).
- 134. Starting Signal, No. 1 Platform Line.
- 135. Starting Signal, No. 2 Platform Line.
- 136. Outer Starting Signal, No. 3 Platform Line.
- 137. Inner Starting Signal, No. 3 Platform Line.
- 138. Starting Signal, No. 4 Platform Line (*viâ* Line B).
- 139. Intermediate Signal, Line D (*on Bridge No. 2*).
- 140. Intermediate Signal, Line C (*on Bridge No. 3*).
- 141. Starting Signal, No. 4 Platform Line (*viâ* Line C).
- 142. Starting Signal, No. 5 Platform Line.
- 143. Outer Starting Signal, No. 6 Platform Line.
- 144. Inner Starting Signal, No. 6 Platform Line.

Levers Nos. 119, 120, 121, 122 are control levers for the cross-over roads in the platform lines at the buffer-ends (the cross-over roads being for the purpose of allowing engines to run out on the opposite platform line after their arrival).

The following are the chief rules which should be observed in the signalling of any place where a considerable amount of traffic has to be operated.

Before commencing to lay out the signalling equipment ascertain the direction of running and use of every line shown on the plan and mark the direction of running with arrows.

DOUBLE LINES.

(1) *Fixing the site of the signal box.*—*First.* See that it is within the B. O. T. limit for working points.

Second. Consider the best possible position for the signalman's view of the connections.

Third. See that there is ample space for clearing the structure gauge and for leading out the rods and wires.

(2) *Deciding the "set" of the points.*—*First.* See that all

sidings, goods lines, and other non-block lines are trapped so that no vehicles can gain access to the passenger lines.

Second. The points inside yards and sidings which do not interfere with the running lines should not, as a general rule, be connected to the signal box.

Third. Where there are slips (single or double) as far as possible set the points so that they can be coupled up like cross-over roads.

Fourth. At junctions set the facing points for the most important line, or set them so that any train over-running shall not cross the path of another train; do not, however, set the facing points so as to run a train into a dead-end siding or into a line not equipped for passenger working.

Fifth. At terminal stations see that the points are so set that a train starting without authority shall foul the fewest possible lines.

(3) *Fitting Facing Point Locks.*

First. Facing point locks and bars must be fitted on all facing points on passenger lines, and should be fitted to all points over which loaded passenger vehicles are taken. (For emergency movements only, lock clamps fitted by hand are sufficient.)

Second. Facing point locks and bars should be fitted on all facing points over which high speed traffic runs even on goods lines, but especially where goods lines join passenger lines.

(4) *Running Signals.*

First. Place the distant signal at the correct distance from the home signals, and if this is not possible, arrange for its duplication on a rear post, or prevent the rear signalman from clearing his distant signal until the signal for the box ahead has been cleared. Provide splitting distants for all fast-running routes.

Second. Place protecting stop signals well clear of the fouling point to be protected. A signal should not be required to protect a fouling point more than about 200 yards ahead of it, and additional signals should be provided to prevent this distance being exceeded.

Third. At junctions provide as many splitting signals as

there are routes, but as a general rule, where there are alternative routes for the same set of lines, only one route is signalled.

Fourth. Junction signals should never be required to protect facing points more than about 120 yards ahead of them, unless some special device for holding the road be provided, but signals for high speed running should not be closer together than about 120 yards.

Fifth. Junction signals should be "stepped" to simplify their reading, the signals for the most important line being the highest, or the ruling adopted that the highest signal denotes the *best-running* line.

Sixth. Where signals for different lines are placed on the same bracket or bridge, they should be pitched so as to form groups with wider spaces between the groups than between the individual signals of each group.

Seventh. Advanced starting signals should be placed within view of the signalman (unless the position of the train is electrically indicated in the signal box), and bearing this in mind they should in most cases be placed about a train's length ahead of the point connections.

(5) Shunting Signals, etc.

First. Provide calling-on arms where it will save the signalman waving drivers past the home signal many times per day.

Second. Provide a SHUNTING signal where it is necessary for the driver to pass the advanced starting signal for shunting purposes.

Third. Provide disc signals (or miniature semaphore signals) for all legitimate shunting movements which have to be performed several times per day. Where shunting movements are infrequent, and first cost must be small, one such signal might be used for more than one route.

Fourth. No signal must be given for running on to the wrong line unless some means can be used for putting the train eventually on to the right line.

(6) See that no signal is placed where it will foul the structure gauge.

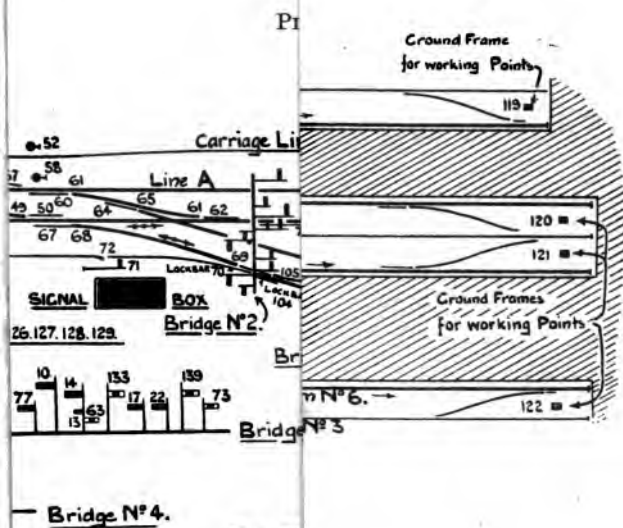


FIG. 21



(7) See that run-away catch points are fitted on the ascending line a train's length in the rear of the home signal if the gradient is steeper than 1 in 260.

(N.B.—These rules only apply to passenger lines. For goods lines fewer signals can be provided; if, however, *fast goods* traffic has to be dealt with, it is economical to equip the running lines similarly to passenger lines.)

SINGLE LINES.

Figs. 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, show several typical stations on single lines. Fig. 221 is an ordinary passing place with a goods siding; the facing points must be set so that a train in over-running will not run to the wrong platform line. The siding points are treated in the same manner as ordinary siding points on a double line.

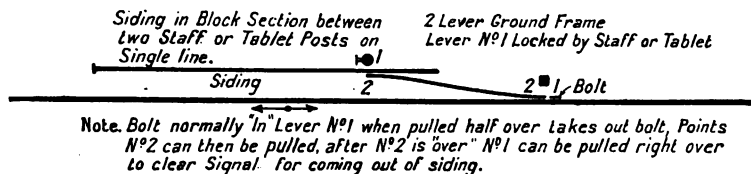
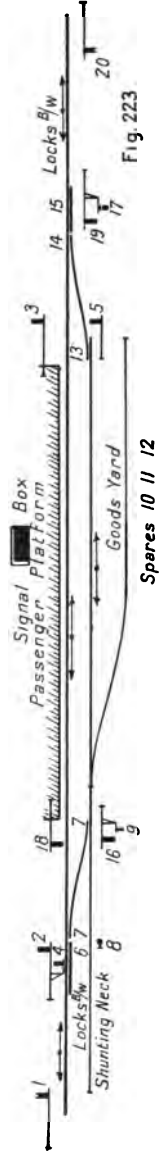
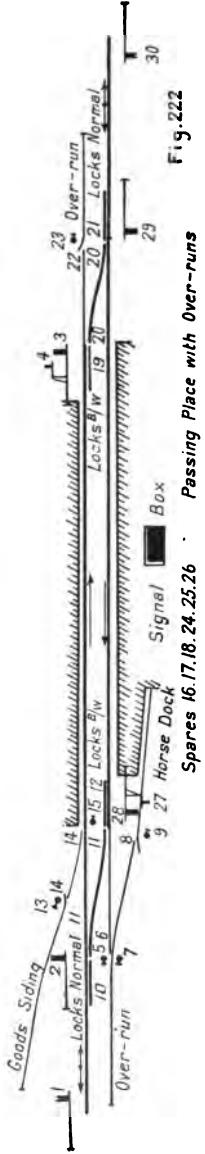


FIG. 220.

The lock-bars only lock the points when the points are normal. For instance, lock-bar No. 4 is only required to be pulled when the train runs over No. 5 in the facing direction into the platform because when the train is running from the other platform with No. 13 signal pulled No. 5 is trailed over, and it is therefore unnecessary for the points to be bolted. On this account there will be only one hole in the lock stretcher, and similarly the lock stretcher on No. 11 points will only have one hole in it for the bolt to enter when the points are normal.

Fig. 222 shows a passing place on a single line equipped with over-runs. A small semaphore signal is given for shunting into the over-runs, and a disc signal for backing out again. At this place the over-runs serve the double purpose of being over-runs for passing trains, and also shunting necks for



working the sidings. It must be understood that they cannot serve both purposes simultaneously.

The remaining signals are similar to the previous case. The lock-bars at this place are of two types; Nos. 10 and 21 lock their respective points only when the points are normal. Nos. 12 and 19 lock their respective points B/W in the usual manner. This ensures that a train in over-running No. 3 or No. 28 signal will enter the station over properly secured facing points in obedience to No. 2 or No. 29 signal. No. 2 signal must not be lowered unless No. 20 points are bolted securely. If No. 19 lock-bar only locked 20 when 20 is pulled, it would involve the pulling of No. 20 points to allow a train into the platform when No. 2 is pulled. This would prevent a train from being accepted from the opposite direction, since, before a train can be accepted from the box in the rear, the points must be set for the train to run on to the correct line.

Fig. 223 shows a station on a single line with a loop line for goods traffic only. In this case dividing signals must be placed at each end of the loop line to allow trains either to the passenger platform or to the goods line. The distant signals will read for the passenger line only.

Fig. 224 is a junction station on a single line, the signalling of which needs no special mention.

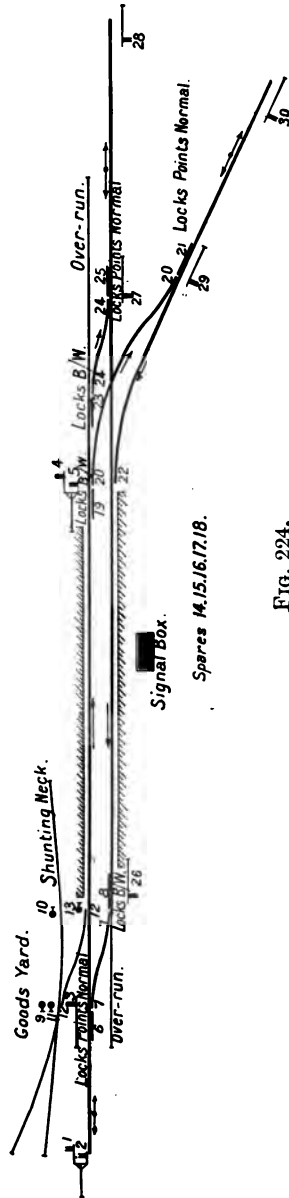


FIG. 224.

Fig. 225 shows a typical case of single line working of a temporary nature, such as required for bridge renewal, etc.

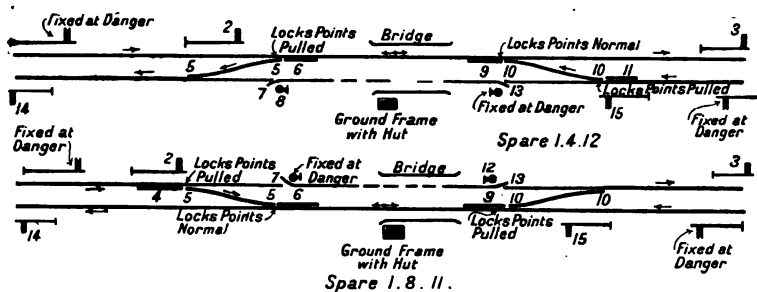


FIG. 225.

SINGLE LINE RULES.

The rules for single lines are very similar to those for double lines. The chief items to be noticed are:—

- (1) All points on a single line are **FACING POINTS**.
- (2) On lines using the electric staff, or electric tablet system, signals must be provided at staff or tablet stations, but at other stations it is *not* necessary to provide signals, the points, if any, being locked by the staff or tablet.
- (3) In setting the points at a tablet or staff station care must be taken that the train in over-running does not run on to the wrong line.
- (4) Facing points not worked from the signal box, but worked from a ground frame controlled by the staff or tablet, need only be fitted with a lock-bolt, no bar being required. In this case the points must be bolted when the lever is in the normal position. It is usual to work the bolt and the signal for leaving the siding on the same lever (see Fig. 220).

NUMBERING SCHEMES.

Having determined the signals to be provided at any place, it is next necessary to determine which levers in the signal box shall operate each individual signal, set of points, or lock-bar.

In an interlocking frame the levers are arranged in one

line, and when facing the levers, inside the signal box, the left-hand lever is No. 1, and all the levers are numbered from left to right. In determining the precise number of the lever to work any particular set of points, the only ruling given by the B. O. T. is that the signalman shall have the best possible view of his connections from the position he takes up when working them. This naturally leads to all the points at the left hand end of the station, looking at them from the signalman's point of view, being worked by levers near No. 1 end of the locking frame.

Similarly the point connections at the right hand end of the station would be worked by levers at the end of the frame having the higher numbers. It is the custom to work disc signals with levers which are situated close to the levers working the points to which they refer. For the running signals there are two general systems in use. One is to place the levers working the running signals reading from left to right at the extreme left of the frame, the levers for the running signals reading from right to left being at the extreme right hand end. The other system is to place the running signals as near the centre of the frame as possible, the reason for this being that the block instruments are often placed in the middle of the box, and it is very convenient for the signalman to be close to his signal levers whilst giving block signals. This latter system is sometimes termed the "Grouping" System. An endeavour is made to place the levers in the interlocking frame so that the signalman shall have his levers for the various moves arranged in groups, and as far as possible pull his levers in numerical order. It is possible to do this in some small locking frames, but at junctions it becomes impracticable to provide the proper sequence of pulling for both the main and branch lines. As a rule the numbering is then made to suit the main lines, and the sequence of pulling for the branch lines then becomes irregular. An attempt is made to place the signals as near as possible to the points to which they apply, and this refers to running signals as well as shunting signals.

Whatever system is decided on, the following features are necessary for a good working arrangement.

(1) The signalman should have no unnecessary walking about the frame to pull the levers when setting the roads and clearing the signal.

(2) The order of pulling the levers should be that as far as possible the signalman only moves in one direction in setting the route.

(3) It should not be necessary for the signalman to be forced to pull a lever between two levers which are already over, especially if that lever operates a heavy connection. If it is a very easy lever to work this requirement is not important.

The simplest system to remember is the one known as the Geographical System. In this system, as far as possible, the point levers work points which are situated in the same relative position outside with respect to the signal box, as the levers occupy inside the box. This ruling is adhered to irrespective of the layout of the place, and the ground disc signals are placed next to the points to which they refer, the signals reading from left to right having earlier numbers than those from right to left. The running signals are numbered from left to right, and care must be taken so to arrange them that the signalman only moves in one direction in pulling off the signals for any one route.

Fig. 210 is numbered in accordance with this system. The signals reading from left to right are taken first, and of the signals reading in this direction, those reading from the left-hand top corner to the right-hand top corner are taken first. This gives the branch line signals precedence over the main line signals at this particular place, No. 1 being the distant signal. Having numbered the branch line signals, the main line signals follow with No. 4 as the distant signal. The starting signal No. 6 finishes all the running signals from left to right. The points and relative disc signals are taken next; commencing at the extreme left hand, the disc signal from the goods line will be No. 7, the points No. 8 and the lock-bar No. 9. It is very necessary that the lock-bar lever should invariably come next to the lever working the points bolted by the lock-bar, as every time the points require to be moved the

lock-bar lever is usually moved also. It should be mentioned that as a rule the lock bolt is *out* when the lever in the signal box is in its normal position, and to bolt the points the lever has to be pulled. Properly speaking the points should be unbolted when no train is approaching, but as this involves additional lever movements, the signalman, as a matter of general practice, leaves the lock levers pulled. There is no serious objection to this except at stations where a great amount of shunting is performed; in the latter case, should the points be "trailed" through when they are bolted in the wrong position, much more damage would be done to the facing point gear than if the bolt were out when the mishap occurred.

The next lever will work the disc signal at the south end of the south crossover No. 10, the points will be No. 11, and the disc from the down to the up line will be No. 12. Next come two sets of points which are opposite each other, and in cases such as this the points must be numbered to suit the sequence of pulling. Junction locking determines that the facing points at this place must be pulled before the trailing points, hence the facing points will precede the trailing points in numbering the levers. The lock-bar to the facing points must come before the points themselves, in order to give the correct sequence of pulling, so that the bar will be No. 13, facing points 14, trailing points 15. The north connection to the goods line would follow, but it is usual to insert some spare levers at some portion of the frame, the general practice being to insert about 1 spare to 10 working levers. In determining the exact number of spare levers required, several things have to be taken into account.

First, the possible future requirements of the place; if it is known that additions are proposed at some date in the near future, it is wise to leave sufficient spare levers for this purpose; if, however, there is no definite information as to future extensions, it is the usual custom to leave spare levers at a point where an additional siding might be put in, and in a case of this sort a group of three levers is the most convenient number to leave.

Second. It is very desirable to fix on some definite standard

for the size of locking frames. A common arrangement is to commence with 5 as the unit, and only build locking frames which contain some multiple of 5, or if the design of the locking frame makes 4 a more suitable unit, that number would be chosen. This allows standard castings to be kept in stock (see p. 141). Taking 5 as the unit, and counting up the number of working levers required, it is found to come to 31 ; this necessitates 4 additional levers to make up 35 the nearest multiple of 5. As the place now reached in numbering is as convenient as any other for leaving spare levers, Nos. 16, 17, 18, 19, are left as spares. Sometimes the levers are not actually inserted for spares, SPACES only being left in the locking frame ready to receive any levers should they be required. As a rule, however, the levers are inserted, because spaces in the frame do not look well.

No. 20 lever will work the disc signal from the goods line (north end). It will be noticed that in the two previous cases of points which take the form of crossover roads, one lever is made to work both ends of the connection, because in no case is one end required to be pulled without the other end. At the connection to the goods line (north end), however, two levers are used, one for each end of the points, the reason for this being that the facing point end on the main line might possibly be required to be pulled to protect a train coming from the branch line, and in that case there is no necessity for pulling the catch point end on the goods line, as this would untrap the goods line.

The lock-bar will follow the facing points, and the north crossover road with its signals come after in the usual sequence. This finishes the points, bars, and disc signals, and the running signals from right to left follow next, No. 27 being the advanced starting signal for the up main line. No. 28 is the dividing signal reading for the main line, and in order to prevent the signalman from retracing his steps in pulling the signals for a particular route, the signal from the up main line to the goods line, on the same bracket as No. 28, must follow next as No. 29. The home signal from the branch and its distant signal come next, then the home and distant signals

for the main line, and finally the starting and home signals for the goods line.

The order of pulling for the various movements are as follows:—

To Branch Line, 14, 13, 3, 2, 1.

DOWN MAIN LINE, 13, 6, 5, 4.

Goods Line to Branch, 14, 13, 11, 8, 10, 7. (It will be noticed that No. 10 is out of the correct order, but this is necessary owing to the locking, which will be explained later).

Up to Down Line, 13, 11, 10.

Down to Up Line, 9, 11, 12.

Goods Line to Down Main Line, 25, 22, 21, 24, 20 (No. 24, is out of the correct running owing to the interlocking.)

Up to Down Line (North crossover) 25, 24.

Down to Up Line (North crossover) 23, 25, 26.

From Branch Line to Main Line, 9, 14, 15, 27, 28, 30, 31.

From Branch Line to Goods Line, 8, 9, 14, 15, 29, 30.

UP MAIN LINE, 9, 23, 27, 28, 32, 33.

Up Main Line to Goods Line, 22, 21, 23, 34, 35 (22 must precede 21 owing to the interlocking).

Fig. 216 shows the numbering arrangement for a fast-running junction with four running lines. The chief items of interest are, (1) Where there is a single outer home signal which requires to be pulled along with two or more distant signals, all these distant must come in order before (or after as the case may be) the home signal. Nos. 1, 2, 3, distant signals being numbered before No. 4 home signal is an example of this. Where there is no single outer home signal the distant precede, or follow, their respective home signals. No. 5 distant preceding No. 6 home is an example of this, also 52, 53, 57, 58, show the same ruling.

(2) The same principle holds good with any signal or set of signals which have to be pulled in combination with the signals for more than one route. Nos. 8, 7, and 9, 10, are examples of home and starting signals treated in this manner.

(3) Where there are double crossovers (usually termed "overcrossings") between running lines, allowing simultaneous movements in both up and down direction, such as the over-

crossings numbered 19-20, and 21-22, the point ends should be connected to separate levers, otherwise, if ordinary junction locking is inserted, certain legitimate train movements will not be possible. This will be better understood when the interlocking of junctions has been considered.

Fig. 226 shows special cases of double and single slips and the method of numbering. In cases of this sort, while it is possible to connect several point ends on one lever, it is not advisable to connect more than three for manual working, as it makes hard

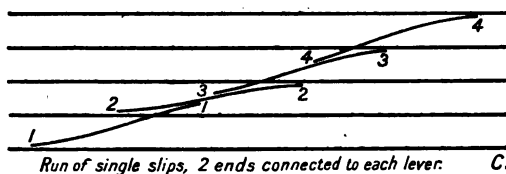
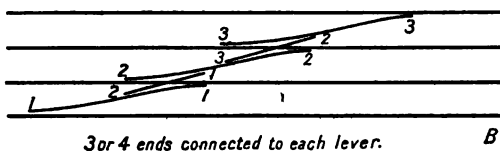
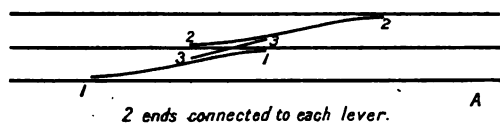


FIG. 226.

pulling, and considerable trouble is experienced in maintaining all the points in good working order owing to the number of joints required in the rod connections. In all cases of connecting more than one point end to one lever great care must be taken to see that under no possible conditions can any one point end be required to be moved, independent of the others.

In all the foregoing examples, one lever has been employed to work only one signal, or one set of points, as the case may

be. It is possible to work a set of points and a signal referring to those points on one lever; this is done by means of an escape crank. The first portion of the travel of the lever moves the points (there is a notch in the mid position of the floor-plate), the second portion of the lever movement does not move the points further, but it clears the disc signal. Two or more signals can also be worked by one lever, thus the disc backing *into* a siding, and the disc for coming *out* of the siding can be so worked. For this arrangement the signal lever is in the mid position normally; when it is *pushed* one signal is cleared, and when it is *pulled*, the conflicting signal is cleared. As it is impossible for the lever to be in the pulled position, and right back at the same time, no other interlocking is required between the conflicting signals. At a junction where two or more signals read for diverging lines, it is possible by means of "selection" to work all the diverging signals by one lever, the position of the points determining which particular signal is cleared when the signal lever is pulled. Similarly, where two or more signals *converge* to the same line, these signals can all be worked by the same signal lever, the position of the trailing points determining which of the converging signals is cleared.

A facing point lock-bar and the facing points can also be worked by one lever. Generally, however, these selecting arrangements are not favoured by signalling engineers, as it is found to be cheaper in the long run to maintain simple apparatus rather than complicated devices. Escape cranks are not desirable from a maintenance point of view, and selecting devices for manual working are also costly to keep in good working order. In power signalling, however, selecting devices are again being introduced. Apart from the difficulty of maintaining selecting devices, there is the objection that a signalman, in sending trains to diverging lines, only has to move his points, the same signal lever being used for each route. Should a train have been sent to the starting signal to stand, and a second train taken on, to go to a different destination, then, in the event of the signalman forgetting to move the facing points, the train would be sent to

collide with the one already on that line. Where there is an independent lever for each signal, however, he would find that the facing points had not been set for the required route when he came to pull the signal lever for that route, the interlocking preventing him from lowering the signal until the points had been set. This could be got over by inserting fouling bars to detect the presence of the standing train, but would be more costly to install than the independent levers for each signal.

Having determined the numbering scheme, and placed the numbers on the signalling plan, it is usual to prepare a list of the detection required. This is sometimes done by putting the signal numbers near the points to be detected, the side of the points on which the numbers are placed indicating which way the points have to be set to allow the signal to be cleared. A very good arrangement is to give a small table showing which points the signals detect.

The general rule for detecting is that all the points over which the signal gives permission to pass in the facing direction should be detected. Should a signal be cleared with the points in either position, it is not usual to fit a detector, as the proper function of the detector is to ensure that the points are in the correct position, and if either position is right, the detector can then only indicate that the point blades are close up to one side or the other, but cannot indicate which side.

Taking Fig. 210, the point detection would be as follows:—

Signal No. detects.	Points when normal. No.	Points when reversed. No.
2	—	14
5	14	—
7	—	8, 11
10	—	11
12	—	11
20	—	21, 25
24	—	25
26	—	25
28	8	—
29	—	8
32	22	—
35	—	22

In some cases where the catch points of a goods line or siding is an unusual distance from the signal box, the protecting signal for the main line is made to detect the trap points, to ensure that they are correctly set for the run-off position. This is, however, seldom done in manual installations.

It is usual to supply a reference along with a signalling plan, so that the men responsible for the execution of the work shall not be in doubt as to the purpose of any signal, or the "set" of any of the points.

In complicated schemes there is sometimes considerable difficulty in determining the best name for a signal, but generally speaking all signals can be classed as distant, home, or starting. This only gives three names, and it often happens that about eight signals have to be named for one line only.

With distant signals little difficulty is experienced, and if more than one, the first signal encountered by the driver is usually termed the OUTER DISTANT, the second one being termed the INNER DISTANT. An alternative is to regard the first one as THE distant signal, and term the second one the AUXILIARY distant signal.

In the case of home signals, if there is no junction diverging, the first one encountered is termed the OUTER HOME, the second one being the INNER HOME. If there is a junction, the SPLITTING signals are often termed DIRECTION signals, as they are fixed for the purpose of indicating the direction in which the road is set. Sometimes the term INTERMEDIATE home or direction signal has to be employed where there is more than one set of such signals involved.

The term "STARTING" signal should properly only be used for a signal at the end of a platform, the signal furthest out which gives admission into the next block section being termed the ADVANCE signal, or the ADVANCED STARTING signal. When leaving a terminal station or arriving at one, special names have to be employed to describe accurately the various signals which are required; such terms as ARRIVAL signals, PLATFORM HOME, and PLATFORM STARTING signals having to be used.

A description to suit Fig. 210 is as follows :—

LEVER DESCRIPTION.

No.	Lever.	Description.
1	Signal	Down distant. Main to branch line.
2	Signal	Down home. Main to branch line.
3	Signal	Down advance. Branch line.
4	Signal	Down distant. Main line.
5	Signal	Down home. Main line.
6	Signal	Down advance. Main line.
7	Signal	Backing. Goods line to down line (<i>viâ</i> south connection).
8	Points	Facing. Set for main line. Pull for goods line.
9	Lock-bar	To No. 8 points.
10	Signal	Backing. Up to down line.
11	Points	South crossover road. Set for main lines. Pull for shunt.
12	Signal	Backing. Down to up line.
13	Lock-bar	To No. 14 points.
14	Points	Facing. Set for main line. Pull for branch line.
15	Points	Trailing. Set for main line. Pull for branch line.
16	Spare.	
17	Spare.	
18	Spare.	
19	Spare.	
20	Signal	Backing. Goods line to down main line (<i>viâ</i> north connection).
21	Points	Catch. Set for run-off. Pull for goods line.
22	Points	Facing. Set for main line. Pull for goods line.
23	Lock-bar	To No. 22 points.
24	Signal	Backing. Up to down line.
25	Points	North crossover road. Set for main lines. Pull for shunt.
26	Signal	Backing. Down to up line.
27	Signal	Up advance. Main line.
28	Signal	Up inner home. Main line.
29	Signal	Up inner home. Main line to goods line.
30	Signal	Up outer home. Branch line.
31	Signal	Up distant. Branch line.
32	Signal	Up outer home. Main line.
33	Signal	Up distant. Main line.
34	Signal	Up inner home. Goods line.
35	Signal	Up outer home. Goods line.

BOARD OF TRADE PLANS.

Signalling plans of all new works have to be submitted to the Board of Trade. The term "new works" includes such

alterations as new junctions or sidings, which interfere with passenger lines, but not slight alterations carried out for renewal purposes, or work which is exclusively in connection with non-passenger lines. The plan submitted to the Board of Trade should be a tracing showing the lines as in Fig. 200, and giving all details as to gradients, all the signals, points, etc., and their numbers, together with a reference table as above, but details of detection are not supplied.

While it is desirable to give all the above-mentioned information on plans to be submitted to the Board of Trade, occasionally plans are accepted which simply show the lines, gradients, etc., and the signals, without numbers or reference.

In all cases where alterations only are submitted, new work is indicated in red and old work in black.

The space between the rails (4 ft. way) is usually tinted some colour to enable it to be easily picked out.

Some engineers colour the UP Lines PURPLE, DOWN Lines BLUE, sidings very light blue, but it is very usual to colour all PASSENGER Lines BLUE, Goods Lines NEUTRAL TINT (running lines only), sidings and non-running lines not used for passenger traffic SIENNA.

There is no universal rule as to these colours, each railway company having its own preferences.

CHAPTER X

INTERLOCKING TABLES, DIAGRAMS, ETC.

BEFORE attempting to draft up a table of locking, it is necessary to scrutinise the signalling plan (which must be numbered up) and understand the reading of each signal, also the "set" of the points, etc. It is impossible correctly to lock up a frame until the complete signalling arrangement has been mastered.

There are many different types of tables used for drafting interlocking. The simplest has three columns thus:—

Lever No.	Released by.	Locks.
1 2 3 etc.		

A very common type has four columns thus:—

Lever No.	Releases.	Locks.	Released by.
1 2 3 etc.			

There are also different names for the columns, and the columns are sometimes transposed, the second column being "Released by," and the last column "Releases."

"Released by" is sometimes termed "Locks in reversed position," or "Backlocks." "Bothway" locks are generally inserted in the "Locks" column, occasionally in a separate column for that purpose, or else inserted both in the "Locks" column, and the "Backlocks" column, with a line below the

number to draw attention to its being in both columns. It is immaterial which system is employed, although with certain types of interlocking frames the four column table is preferable, but with ordinary tappet or wedge locking, where no return locking is required, the simplest table gives all the necessary information.

It must be understood that with each of the different types of tables the interlocking is drafted on the assumption that all the levers in the frame are in the normal position to commence with, and that the PULLING of the lever effects the locking. Thus the "Released by" column gives information as to the levers which require to be pulled *before* the desired lever can be pulled. It must be understood that the levers pulled to release another lever are *backlocked* when the desired lever has been pulled, so that it is not possible to return them to the normal position until the lever last pulled has been replaced.

The "Locks" column gives information as to the levers which are held in the normal position when the desired lever is pulled. "Bothway" locks are generally shown thus (4 B/W) which means that 4 is locked when normal or when pulled. It is sometimes written (B & A 4) which means before and after 4, or (4 N/R) which means 4 is locked when normal or reversed.

"Special," or "conditional" locking is usually written in the columns affected, but the condition is inserted in brackets, abbreviations are generally employed to save space, thus:—

(4 when 7) means that 4 is locked by the lever under consideration *only* when 7 is also in the pulled position. (4 unless 7) means that 4 is locked by the lever under consideration unless 7 is in the pulled position, the pulling of 7 preventing 4 from being locked. If written in full it would be (4 when 7 is pulled), and (4 when 7 is not pulled) as there is a liability of the word "*not*" being omitted in error, it is desirable to use a different word, and *unless* is often used for that reason. The word *reversed* is very generally used to denote the "pulled" position of a lever.

The term *dead* lock is often applied to "direct" locking or

releasing, and is used to distinguish such locks from *Bothway* or *special* conditional locking. Bothway locks are occasionally called *split* locks, or *half* locks. One lever is sometimes said to *want* another lever when it is *released by* that lever, and a lever to *precede* another lever when it *releases* that lever.

The chief rules to be observed in drafting locking are set out in the Board of Trade Requirements (see p. 11). In addition to these rules there are special rulings laid down by the signalling engineers of the various railway companies. Interlocking can hardly be reduced to an exact science, as there are scarcely two places precisely alike, and the traffic working, layout of the place, etc., have to be considered in deciding the interlocking. It can be taken that the main principles are the same in each case, but there can be slight variations in details.

There are six rules laid down by the Board of Trade for interlocking, and these rules will now be considered one by one as they apply to a place as shown in Fig. 208.

First Rule:—"The signalman shall be unable to lower a signal for the approach of a train until after he has set the points in the proper position for it to pass."

So far as the running signals are concerned, when all the levers are in their normal position, the points *are* correctly set for the train to pass. This rule must, however, be taken to mean that any of the points being reversed must lock the running signals interfered with. Taking the points released by lever No. 1, when permission has been given for the points worked from the ground frame to be pulled; the running signals Nos. 24 and 25 must be locked. The signals Nos. 22 and 23 being ahead of the points will not be interfered with. The distant signal No. 26 must not be capable of being pulled, but this is effected by interlocking it with the running signals.

Similarly, when points No. 12 are pulled, Nos. 24 and 25 signals must be locked. When points No. 15 are pulled, both main lines are affected. In this case, however, there will be no **DIRECT** locking between No. 15 points and the running signals, as it will be arranged that No. 15 points cannot be reversed until the crossover road (No. 17 points) has first been

reversed; No. 17 points will be made to lock the running signals, so that as this pair of points is invariably reversed when No. 15 is required there is no necessity for No. 15 doing its own protective locking.

No. 17 when reversed must lock up Nos. 24 and 25, and in addition Nos. 3 and 4, the running signals for the other main line. Nos. 5 and 6 being ahead of the points will not be interfered with. When No. 20 points are reversed, Nos. 3 and 4 signals will be locked. Although level crossing gates are not specifically mentioned in this particular rule, it is necessary that the gates shall lock the running signals. It is usual to effect this locking by means of the gate stop lever, or if there should be a gate lock lever, the locking would be effected by that lever. In the case under consideration, No. 30 gate stop lever will lock signals Nos. 3, 5, and 25. It will *not* lock No. 4 (the calling-on signal), as the purpose of the calling-on signal is to allow trains to proceed to the platform whilst the gates are across the railway.

The rule also applies to the shunting disc signals. Before No. 11 can be pulled to allow a train from the main line to the sidings, points No. 12 must be reversed, that is to say, No. 11 is released by No. 12, and when No. 12 is reversed and No. 11 pulled, it must not be possible to return No. 12 to its normal position. No. 12 is then said to be "back-locked," or locked in the "reversed position."

In a similar manner No. 13 will be released by No. 12.

No. 14 will be released by No. 15. As mentioned previously No. 15 must not be reversed unless No. 17 is also reversed, otherwise the east end of No. 17 points will be damaged when the train moves in obedience to the signal. This is effected by No. 15 points being released by No. 17 points, and it is therefore unnecessary that No. 14 be released by No. 17. It should be mentioned that no positive harm would be done by inserting No. 14 released by No. 17, but unnecessary locking would be added to the interlocking frame, thus adding to the cost of the machine without gaining any corresponding advantage. No. 16 will be released by No. 17, and No. 16 must be locked by No. 15 points, to prevent their being damaged

should a train move in obedience to No. 16 signal with No. 15 pulled.

No. 18 signal will be released by No. 17 points. This signal serves for two routes, therefore it must not be released by No. 15 points, neither must No. 15 points lock it. It is required, however, that when No. 18 signal is pulled, it shall not be possible to move No. 15 points, therefore No. 18 signal must lock No. 15 points bothways; that is, if No. 15 is normal when No. 18 is pulled, it will be held in that position, and if it is reversed when No. 18 is pulled, it must be held in the reversed position. No. 19 will be released by No. 20 points, and No. 21 will also be released by No. 20 points.

Second Rule:—"It shall not be possible for the signalman to exhibit at the same moment any two signals that can lead to a collision between two trains."

This is commonly termed "locking conflicting signals." Main line running signals very seldom have face-to-face conflicting signals. When No. 3 signal is pulled there is no other signal which, when pulled, authorises a train to move in a direction conflicting directly with a train moving in obedience to No. 3 signal. If No. 19 signal were pulled at the same time, two trains would be authorised to meet at the fouling point of the siding, but as No. 20 points lock No. 3 signal this is not possible. No. 19 signal if pulled at the same time as No. 21 signal would authorise a train to move out of the siding at the same time as a train moving into the siding, and this would lead to a face-to-face collision. Therefore, No. 19 must lock No. 21. Similarly, No. 11 will lock No. 13, and Nos. 14 and 16 will lock No. 18. Nos. 14 and 16, if pulled together, would allow two trains to meet at the fouling point of 15 and 17, but as No. 15 points lock No. 16 signal, and No. 14 signal is released by No. 15 points, it is obvious that 14 and 16 cannot be pulled together; therefore it is not necessary for No. 14 to lock No. 16 directly, the locking being effected indirectly.

The locking of conflicting signals is also taken to mean any two signals which, when pulled together, would give the driver conflicting orders. Thus if No. 21 signal and No. 5 signal were pulled at the same time, a driver standing at the platform

would be uncertain whether he should move ahead or whether he should back into the siding. For this reason 21 must lock 5. Also 18 must lock 5, and both 22 and 23 must lock 11 and 16. For a very similar reason No. 22 must lock No. 23, as, should both signals be lowered at the same time, the driver would be instructed to move ahead only far enough to clear the siding points with the tail of his train (No. 22 shunting signal authorises this), and also at the same time to proceed into the next section (No. 23, the advanced starting signal, authorises

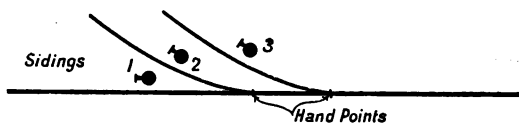


FIG. 227.

this). On many railways, No. 3 (the home signal) locks No. 4 (the calling-on signal), it being taken that conflicting instructions are given to the driver when *both* arms are lowered. On other railways No. 3 is released by No. 4 (see p. 45).

It can be taken as a general rule that all signals which allow trains to meet at a fouling point (converging) are indirectly locked by the point levers; at places, however, where the points are worked by hand levers fixed at the points, the locking cannot be effected in an indirect manner, and the

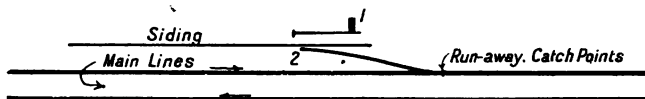


FIG. 228.

signals must be locked directly. Thus in Fig. 227, signals Nos. 1, 2, 3 must all lock each other.

Third Rule:—"After having lowered the signals to allow a train to pass, he shall not be able to move any points connected with, or leading to, the line on which the train is moving."

In most cases this rule simply resolves itself into the converse of Rule No. 1. There are, however, cases where the catch points of a siding or goods line are not worked by the same lever as the main line portion of the connection; thus in Fig. 228 the trailing end of the connection on the main line is

operated by means of a hand lever, the points being fitted in the same manner as the run-away points on inclines. In this case lever No. 1 must lock No. 2.

Where one set of point connections is worked by two independent levers, or where an overcrossing exists, it is very important to see that this rule is not overlooked.

Fourth Rule :—"Points also, if possible, to be so interlocked as to avoid risk of collision."

The purpose of this rule is to safeguard against possible collisions when the driver moves without the authority of a "fixed" signal. In Fig. 208, if points No. 17 and No. 20 are pulled at the same time, it would allow a train to move out of the siding at the same time as a train moving from the down to the up main line. To prevent this 17 must lock 20; similarly, 17 will lock 12, and also 12 will lock 1.

In simple layouts a very great amount of interlocking can be saved by the judicious use of point locking, as, when points interlock, there is no necessity for the signals reading through those points to lock each other, the points affording all the necessary protection.

In very complicated schemes, however, great care must be taken in the point locking to ensure that legitimate simultaneous moves are not prevented.

Fifth Rule :—"Home or starting signals, next in advance of trailing points, when lowered, to lock such points in either position, unless such locking will unduly interfere with the traffic."

This rule means that signal No. 5 must lock Nos. 15, 17 and 20 in either position. That is, should any of these points be normal when No. 5 is pulled, they are held in that position until No. 5 has been returned to its normal danger position, and, on the other hand, should any of the points mentioned happen to be reversed when No. 5 is pulled, it is impossible to return the points to their normal position until No. 5 has been put to danger. Similarly, Nos. 22 and 23 must lock 1, 12 and 17 in either position.

This locking is commonly termed "holding the road," because whilst the signal is at clear it is not possible to move the points. The rules of the railway companies stipulate that

a signal shall not be returned to the danger position until the last vehicle of the train has passed the signal.

The rule that home or starting signals in advance must lock trailing points in the rear is generally made to apply to all signals.

Sixth Rule:—"A distant signal must not be capable of being lowered unless the home and starting signals in advance of it have been lowered." This means that No. 2 must be released by Nos. 3, 5, and 6, and No. 26 released by Nos. 23, 24, and 25.

This rule is commonly expressed as, "the distant signal to be released by the *running* signals ahead."

The above locking when drafted into a table appears as follows:—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	—	12, 17, 24, 25.
2	3, 5, 6	
3	—	4, 17, 20, 30.
4	—	3, 17, 20.
5	—	18, 21, 30. (B/W 15, 17, 20).
6	—	
7	—	
8	—	
9	—	
10	—	
11	12	13, 22, 23.
12	—	1, 17, 24, 25.
13	12	11.
14	15	18.
15	17	16.
16	17	15, 18, 22, 23.
17	—	1, 3, 4, 12, 20, 24, 25, 30.
18	17	5, 14, 16 (B/W 15).
19	20	21.
20	—	3, 4, 17, 30.
21	20	5, 19.
22	—	11, 16, 23 (B/W 1, 12, 17).
23	—	11, 16, 22 (B/W 1, 12, 17).
24	—	1, 12, 17.
25	—	1, 12, 17, 30.
26	23, 24, 25	
27	—	
28	—	
29	Gate gearing	
30	—	3, 5, 17, 20, 25.

Gate Gearing Released by 30.

NOTE. No locking on wickets.

The usual way in which tables are drafted is to commence at lever No. 1 and to proceed on to the last number. At a complicated place it is advantageous to decide on the *point locking first*, as this tends to prevent the insertion of duplicated locking.

Considering now a junction as shown in Fig. 210, the locking will be as follows :—

Points No. 8 will lock points No. 22.

Lock-bar No. 9 will lock No. 8 bothways.

Points No. 11 will lock points No. 25, unless both Nos. 14 and 22 are reversed.

Lock-bar No. 13 will lock No. 14 bothways.

Points No. 14 will have no point locking attached.

Points No. 15 will be released by points No. 14. (This is termed junction locking, and ensures that a train coming off the branch shall not meet a train running along the main line at the diamond crossing.) No. 15 will lock No. 25 unless No. 22 is reversed.

Points No. 21 will be released by points No. 22, as under no conditions can No. 21 be required unless No. 22 is pulled, although No. 22 might be required in the reversed position with No. 21 in the normal position. It is not absolutely necessary that No. 21 should be released by No. 22, but by inserting this locking it saves locking No. 21 with the main line signals, thereby saving a lock.

Points No. 22 will lock No. 8.

Lock-bar No. 23 will lock No. 22 bothways.

Points No. 25 will lock No. 11, unless both Nos. 14 and 22 are reversed, and also lock No. 15, unless No. 22 is reversed.

The table of locking can now be commenced.

No. 1, the distant signal, must be released by all the running signals ahead referring to its own road; that is, Nos. 2 and 3 are inserted in the "released by" column.

No. 2 will be released by Nos. 13 and 14. In actual practice No. 14 must be pulled first, but in a table of locking it is usual to insert the numbers in their numerical order.

No. 2 must lock the crossover road No. 11, as if this were not done it would allow a train from another line to meet the

train signalled, and in addition to this, one end of No. 11 is on the line being run over.

No. 3, the advance signal, should lock the trailing crossover road No. 11 in either position to obey the B. O. T. rule.

There is some divergence of practice amongst the railways as to this. If No. 3 signal should happen to be quite close to No. 11 points, No. 3 would lock No. 11 bothways without exception.

Where, however, No. 3 signal is a long distance from the points (it might be anything up to 500 yards), the locking is sometimes left off. If it is inserted, it is on the condition of No. 14 being reversed, but if No. 14 is normal, then the locking does not hold.

The purpose of No. 3 locking No. 11 bothways is to prevent No. 11 from being moved until the train is clear of the points. This holding of the road can be effected by making the lock-bar No. 13 lock No. 11 bothways. All trains passing over No. 11 do so in obedience to signals which are released by No. 13 lock-bar, hence when the lock-bar is pulled to release a signal, the points No. 11 are held in whichever position they may happen to be, and until the train has moved clear of the lock-bar, it is impossible for these points to be moved. This gives all the necessary holding of the road. Of course No. 13 lock-bar is fixed primarily for the purpose of holding the facing points No. 14, and that is why the B. O. T. rule does not include FACING points. On many railways, however, in order to prevent the signalman from attempting to move the lock-bar whilst a train is running over it, the signals ahead lock the lock-bar and facing points in both positions. With high speed traffic this locking is not irksome, but with slow-moving traffic it is liable to cause delay; this will be more evident when No. 6 is considered.

If the most rigid locking is decided upon, the locking for No. 3 will be:—No. 3 locks No. 12 and B/W Nos. 11 and 13 when No. 14 is reversed, and also locks No. 14 B/W.

No. 4 will be released by Nos. 5 and 6.

No. 5 will be released by No. 13 (this bolts the points), and will lock Nos. 11 and 14. Although No. 13 bolts the points and prevents their being moved, it is necessary to lock No. 5 with

No. 14 to ensure that No. 14 facing points are in the correct position for the train to run along the main line. No. 5 must also lock No. 25. It should be noted that the junction locking (No. 15 released by No. 14) effects all the locking for trains coming off the branch, since No. 5 locks No. 14, and unless No. 14 is first pulled, No. 15 cannot be pulled to allow a train off the branch.

No. 6 signal will lock No. 11 bothways, unless Nos. 14 or 25 is reversed. On either of these points being reversed, it ensures that the train signalled by No. 6 signal will *not* be trailing over No. 11 points. In other words, either No. 14 or 25 cuts out No. 11 so far as No. 6 is concerned. Similarly, No. 6 will lock No. 12 dead and No. 13 B/W, unless No. 14 or No. 25 is reversed. No. 6 will also lock No. 14 B/W, unless No. 25 is reversed, and it will invariably lock No. 26 and B/W No. 25.

Should a train be standing at No. 30 signal waiting to come off the branch, and at the same time a train be signalled along the main line with No. 6 signal at clear, it should be noticed that No. 6 locks Nos. 13 and 14 B/W, and prevents these points from being moved until the train has cleared past No. 6 signal, and also that until these points can be reversed, it is not possible for No. 15 to be set for the branch train. If the train on the main line is a very heavy mineral train, running at slow speed, it will take some considerable time before the last vehicle is past No. 6 signal, to allow the signalman to return that signal to danger. If, on the other hand, No. 6 signal does not hold No. 14 points, then, as soon as the train is clear of the lock-bar No. 13, it is possible to put back No. 13, reverse No. 14 and No. 15 consecutively, and finally pull No. 30 signal for the branch train. If this facility is allowed, it is essential that a fouling bar be placed clear of the diamond crossing on the main line to prevent the branch train from colliding with the main line train, should the latter not be quite past the fouling point when No. 30 is pulled. If the junction fouling point is easily seen from the signal box the fouling bar might be omitted.

No. 7 signal allows a train from the goods line to the Down main line, *not* to the Up main line. It, therefore, will be released by Nos. 8, 11, and 13. This signal allows trains

either to the Down main or Down branch line, hence it is not possible to lock No. 14 points; but making No. 13 release No. 7 effectively holds No. 14 points.

The road being set and properly interlocked, conflicting signals must next be locked, and as No. 12 is a directly conflicting signal, No. 7 must lock No. 12. It will also be necessary for No. 7 to lock No. 29, as No. 29 reads through No. 8 points in the opposite direction to No. 7. When a signal allows a train to proceed over a lock-bar in the trailing direction, it is usual to make the signal lock the bar bothways, in order to prevent the signalman from moving the bar whilst the train is in motion, and for this reason No. 7 will lock No. 9 bothways.

No. 8 points must lock signals Nos. 28 and 34. The point locking has been previously decided, and as No. 8 locks No. 22, it is not necessary for it to lock No. 35.

No. 9 lock-bar has been made to lock No. 8 B/W, (on some railways would also be made to lock No. 11 B/W).

No. 10 signal will be released by Nos. 11 and 13; it will lock B/W Nos. 8 and 9.

The conflicting signals are Nos. 12 (dead conflict), 28, 29, and No. 27 unless No. 8 is reversed, and these must necessarily be interlocked with No. 10.

No. 11 points will lock signals Nos. 2, 5, 30, and 32. The point locking has already been decided.

No. 12 signal will be released by Nos. 9 and 11, and lock B/W Nos. 13 and 14.

Nos. 7 and 10 are conflicting signals (dead), and No. 3 is a conflicting signal when No. 14 is reversed, also No. 6 unless No. 14 or 25 is reversed, this being the converse of the locking arranged on Nos. 3 and 6.

The locking on No. 13 has already been decided.

No. 14 points will lock No. 5 signal.

No. 15 points will lock No. 32 signal, in addition to its point locking.

Nos. 16 to 19 are spare levers without interlocking.

No. 20 will be released by Nos. 21 and 25. No. 21 being released by No. 22 makes it unnecessary for No. 20 to be directly released by No. 22.

No. 20 will lock No. 23 B/W. No. 26 is a dead conflicting signal, and No. 34 is a conflicting signal, both of which must be locked.

There will be no *signal* locking on No. 21.

No. 22 will lock No. 32 signal.

The locking on No. 23 has already been decided.

No. 24 will be released by No. 25, and will lock B/W Nos. 8, 21, 22, 23, and 9 B/W unless No. 22 is reversed.

No. 26 is a dead conflicting signal, and No. 28 is a conflicting signal unless No. 22 is reversed. No. 29 is also a conflicting signal under similar circumstances, but as No. 8 locks No. 22, it follows that No. 24 can lock No. 29 unconditionally. 24 should also lock 34 when 21 is reversed.

No. 25 will lock signals Nos. 5, 32, 35, in addition to the point locking.

No. 26 will be released by Nos. 25, 23, and if No. 22 is reversed, it must be released by No. 21 in addition. The conflicting signals are Nos. 20, 24 (dead), and No. 6,

No. 27 will lock B/W No. 8, and also B/W No. 9, unless No. 8 is reversed (if the bar is not regarded as sufficient for this purpose).

The only conflicting signal is No. 10 when No. 8 is normal.

No. 28 will be released by No. 9 and will lock No. 8. It will lock No. 10 dead, B/W Nos. 11 and 15 unconditionally, B/W No. 22, unless No. 11 or 15 is reversed, and will lock No. 24, and B/W Nos. 23 and 25, unless No. 22 is reversed.

No. 29 will be released by Nos. 8, 9, will lock B/W Nos. 11, 15, 23, 25, and will lock Nos. 7, 10, 24 dead. The conditional locking is not needed on Nos. 24, 25, because No. 8 locking No. 22 would make it inoperative.

No. 30 will be released by Nos. 9, 15, and will lock No. 11. There is no conflicting signal.

No. 31 will be released by Nos. 27, 28, 30, the distant signal not being pulled for the goods line.

No. 32 will be released by Nos. 9, 23, and lock Nos. 11, 15, 22, 25.

No. 32 has no conflicting signal.

No. 33 will be released by Nos. 27, 28, 32, the distant signal not being cleared for the goods line.

INTERLOCKING TABLES, DIAGRAMS, ETC. 289

No. 34 needs no releasing, but locks No. 8 dead, B/W No. 21, the only conflicting signal is No. 20. For very strict locking No. 34 should lock No. 24 and B/W Nos. 23, 25, when No. 21 is reversed.

No. 35 will be released by No. 21 (No. 21 is released by No. 22) and No. 23. It will lock No. 25; as No. 22 locks No. 8, it will not be necessary for No. 35 to lock No. 8 directly.

The locking table will appear as follows:—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	2, 3	
2	13, 14	11.
3	—	[12 (B/W 11, 13) when 14] (B/W 14).
4	5, 6	
5	13	11, 14, 25.
6	—	26 (B/W 25) (B/W 14, unless 25), [12 (B/W 11, 13), unless 14 or 25].
7	8, 11, 13	12, 29 (B/W 9).
8	—	22, 28, 34.
9	—	(B/W 8).
10	11, 13	12, 28, 29 (27 unless 8) (B/W 8, 9).
11	—	2, 5, 30, 32 (25 unless 14 and 22).
12	9, 11	7, 10 (3 when 14) (6 unless 14 or 25). (B/W 13, 14).
13	—	(B/W 14).
14	—	5.
15	14	32 (25 unless 22).
16	—	
17	—	
18	—	
19	—	
20	21, 25	26, 34 (B/W 23).
21	22	
22	—	8, 32.
23	—	(B/W 22).
24	25	26, 29 (28 unless 22) (34 when 21) (B/W 8, 21, 22, 23) (B/W 9 unless 22).
25	—	5, 32, 35 (11 unless 14 and 22) (15 unless 22).
26	23, 25 (21 when 22)	6, 20, 24.
27	—	[10 (B/W 9) unless 8] (B/W 8).
28	9	8, 10 (B/W 11, 15) [24 (B/W 23, 25) unless 22] (B/W 22 unless 11 or 15).
29	8, 9	7, 10, 24 (B/W 11, 15, 23, 25).
30	9, 15	11.
31	27, 28, 30	
32	9, 23	11, 15, 22, 25.
33	27, 28, 32	
34	—	8, 20 (B/W 21) [24 (B/W 23, 25) when 21].
35	21, 23	25.

If the facing point lock-bar is used to hold the points in the rear of it, the locking will be as follows :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	2, 3	
2	13, 14	11.
3	—	(12 when 14).
4	5, 6	
5	13	11, 14, 25.
6	—	26 (B/W, 25) (12 unless 14 or 25).
7	8, 11, 13	12, 29 (B/W 9).
8	—	22, 28, 34.
9	—	(B/W 8, 11).
10	11, 13	12, 28, 29 (27 unless 8) (B/W 8, 9).
11	—	2, 5, 30, 32 (25 unless 14 and 22).
12	9, 11	7, 10 (3 when 14) (6 unless 14 or 25) (B/W 13, 14).
13	—	(B/W 11, 14).
14	—	5.
15	14	32 (25 unless 22).
16	—	
17	—	
18	—	
19	—	
20	21, 25	26, 34 (B/W 23).
21	22	
22	—	8, 32.
23	—	(B/W 22, 25).
24	25	26, 29 (28 unless 22) (34 when 21) (B/W 8, 21, 22, 23) (B/W 9 unless 22).
25	—	5, 32, 35 (11 unless 14 and 22) (15 unless 22).
26	23, 25 (21 when 22)	6, 20, 24.
27	—	(10 unless 8).
28	9	8, 10 (24 unless 22) (B/W 15).
29	8, 9	7, 10, 24 (B/W 15).
30	9, 15	11.
31	27, 28, 30	
32	9, 23	11, 15, 22, 25.
33	27, 28, 32	
34	—	8, 20 (24 when 21) (B/W 21).
35	21, 23	25.

With some types of interlocking frames it is not desirable to insert very much "special" or "conditional" locking. In most of the above cases the conditions could be omitted, but at a busy place it would hamper traffic. Thus 3 could lock 12 dead, but if this were done, then, when a train is standing at 3 waiting for the block section to be cleared, while at the same time a train is backing from the main line through the

crossover road 11 with 12 pulled, it would be impossible to pull off 3 to allow the train to depart until signal 12 has been put back to danger. If a long train was being shunted, it might mean a considerable delay to the train at No. 3 signal. In order to avoid delay the signalman might put No. 12 signal to danger, but this would be infringing the rule prohibiting the replacement of a signal until the train is clear of the points protected by that signal (*Rly. Cos. Rule No. 61*).

The insertion of the condition that 3 only locks 12 when 14 is reversed removes this difficulty.

Having written out the locking table, it is usual to check it through by cross-checking all the locks, thus 2 locks 11, the converse must hold good, *i.e.*, 11 must lock 2; again, 3 locks 12 when 14, therefore 12 must lock 3 when 14, and so on right through the locks. There is no corresponding column for checking the "Released by" interlocking, but as a rule this locking is simple, and is checked by referring to the signalling scheme to verify the accuracy of the numbers. Similarly there is no column for the converse of the B/W locks; these also have to be verified by reference to the numbered scheme.

Duplicated locking can often be detected by carefully going over the table and following out the "Released by" column, and should any of the levers releasing a particular lever have inserted against them the same locking as the lever released, such locks can be removed from the latter lever. Sometimes, however, locking is purposely duplicated, such as inserting locking on the points, and also on the signal released by the points, but only in cases where it is anticipated that the locking on the points might prove to be a hindrance to the traffic; so that should the point-locking be dispensed with, the locking is already on the signals without further alterations or additions.

MISCELLANEOUS CASES OF INTERLOCKING.

In the locking for Fig. 208 it will be noticed that both 24 and 25, the running signals, lock the points ahead. Should there happen to be a third running signal in the rear of the points, it also, as a general rule, would lock the points. It is the general ruling that ALL RUNNING SIGNALS lock the

points ahead. Under exceptional circumstances, however, to facilitate traffic working, it is regarded as sufficient if two running signals in the rear are locked with the points; especially is this the case where slow speeds are enforced, such as entering a terminal station.

All points leading to the same line are, as a general rule, interlocked; thus, in Fig. 208, 17 locks 12 and 1. In Fig. 210 22 locks 8, but under exceptional circumstances, in order to facilitate traffic working, the point interlocking can be relieved, and in this case inserted on the signal No. 35, as there is a running signal (No. 34) between the points concerned. Thus in Fig. 208, if there ~~had~~ been a signal at the fouling point of No. 1, referring to the main line, the locking between 17 and 1 might be taken out, but in that case 18 signal must lock 1.

Where it does not *seriously* interfere with the traffic, it is always advisable to adopt the more rigid ruling for locking points and signals.

The foregoing ruling as to locking back for all the running signals applies very well at high-speed junctions, and at such places should also be made to apply to holding facing points as well as locking trailing points. This often means a considerable amount of special locking at complicated stations to ensure that the road is held right through when the outer signal is pulled. Taking Fig. 216, the outer signal No. 4 will be released by No. 27 lock-bar to hold facing points No. 28, and, in addition, unless 28 points are reversed, No. 4 signal must be released by No. 36 lock-bar to hold No. 37 facing points. Similarly, No. 13 will be released by No. 18 lock-bar to hold No. 19 points, No. 30 lock-bar to hold No. 31 points, and if 31 is reversed it must also be released by No. 36 lock-bar; 13 also must be released by 32 points when 31 is reversed, in order to complete the setting of the route.

At stations where high speeds are not allowed, it is sufficient to hold the road only about 200 yards ahead of the next signal at danger, and if there should be a second signal within this distance, the locking need not be taken further ahead than that signal. At a terminal station where speeds are necessarily very slow, this ruling can safely be adopted.

In Fig. 216, junction point locking is inserted between 19 and 21, between 20 and 22, and so on with the other similar cases; 37 will be released by 38. and 40 will be released by 39, but such interlocking cannot be inserted between 19 and 20 as, although when No. 6 signal is pulled, both 19 and 20 are required, yet 19 must not be released by 20, because 20 is, in return, released by 22, and if 22 is released by 21 it would prevent a train running along the main line with 54 and 6 both in the clear position.

Points No. 37 and 40 being released by 38 and 39 respectively do not interfere with legitimate movements, as the trailing points, which in this case *precede* the facing points, are not themselves released by any other points.

Similarly, 31 must not be released by 32, because 32 in turn must be released by 34; 29 will be released by 28, but 31 must not be released by 29, because it would prevent signals 9 and 55 from being pulled at the same time; this of course would prevent a movement which is quite legitimate, and accordingly would be a serious hindrance to the traffic. In all these cases, where the protecting locking cannot be inserted on the points, it must be inserted on the signals. Thus, as 19 must not be released by 20, it is necessary to make 46 lock 19, and, in addition, the locking must be carried further back, so that both Nos. 49 and 52 must lock 19 unless 22 is reversed.

The reversing of 19 point and the clearing of No. 4 signal simultaneously is objectionable, but if No. 4 signal locks No. 19 points it prevents the legitimate movement of 4 and 48 being pulled at the same time, since 48 will be released by 21, 22, 23, and as 21 is released by 19, therefore 19 must not lock 4.

Under no conditions must point interlocking be allowed to interfere with legitimate movements of trains, and for that reason some engineers prefer to dispense with the ordinary junction locking at places such as this, and leave it to the signalman to set his facing points as he may think best under the varying conditions of his traffic. Thus if a train is accepted along the No. 1 down main line with 22 and 21 points pulled, it would be possible for No. 19 points either to

be normal or reversed as best suits the signalman ; thus if a second train should be approaching on the No. 2 up main line No. 19 points could be left normal, so that an over-running train would not travel across and foul the No. 1 main lines. This freedom, however, is hardly necessary, since the fouling point of the No. 2 up main line with the 21-22 overcrossing is much nearer than the fouling point of the 19-20 overcrossing and the No. 1 up main line. In addition to this, the Block Telegraph Rules prevent the acceptance of trains which will foul each other at junctions and overcrossings. It is preferable in all cases to insert the junction locking between junction points, as it considerably relieves the signal and point interlocking. For instance, signal 52 locks 38 points—the points giving direct access to the line which 52 controls—and 52 also locks 39 points—the points over which a train runs in obedience to that signal. The fact that junction locking is inserted saves all consideration of signals which would allow trains to foul the line protected by 52, because 39 being locked no trains can foul the line *viâ* 37 points, and similarly no trains can foul the line *viâ* 40 points.

Referring to Fig. 218, the locking required by the following levers is of interest. Signal No. 5 reads through the cross-over road 6, and may run a train along the main line or the refuge siding. If No. 13 points are reversed and 32 points also reversed, 33 signal must be locked. The complete locking on 5 is :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
5	6, 12	7, 14, 36 (33 when 13) (B/W 32 when 13).

The locking for No. 6 will be :—

6	—	2, 9, 11, 37, 38 (29 unless 13 and 25) (32 unless 13) (39 unless 25).
---	---	---

The locking for No. 8 signal is also interesting. It will be released by 9 to let trains into the down refuge siding. As the train proceeds along the refuge siding, it first encounters

No. 19 points. These must be locked B/W and the conflicting signal 20 locked. The next points, viz., 25, must be locked B/W, but if 25 points are reversed, it would allow the train (assuming it over-runs No. 24 signal) on to the wrong line; therefore, to prevent this, when 25 is reversed No. 8 must be released by 29 points to put the train on to the right line, and then must lock the conflicting signal No. 30. The complete locking for No. 8 signal is :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
8	9 (29 when 25)	10, 20, 23, 36 (30 when 25) (B/W 19, 22, 25) (B/W 26 when 25).

No. 33 signal must be treated in a similar manner, its locking being :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
33	32 (6 when 13)	4, 31 (5 when 13) (B/W 13) (B/W 12 when 13).

The outer signal No. 39 will lock 6 and 9 unless 25 is pulled, the complete locking for No. 39 being :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
39	26	29 (6, 9 unless 25) (B/W 9 when 25).

Fig. 229 shows some reception lines with fouling bars at the fouling points of the various lines, these bars being worked by levers in the signal box. It is necessary so to interlock the signals, or points, and the fouling bars, as to compel the signalman to move the fouling bars, and thus to ensure that no vehicles are standing in the way before a train is let into one of the reception sidings.

If the signals leading into one particular siding are made to be released by the fouling bars, it is certainly necessary to pull the bars concerned before the signal can be pulled, but

having once pulled the bar, there is nothing to prevent the signalman leaving the bars in the pulled-over position, and so not utilise the bars at all. To obviate this, it is necessary to compel the signalman to put the bars back when the signal has been restored to danger.

The simplest method to treat a case of this sort is to make the signal for entering the siding lock the bar for that siding. This then ensures that the bar referring to the siding being used is normal, and before a train can be run into an adjoining siding, in obedience to the proper signals, the bar must be pulled to release the required signal, thus making certain that the first train has moved up past the fouling point. It is, of course, no guarantee that the train will not creep back and foul the other lines *after* the bar has been moved.

If it is required to allow for a possible backing movement of the train, then an electric fouling bar must be provided.

The complete locking for a place arranged as in Fig. 229 is as follows :—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	2, 3	
2	—	32.
3	—	34 (32 B/W).
23	—	43 (34 when 29 unless 24).
24	23	
25	—	44 (34 when 29, 24. unless 26).
26	24, 25	
27	—	45 (34 when 26, 29).
28	—	41 (34 unless 29).
29	28	
30	29	
31	32	34 (40 unless 29) (B/W 28, 29, 33) (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 30 when 29).
32	—	2, 41, 43, 44, 45.
33	—	(B/W 29, 32).
34	32, 33 (25 when 29 unless 24) (27 when 24, 29 unless 26) (30 when 29)	3, 31 (23 when 29 unless 24) (25 when 29, 24. unless 26) (27 when 26, 29) (28 unless 29) (B/W 24, 26, when 29).
40	—	(31 unless 29).
41	33	32, 28.
42	40, 41	
43	25, 30, 33	23, 32.
44	24, 27, 30, 33	25, 32.
45	26, 30, 33	27, 32.

The complete sequences of pulling for the signals are as follows :—

No.	Sequence of Pulling.
1	3, 2.
2	—
3	—
31	32.
34	32, 33; or 25, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33; or 23, 24, 27, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33; or 23, 24, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33.
40	—
41	33.
42	40, 41.
43	25, 28, 29, 30, 33.
44	23, 24, 27, 28, 29, 30, 33.
45	23, 24, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 33.

It will be noticed the numbering of the levers is not strictly in accordance with the "Geographical System"; they have been

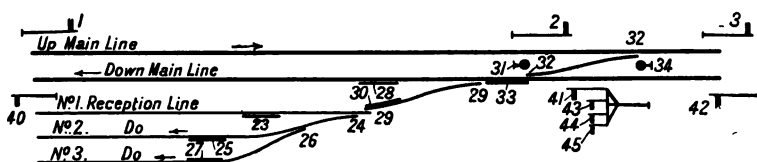


FIG. 229.

slightly re-arranged in order to give the best possible sequence of pulling.

Fouling bars can also be interlocked with the signals by using rotation locking as described on p. 155. Thus it would serve the required purpose if, say, 44 were released by 23 and 27, with the addition of the requirement that 44 *having once been pulled and put back, cannot be pulled a second time until 23 and 27 have been put back and pulled again.*

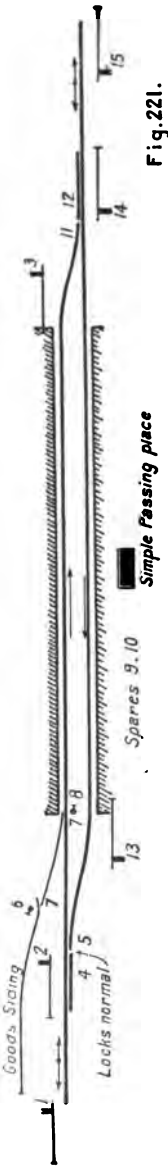
This form of locking is not very desirable, and is not inserted, if the required effect can be obtained without it, but locking of this description is occasionally employed in connection with home and starting signals, or inner and outer home signals, as previously described on p. 158.

SINGLE LINE EXAMPLES.

The locking for single lines varies but slightly from that of double lines.

Consider Fig. 221:—Apart from the lock-bars locking the facing points one way only, the chief variation is that No. 2 must lock 14.

The block telegraph rules for single lines prohibit both home signals being cleared at one and the same time, and to prevent this rule from being broken, the interlocking referred to is inserted. The starting signals in these cases must *not* hold the facing points in the rear B/W, otherwise it may hinder 3 and 13 being pulled at the same time, which is required to send both trains away simultaneously. It must also be noted that with single-line places like Fig. 221, it is *not* possible to set the road throughout before lowering the signals; thus No. 2 signal must *not* be released by 11 points. The complete table for Fig. 221 is :—



No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	2, 3	
2	4	7, 14.
3	11	8 (B/W 7).
4	—	5.
5	—	4.
6	7	8.
7	—	2, 14.*
8	7	3, 6.
9	—	
10	—	
11	—	12.
12	—	11.
13	5	
14	12	2, 7.*
15	13, 14	

* Locks marked thus may be omitted, but 6 should then lock 14.

Fig. 222 is a passing place with over-runs, and in this case it is possible to set the road ahead of the home signals more

in accordance with the methods adopted on double lines. When over-runs are provided it is not usual to make the home signals lock each other, there being no danger should one train over-run. If, however, the over-runs are short this locking would be inserted. The block telegraph rules, however, only allow the concession of slowly moving past the home signal into the station instead of bringing train to a dead stop, and require that only one train at a time shall be allowed into the station. For this reason some companies maintain the locking between the home signals, even where there are adequate over-runs. Leaving out this locking, Fig. 222 will be locked as follows:—

No.	Released by.	Locks.
1	2, 3	
2	10, 19	14, 23.
3	19, 20	15 (B/W 14).
4	19, 22	15, 23 (B/W 14).
5	6	20, 27, 29 (B/W 12, 21).
6	—	8, 11.
7	8	9.
8	—	6 (29 unless 11).
9	8	7.
10	—	11.
11	—	6, 10 (23 unless 14).
12	—	(B/W 11).
13	14, 19	15, 23.
14	—	2.
15	14	3, 4, 13 (B/W 19, 20, 22).
16	—	
17	—	
18	—	
19	—	(B/W 20).
20	—	5, 21, 22.
21	—	20.
22	—	20.
23	22	2, 4, 13 (11 unless 14) (B/W 10, 14, 19).
24	—	
25	—	
26	—	
27	6, 12	5.
28	11, 12	
29	12, 21	5 (8 unless 11).
30	28, 29	



LOCKING DIAGRAMS.

For shop purposes a diagram of locking is prepared, giving all the necessary information for the erection and interlocking of the required frame. For a new pattern apparatus, standard drawings must of course be made, but after these have been made, diagrams only (not to scale), are supplied for future locking frames. Symbols of varied character are employed for the various standard parts, each railway and manufacturing firm having their own distinctive signs.

For tappet locking frames it is usual to draw the locking plungers with the required notches, locks, and connecting rods; showing with dots which locks are to be fastened to any particular connecting rod. With channels suited for five connecting rods, the first line shows the outside Top connecting rod, the second line shows the corresponding Bottom connecting rod, the third line shows the centre Top connecting rod, the fourth line shows the second Bottom one, and the fifth line shows the last Top connecting rod. This notation is quite easy to remember, as if the centre lines of the connecting rods are shown in plan, they would take up the positions as described.

With "table" locking, as described in Fig. 143, the diagram is drawn out with No. 1 lever at the left hand end of the diagram. Fig. 230 shows a locking diagram for a locking frame to suit a junction as shown in Fig. 210 (see locking table on p. 283).

The sketch of the lines as numbered up is sometimes given for the information of the locking fitters. It is very convenient for all concerned to have the sketch of the lines, etc., on hand when testing the interlocking; at the same time it gives the men in the works an opportunity of knowing the reason why the locking is inserted between certain levers, and enables them to carry out their portion of the work in a more intelligent manner.

Fig. 231 shows a diagram of locking to suit a locking frame, as illustrated in Fig. 141, with sketch and table complete ready for the shops. The diagram is drawn up on the assumption that the fitter *always* faces the levers in the same manner as the signalman, whereas in practice, should any locking be

placed on the reverse side of the levers, next to the front wall of the signal box, it is necessary for the locking fitter to work with the diagram upside down, in order to make the diagram agree with the actual locking. To prevent this, the locking on the reverse side of the levers is sometimes numbered from the fitters' standpoint.

A very convenient method of laying out the locking in diagram form is to have a standard gauge sheet made up with lines ruled on it giving the position of each locking plunger, and also of each channel for the connecting rods and locks. The sheet is used in conjunction with a sheet of tracing paper, by having the gauge sheet and tracing paper fixed on the drawing board. The

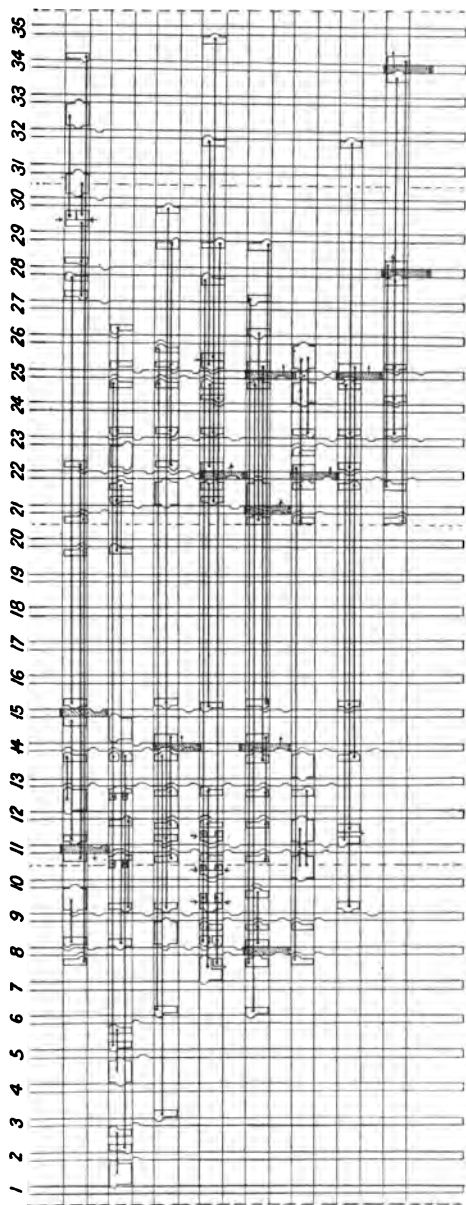
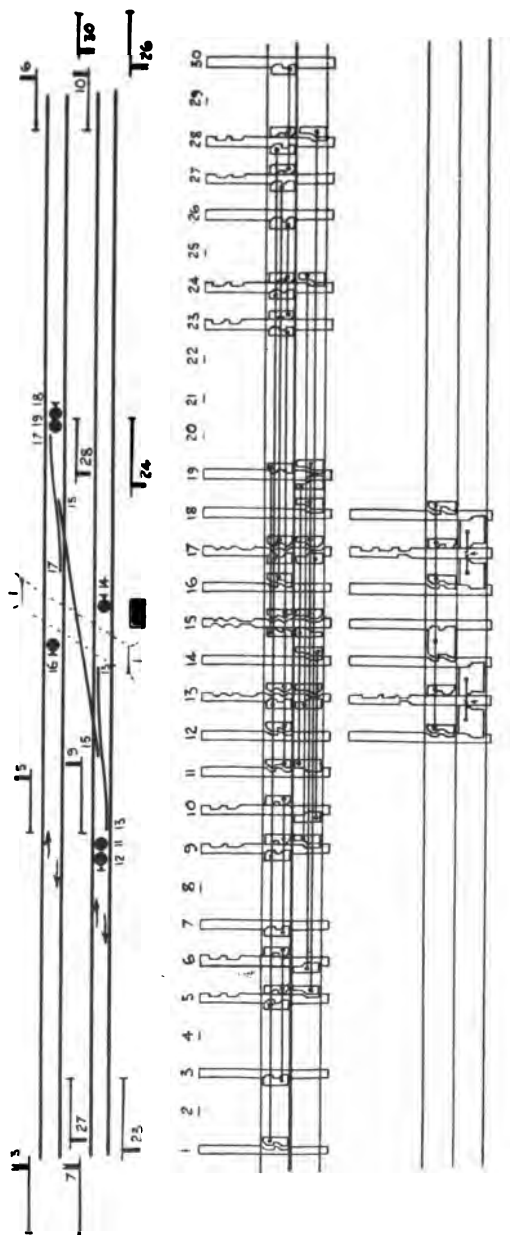


FIG. 230.—Diagram of Locking.



No.	Released by	Locks	No.	Released by	Locks	No.	Released by	Locks
1		5 9 13 17 24 28.	11	15.	19 23	21	Spare.	11 12 (15 15 1/2)
2	Spare		12	13.	14 15 23	22	Spare.	1 13.
3	5 6		13		1 9 24	23		
4	Spare.		14	13	10 12 15.	24		
5		1 17.	15	13 17.	12 14 16 18.	25	Spare.	16 (17 1/2)
6		18 19 (15 17 1/2)	16	17	15 18 27	26	23 24.	
7	3 10.		17		1 5 28.	27		
8	Spare.		18	17	6 15 16.	28	Spare.	1 17
9		1 13.	19	15.	6 11	29		
10		14 (13 1/2)	20	Spare.		30	27 28.	

FIG. 231.—Diagram of Locking with Sketch and Locking Table.

notches in the locking plungers, locks, connecting rods, etc., can then be drawn in with pencil, the gauge sheet keeping the work evenly spaced.

When all the locking has been laid out in its final position, it can then be traced on to tracing cloth, and blue prints taken for the shop.

In laying out the interlocking from a locking table, it is preferable to commence with the levers having the most locking on them, also "special" or "conditional" locking, and any locking which may be between levers a great distance apart; the smaller pieces can be inserted conveniently after the more important runs have been laid down. For a beginner it is useful to lay out the locking roughly on a sheet of ruled foolscap paper, using each line to represent a lever. Having laid all the locking out separately in this manner, it can be examined to see which runs of locks can most conveniently be grouped together in the same channel. In many cases it will be found that two or more levers lock another group of levers—these can be coupled up to the same connecting rod; thus if 5, 7, 20 lock 8, 17 (B/W 21, 22, 23), all this combination would be grouped on one connecting rod. Where one group of levers locks another group, and in addition each member of the first group also individually locks certain other levers, which are not locked by any other lever in the same group, it is sometimes possible to insert the individual and separate locking on independent connecting rods, and then, by making all the independent connecting rods butt against another rod (the latter being connected to the locks of the second group), the whole locking can be effected in one channel.

Fig. 232, A shows such an arrangement.

With tappet locking a great saving of material can be effected by the judicious use of butts. If several levers each lock one another, by the insertion of butts and cutting the connecting rod, the locking can be effected in the space occupied by one connecting rod.

As a rule, connecting rods should not be made to butt against each other, *unless* the butt can be placed below a locking plunger; if this cannot be done, it is preferable to rivet

a block on each connecting rod and allow the blocks to butt.

A very common use for butts is where the signal from a siding is released by the points, and locks the ingoing signal; at the same time the ingoing signal is also released by the same points and locks the outgoing signal. Fig. 232 B shows the common way of arranging this. Generally, all long connecting rods should be arranged so as to work in tension; if long rods are in compression there is a danger of their buckling unless they are well guided. Even then the locking between the levers feels "springy," which is very undesirable, as a

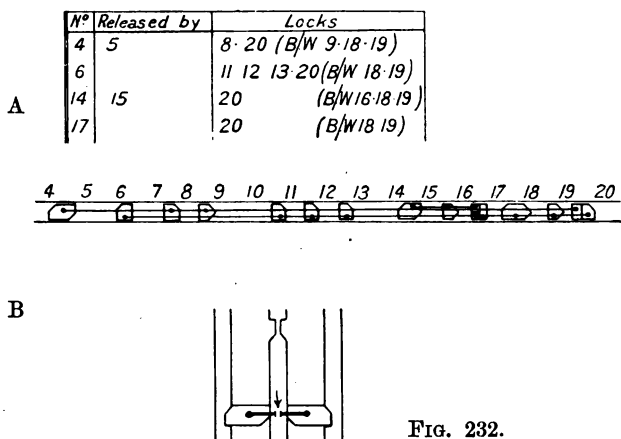


FIG. 232.

springy lock is liable to suggest that the locking is sticking, and that it could be pulled if sufficient force were applied. With long rods in tension this never occurs.

It is generally found convenient to design the locking with the numbered signalling scheme on hand with the table, as this allows the draughtsman to see at a glance which levers are likely to run in groups for interlocking purposes. For locking frames of ordinary size it is convenient to lay out what is purely point locking by itself, and then treat each signal lever separately, combining the connecting rods by means of butts when two or more signals lock the same group of points, etc. The designing of interlocking gives much scope

for ingenuity, in compressing the locking into the smallest number of channels. It often happens, however, that it is not ultimately economical to compress the interlocking too much, as where the locks and rods are crowded together very tightly it adds to the cost of manufacture, and makes the apparatus more difficult to maintain. It is preferable from every point of view to spread out the locking slightly, as, although this may use a trifle more material, it involves less time in making, and in the event of alterations being required to the locking frame when in service, it costs less to add a slight amount of locking where room can be found for it in the channels already in use.

TESTING INTERLOCKING.

After the locking frame has been erected in the signal box the interlocking must be tested to ensure that no errors have been made either in designing the locking or in its execution.

The operation of testing is best carried out by working entirely from the Diagram of Signals hung up in the box.

Suppose the locking frame to suit Fig. 210 is to be tested. First see that all the levers are in the normal position, then try to pull lever No. 1; this should be locked. To release it pull 2, then try 1, which should still be locked; then pull 3, and try 1, which should now be free to be pulled. Having pulled 1 try to restore 2 and 3 to their normal position; they should be backlocked. The test so far has ensured that 1 cannot be pulled unless 3 has first been pulled, also that 1 backlocks 2 and 3; it has not, however, ensured that 2 must be pulled before 1 can be pulled, as should 1 lock 2 B/W by error, the mistake would not have been revealed by the above test. To ensure that 2 must be pulled to release 1, put 1 back also 2 back *leaving 3 over*, then try 1; if it cannot be pulled it is certain that 2 being normal is the cause. In any releasing combination it is necessary to have all the members of the group pulled to test the backlocks, then put back each one by itself, having the others over, to test each individual lock.

To test the locking on No. 2:—First try it with all the levers normal, it should be locked; then pull 14 and 13, when it should

be free; having pulled it, try to put back 13 and 14 which should be backlocked. Then try 11 which should be locked. Put back 2, pull 11 and then try 2. This ensures that 11 is actually being locked by 2 and not by 13 or 14, or that it requires releasing before it is free to be pulled. Next put 11 back, also 13 and 14, then pull 13 and try 2, which should be locked; this proves that 14 must be pulled before 2.

To test the interlocking on 3. This lever is free to be pulled without any other levers first being pulled. Pull 3, try 11, 13 and 14, the latter only should be locked. Put back 3, pull 14, then pull 3 again, try 11 and 13 which should now be locked (unless the locking is arranged as per table on p. 284), try back 14 which should be backlocked. Put back 3 and pull 11 and 13, then pull 3 again when 11 and 13 should be backlocked. Put back 3 once more, and pull 12—this signal requires 9 which must first be pulled—then try 3 which should be locked, put back 12 and pull 3 when 12 should be locked.

The testing of the other levers is precisely similar to the above. Where there is an outer home signal such as No. 4 in Fig. 216 which can be pulled for 3 routes, each route must be tested separately both for releasing and locking.

The general rules for testing are :—

1. FOR A DISTANT SIGNAL.—Pull the necessary home and starting signals, next try the backlocks, and then test each individual release in the group.

2. FOR OTHER SIGNALS.—Set each possible route complete, pull the signal and then try to break the route by endeavouring to put back each of the levers which have been pulled. Next put back the signal lever and set each item of the route in the wrong position one by one, and see that the signal lever cannot then be pulled. Next with the correct route set, pull over, one at a time, any point levers which would enable any vehicle to foul the line on which a train would run in obedience to the signal, and see that the lever is locked, and conversely pull the signal lever and see that the above mentioned point levers cannot then be pulled. Next, with the lever normal pull any conflicting signal and test the lock, and

then the converse lock should be tested. If there are any trailing points in the rear, test the bothway locking.

3. FOR POINTS.—Any releasing should be tested as described for a signal. Interlocking between points must be tested by pulling the point lever and seeing that all points leading on to the same line are locked; also the converse locks must be tested in the same manner as for a signal.

4. FOR LOCK-BARS.—See that the facing point lever concerned cannot be moved when the lock-bar lever is pulled, unless the bar when normal locks the points, in which case the converse must be tried.

5. FOR ANY CASE.—When testing the locking between any two levers see that each lever is free to be pulled when the other one is in its correct position.

LEVER COLOURS.

To assist the signalman in picking out his levers, the levers are painted different colours, according to the uses they have to serve. The usual lever colours are:—

Distant Signals	...	...	...	GREEN.
Other Signals	...	...	...	RED.
Points	...	...	...	BLACK.
Lock-bars and Bolts...	...	...	...	BLUE.
Spare Levers	...	...	...	WHITE.

One or two companies paint *all* their signals RED, whether distant or stop signals.

Release levers (such as for ground frames) are painted BLUE (indicating a bolt), but some companies paint them BROWN.

Levers with locking attached, which are temporarily spare levers, but which require to be worked by the signalman, are painted the lower half WHITE, the top portion being painted whatever colour they are ultimately intended to be.

Clearance Bars are sometimes painted YELLOW.

Fog Machine Levers, Green with Red stripes.

Gong Levers, White with Yellow stripes.

Gate Stop Levers, Brown or Black.

Wicket Gate Levers, Black.

Gate Gearing, Blue and Black.

There is no definite ruling applicable to all railways for these minor levers, each company having its own standard colours.

To assist the signalman in the sequence of pulling his levers, **RELEASING NUMBERS** are painted on the sides of the levers. (Some companies have special plates bolted to the levers for this purpose.)

The numbers are painted on the lever in the exact order in which each lever has to be pulled before the required lever can be pulled, and in this respect the releasing numbers differ from the "**RELEASED BY**" column of the interlocking table. With distant signals it is generally considered sufficient to give only those signal levers which immediately precede it, but with other signals, etc., the *complete* list is given.

For the use of the painter a list is drawn up giving the lever colour and the releasing numbers to be painted on the lever.

The list for Fig. 216 is as follows :—

No.	Colour.	Releasing Numbers.
1	Green	8, 7, 4.
2	Green	15, 9, 4.
3	Green	17, 10, 4.
4	Red	28, 27 ; or 36, 27.
5	Green	8, 7, 6.
6	Red	28, 27, 22, 20, 19, 18 ; or 36, 27, 22, 20, 19, 18.
7	Red	28, 27.
8	Red	—
9	Red	36, 27.
10	Red	39, 38, 37, 36, 27.
11	Green	15, 14, 13.
12	Green	17, 16, 13.
13	Red	36, 34, 32, 31, 30, 18 ; or 30, 18.
14	Red	36, 34, 32, 31, 30.
15	Red	—
16	Red	30.
17	Red	—
18	Blue	—
19	Black	—
20	Black	22.

No.	Colour.	Releasing Numbers.
21	Black	19.
22	Black	—
23	Blue	—
24	Red	28, 27, 25 ; or 36, 27, 25.
25	Black	—
26	Red	23, 25 ; or 19, 21, 22, 23, 25.
27	Blue	—
28	Black	—
29	Black	28.
30	Blue	—
31	Black	—
32	Black	34.
33	Black	31.
34	Black	—
35	Blue	—
36	Blue	—
37	Black	39, 38.
38	Black	—
39	Black	—
40	Black	38, 39.
41	Blue	—
42	Red	43.
43	Black	—
44	Red	23, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43 ; or 41, 43.
45	Red	—
46	Red	23.
47	Red	—
48	Red	19, 21, 22, 23.
49	Red	23, 28, 29 ; or 19, 21, 22, 23, 28, 29.
50	Green	45, 46, 49.
51	Green	47, 48, 49.
52	Red	23, 35 ; or 19, 21, 22, 23, 35.
53	Green	45, 46, 52.
54	Red	—
55	Red	31, 33, 34, 35.
56	Green	47, 54, 55.
57	Red	23, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41.
58	Green	45, 46, 57.
59	Red	41.
60	Green	47, 54, 59.

The order of the above releasing numbers is on the assumption that the facing point lock-bars do not lock the points in the rear B/W. If this were done the order of pulling would be altered in several instances, thus :—26 would be 25, 23, or 19, 21, 22, 25, 23 ; the bar 23 having to be pulled after all the points have been pulled.

DIRECTION OR NAME BOARD.

Either a name plate or a direction board is supplied on which the levers are described. If name plates, they are fastened to the levers. Usually, however, a board is placed at the back of the levers, giving the description of each lever. The lettering is, in most cases, painted on, and the colour sometimes corresponds with the colour of the lever to which the lettering refers; but it is common for the lettering either to be black letters on a white ground or the reverse.

Fig. 293 shows a sketch of a name board to suit the place illustrated in Fig. 206.

The board is about 12 ins. wide, and the lettering for each lever is placed immediately behind that lever.

DIAGRAM OF SIGNALS.

In addition to the direction board, a diagram of all the lines and signals is made and hung in the signal box. Fig. 294 shows a reduced copy of a diagram for a junction station, the numbering being on the grouping system. In practice the space corresponding to the 4 ft. way is coloured according to the use to which the line is put. Diagrams are usually made to some standard size, and the following dimensions, etc., are about the average practice.

Sizes for diagrams (overall size of paper):—

2 ft. 3 ins. by 15 ins.

3 ft. by 21 ins.

4 ft. by 20 ins.

Sizes of details on diagrams:—

4 ft. spaces, $\frac{5}{16}$ th in.

6 ft. spaces, $\frac{7}{8}$ th in.

11 ft. spaces, $\frac{9}{16}$ th in.

Point circles, $\frac{3}{4}$ in. diam.

Signal Posts, from $1\frac{3}{4}$ ins. upwards, according to height of post on ground.

Signal Arms, $\frac{3}{8}$ th in. by $\frac{3}{16}$ th in.

The colours of the lines differ considerably on different railways, the most common being:—

MAIN PASSENGER LINES—Blue, Yellow, or Neutral Tint.

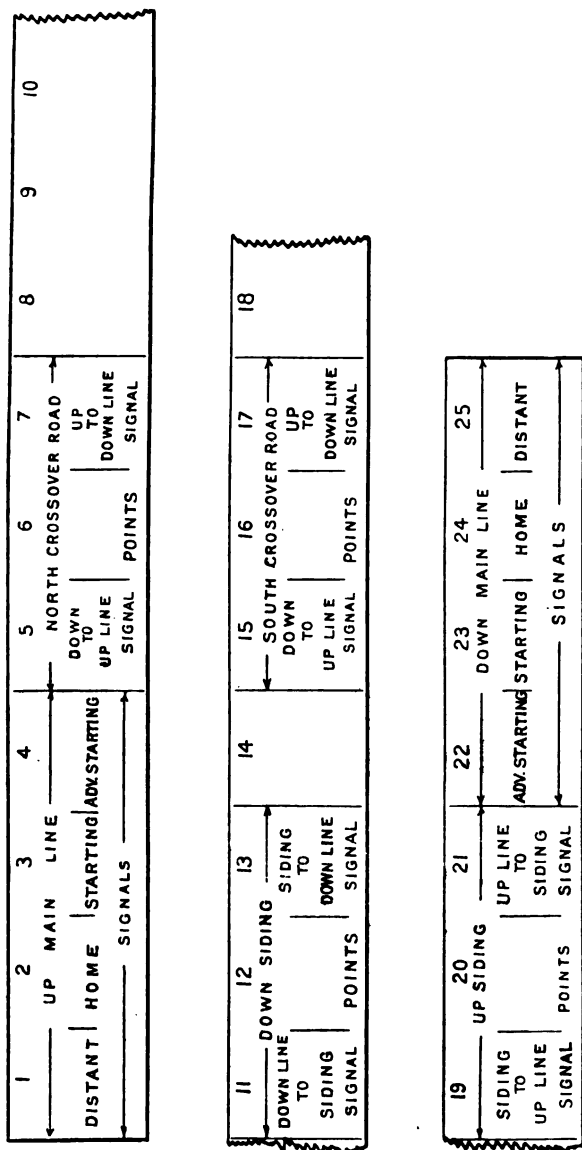


Fig. 233. —Direction Board.

SLOW PASSENGER LINES—Same as above, but lighter tint.

Goods and Mineral Lines (Running)—Sepia or Purple.

Goods and Mineral Lines
(Reception)—Neutral Tint
or Green.

Sidings and Cross-over Roads
—Blue or Sienna.

The point circles are often
tinted either Sienna or
Yellow.

Station Platforms — Sienna
or Yellow.

Roadways—Sienna or Yellow.

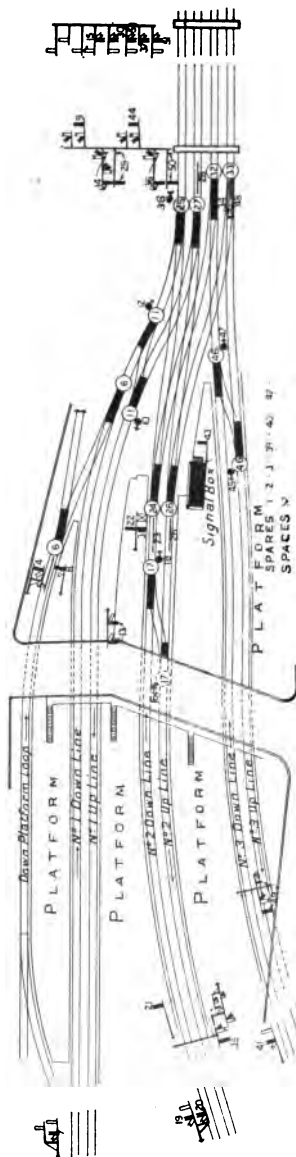


FIG. 234.—Diagram of Signals.

On a few railways diagrams are being made on the "Single Line" pattern, that is, with one heavy line for both rails, similar to the signalling sketches, the "set" of the points being indicated in the same manner. Where diagrams are made as in Fig. 234, the "lie" of the points is indicated by shading them, or blocking them in.

SIGNAL NOTICES.

In order to inform the drivers, etc., as to the reading of the signals, and to advise them of any alterations in the signalling arrangements, a signal notice is issued. The signal notice must be issued either by the general superintendent of the line, or by the general manager. Usually it is issued by the former officer.

The signal notice may be issued weekly, and have all the

engineering alterations for the week included therein, or a separate notice may be issued dealing only with signals at irregular intervals when required. Where new or altered signals require describing they are described as being on a certain side of the line, so many yards in a certain direction from the signal box, and the reading of the signal is given. If a new signal box is to be brought into operation, it is described with respect to the side of the line on which it is built, and its distance from the nearest signal box on either side of it, and from the nearest mile post.

If two or more signals are on one post, such as home and distant signals, or junction signals, it is usual to give a diagram of the signal, numbering the arms, and then giving a description of each arm. At very complicated stations or junctions, where extensive alterations have been carried out, a complete signalling diagram, giving all the lines, etc., is included in the signal notice.

A signal notice to suit Fig. 206, assuming that a new signal box has been built to replace an old box, and that an additional cross-over road has been provided, is appended.

(SUN)DAY, the — day of — 19—

— STATION SIGNAL BOX.

From—A.M. until—P.M. (or until the work is finished) the Engineering Department will be engaged altering the connections at the above place.

The EXISTING signal box will be dispensed with, and the working of the points and signals will be transferred to a new signal box, situated on the down side of the line at 103 miles 1,594 yards, and about 75 yards northward from the existing signal box.

ALL SIGNALS will stand at *Danger*, and flagmen will be provided by the Engineering Department to conduct traffic under the signalman's instructions.

A new cross-over road between the up and down main lines about 230 yards north of the signal box will be brought into use. The new signalling arrangements will be as follows:—

UP DISTANT SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed by the

side of the up line about 1,050 yards north of the signal box.

UP HOME SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed by the side of the up line about 235 yards north of the signal box.

UP STARTING SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed between the up siding and the up main line about 10 yards north of the signal box.

UP ADVANCED STARTING SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed by the side of the up line about 670 yards south of the signal box.

DOWN DISTANT SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed by the side of the down line, about 800 yards south of the signal box.

DOWN HOME SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed between the down main line and the down sidings about 120 yards south of the signal box.

DOWN STARTING SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed at the end of the down platform about 166 yards north of the signal box.

DOWN ADVANCED STARTING SIGNAL.—A single armed signal fixed by the side of the down line about 450 yards north of the signal box.

SHUNTING SIGNALS.—A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the points on the down main line about 230 yards north of the signal box, which will read :—Backing, DOWN MAIN to UP MAIN.

A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the points on the up main line about 168 yards north of the signal box, which will read :—Backing, UP MAIN to DOWN MAIN.

A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the points on the down main line about 10 yards south of the signal box, which will read :—Backing, DOWN MAIN to DOWN SIDING.

A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the catch points of the down siding about 52 yards south of the signal box, which will read :—From DOWN SIDING to DOWN MAIN.

A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the points on the down main line about 51 yards south of the signal box, which will read :—Backing, DOWN MAIN to UP MAIN.

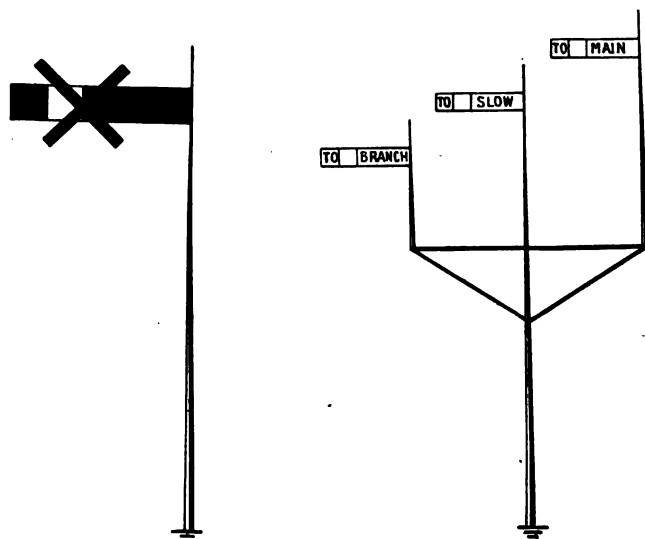
A **GROUND DISC** signal fixed at the points on the up main

line about 115 yards south of the signal box, which will read:—Backing, UP MAIN to DOWN MAIN.

A GROUND DISC signal fixed at the catch points of the up siding about 115 yards south of the signal box, which will read:—From UP SIDING to UP MAIN.

A GROUND DISC signal fixed at the points on the up main line about 170 yards south of the signal box, which will read:—Backing, UP MAIN to UP SIDING.

RUN-AWAY CATCH POINTS.—Catch points have been fitted on



A.—Signal out of use.

B.—Description of Signal painted on Arm.

FIG. 235.

the DOWN MAIN LINE about 500 yards south of the signal box.

Where extensive alterations are in progress, it is very often necessary to erect the signals some time before the work is ready for bringing into operation, and in such cases it is usual to fix a cross on the arms of signals which are not in use, as shown in Fig. 235A. Ground disc signals not in use are either covered with a bag, or the target (or miniature semaphore as the case may be) removed.

Where there is a large number of junction signals to be brought into operation, it is very convenient for the drivers in learning the signals if the reading of the signals is painted on the arms (see Fig. 235B).

This is sometimes done by pasting a printed slip on the arm, but it should not be of a permanent character, and, in any case, it is of no assistance for night working.

ESTIMATES.

The cost of signalling any station or junction naturally depends very much on the patterns selected for the signals and general apparatus, while the form of joints, cranks, rodding, etc., etc., makes a great difference in the first cost of an installation. The following figures must be taken with a certain amount of caution, as they are only given to provide some rough guide as to the likely costs of the items mentioned. The physical layout of the place, involving a large amount of Sunday labour, or costly transport of materials, might cause the actual cost to be considerably higher; on the other hand, it is possible under very favourable conditions to execute signalling work at a less cost.

The following figures give the costs of the items complete ready for use but exclusive of signal box:—

POINTS, LOCK BARS, ETC.

Yards from Centre of Signal Box.						
	50	100	150	200	250	300
Rods without lever in box . . .	£ s. 7 10	£ 15	£ s. 22 10	£ 30	£ s. 37 10	£ 45
Single points connected complete.	19 10	27	34 10	42	49 10	57
Double points, connected complete.	22 10	30	37 10	45	52 10	60
Facing point lock-bar, connected complete . . .	27 10	35	42 10	50	60 0	—

SIGNALS, ETC.

Yards from Centre of Signal Box.

	50		100		200		300		500		800		1000	
	£	s.	£	s.	£	s.	£	s.	£	s.	£	s.	£	s.
Wire and pulleys	0	17	1	4	2	8	3	12	6	0	9	12	12	0
Lever wire and wheels	6	7	7	4	8	8	9	12	12	0	15	12	18	0
One arm on existing post	9	7	10	4	11	8	12	12	15	0	18	12	21	0
Disc	11	13	12	10	13	14	14	18	17	6	—	—	—	—
6 ft. doll and bracket	14	7	15	4	16	8	17	12	20	0	23	12	26	0
11 ft. doll and bracket	16	7	17	4	18	8	19	12	22	0	25	12	28	0
15 ft. signal	16	13	17	10	18	14	19	18	22	6	25	18	28	6
20 ft. signal	18	17	19	14	20	18	22	2	24	10	28	2	30	10
25 ft. signal	20	17	22	14	22	18	24	2	26	10	30	2	32	10
30 ft. signal	25	2	25	19	27	3	28	7	31	19	34	7	36	15
35 ft. signal	26	17	27	14	28	18	30	2	32	10	36	2	38	10
40 ft. signal	28	17	29	14	30	18	32	2	34	10	38	2	40	10
45 ft. signal	30	17	31	14	32	18	34	2	36	10	40	2	42	10
50 ft. signal	33	7	34	4	35	8	36	12	39	0	42	12	45	0

An ordinary brick signal box can be built for about 6*d.* per cubic foot, taking outside dimensions over-all.

In preparing an estimate of the cost of signalling any station or junction, the signals, etc., should be set out roughly with their approximate distances from the signal box, then with the above tables each required lever can be priced separately, any distances not given being allowed for as lying somewhere between the given figures.

When the estimated price has been arrived at, it is usual to add 10 per cent. for contingencies and supervision.

Where only a rough approximate estimate is required, it can be taken that the average cost of a signalling installation (excluding all electrical apparatus, signal box, etc.) works out at about £30 0*s.* 0*d.* per lever. If there should happen to be a large number of lock-bars, and the points are at the limit from the signal box, this price would work out too low; on the other hand, if most of the points are close to the signal box, and a large proportion of the levers are for disc signals, then the price would work out too high.

CHAPTER XI

METHODS OF WORKING TRAINS

On double lines, or lines on which traffic is worked in one direction only, the following methods of working are used:—

1. **ABSOLUTE BLOCK.**—This applies to all passenger trains (with a few exceptions), and ensures a clear line for a train to a point at least 400 yards past the home signal, before it is accepted from the rear signal box.

2. **BLOCK WORKING UNDER WARNING ARRANGEMENTS.**—This applies to non-passenger trains running on a line which is equipped for absolute block working. (Under exceptional circumstances passenger trains are allowed to travel under this arrangement.) A train may be accepted when the line is clear only to the home signal, but the driver must be warned of the fact at the rear box.

3. **LOCK AND BLOCK.**—This interlocks the starting signals with the block instruments making it impossible for the signalman to forward a train without the permission of the signalman at the box ahead. It is used on very busy lines, or on lines which are difficult to work, such as underground lines, where the signalman has an imperfect view of trains.

4. **TIME INTERVAL OR RECORDING TELEGRAPH SYSTEM.**—This applies to non-passenger trains only, and on lines set apart for that purpose; it allows more than one train in the section between two boxes at the same time.

BLOCK TELEGRAPH WORKING (DOUBLE LINES).

The block telegraph system is for the purpose of providing an adequate interval of space between following trains, and

in the case of junctions between converging and crossing trains, as required by the Board of Trade (see p. 8).

Given a portion of a railway to equip with instruments, etc., for block working, it is first necessary to divide the railway into sections, each section being termed a "Block Section." At the end of each section a signal box equipped with block telegraph instruments and also outdoor signals must be provided.

Block signal boxes must be situated at all places where trains can cross or in any way foul the path of other trains. Hence, all junctions between running lines, whether running junctions or cross-over roads, must be controlled from a block signal box. It is not, however, *necessary* to have a block signal box at all stations, nor at sidings which connect with *one running line only*.

A passenger train must not be allowed to enter a block section unless there is no other train occupying that section at the time, and after the first train has entered the section no other train must be allowed to foul the section in any manner until the first train has passed out of the section.

The time between successive trains is regulated by the length of time taken to run through the section; hence it follows that the carrying capacity of the line depends to a great extent on the distance between block signal boxes. On busy lines it is economical to make each station, or intermediate siding, the end of a block section, and, in some cases, to cut up the line between two stations into two or more block sections, by erecting a box for block signalling purposes only, such a box being termed a Block Box. On lines which are not busy it is economical to have the sections of some considerable length, in which case a station might be in the middle of a block section.

Where a passenger station is not equipped with a block signal box, it is usual to provide home and distant signals for each line in order to protect a train which may stand at the station for an unusual length of time, such as in the case of a breakdown of the engine. In this case the signals are left in the CLEAR position and only put to DANGER when required

to protect a train. The signals at such a station are worked by some members of the station staff.

Where a block box is equipped with starting signals, the block section is regarded as commencing at the STARTING (or ADVANCED STARTING) signal, and terminating at the HOME signal of the box ahead, the interval between the HOME and STARTING signals being termed the STATION LIMITS. The portion of line which forms the BLOCK SECTION must be regarded purely as a RUNNING Line, and that *only* in the predetermined direction. If a train breaks down *in* the section the guard must take steps to protect his train from being run into by a following train (unless protected by fixed signals), and not rely on the protection of the block working arrangements. Trains must only be allowed to move in the wrong direction in the block section after the engine driver has received written permission to do so. Within station limits a train may be left standing, being under the protection of fixed signals, and trains can be moved in any direction under the verbal instructions of the signalman.

In practice, PASSENGER TRAINS are not allowed to enter a section unless the section is unoccupied, *and, in addition*, the line ahead must also be *unoccupied* for a distance *not less than* 400 yards. (Some railway companies adopt $\frac{1}{4}$ mile = 440 yards as the limit.)

Fig. 236 shows a common type of block instrument used for double lines. Two instruments are required for each section, one with an operating handle being fixed in the signal box at the "leaving" end of the section, and an instrument, without an operating handle, is fixed at the "entering" end of the section. The instruments in the two signal boxes are connected electrically, so that a movement of the operating handle moves the needles of both instruments simultaneously, each giving the same indications. The instrument with the handle is for the purpose of ACCEPTING trains from the box in the rear, and the one without the handle is to tell the signalman when the train has been accepted by the box ahead. The instruments must at all times give a faithful record of the state of the section *plus* the over-run; when the section is unoccupied, and

permission has not been given for a train to enter the section, the needles hang vertically, this indicates **LINE BLOCKED**; when permission is given to forward a train, the needle is moved to the side of the dial lettered **LINE CLEAR**, and, finally, when a train is in the section, or if for any reason the section, *plus* a quarter of a mile beyond the end of the section, is not clear, the needle must be pointing to the portion of the dial lettered **TRAIN ON LINE**.

A bell of the single beat pattern is installed for each section in both boxes, the bells being electrically connected. The function of the bell is, in the first instance, to **CALL ATTENTION**,

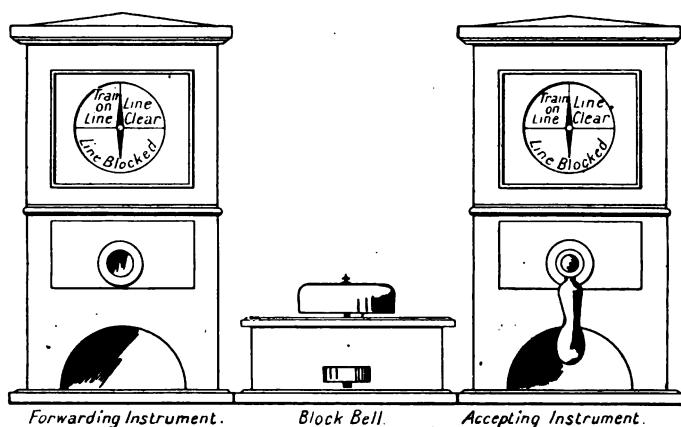


FIG. 236.

and, secondly, to indicate by means of a code of rings information as to the class of train being dealt with, etc., etc. The codes vary very slightly in minor details on the various railway companies; the code used by one railway is given on the following page.

In addition to the block instruments each signal box is supplied with a train register in which the time of receiving all block signals must be recorded; also information as to the class of train, the station from which the train started, and its destination must be given. The register is used as a journal, and any unusual occurrence must be recorded therein.

BELL SIGNALS.

Call Attention ...	Beats on Bell.
Express Passenger Train, or Break-down Van Train going to clear the Line, or Light Engine going to assist disabled Train?	1.
Ordinary or Excursion Passenger Train, or Break-down Van Train NOT going to clear the Line?	4 consecutively.
Branch Passenger Train? (Applicable only where special instructions are given.)	3 pause 1.
Fish, Meat, Fruit, Horse, Cattle, or Perishable Train, composed of Coaching Stock	1 pause 3.
Empty Coaching Stock Train?	5 consecutively.
Fish, Meat, or Fruit Train, composed of Goods Stock; Express Cattle or Express Goods Train?	2 pause 2 pause 1.
Through Goods, Mineral or Ballast Train?	1 pause 4.
Ordinary Goods, or Mineral Train stopping at intermediate Stations?	4 pause 1.
Branch Goods, Mineral or Ballast Train? (Applicable only where special instructions are given.)	8 consecutively.
Through Goods, Mineral or Ballast Train?	1 pause 2.
Light Engine, or two Light Engines coupled, or Engine and not more than two Brakes	2 pause 3.
Ballast Train, or other Train requiring to stop in Section?	1 pause 2 pause 2.
Platelayers' Lorry requiring to pass through Tunnel?	2 pause 1 pause 2.
a Train entering Section	2 consecutively.
a Assistant Engine in rear of Train	2 pause 2.
Obstruction removed or Train out of Section	2 pause 1.
Obstruction Danger	6 consecutively.
Blocking Back	2 pause 1.
Stop and Examine Train	6 consecutively.
Cancelling Signal	Inside Home Signal—2 pause 4.
Caution Signal	Outside Home Signal—3 pause 3.
Train passed without Tail Lamp	7 consecutively.
Train Divided	3 pause 5.
Shunt Train for following Train to pass	9 consecutively to cabin in advance.
Vehicles running away on wrong line	4 pause 5 to cabin in rear.
a Section Clear but Station or Junction blocked	5 pause 5.
Vehicles running away on right Line	1 pause 5 pause 5.
Opening of Signal Cabin	3 pause 5 pause 5.
Testing Block Indicators and Bells	4 pause 5 pause 5.
Closing of Signal Cabin	16 consecutively.
a Time Signal	7 pause 5 pause 5.
Lampman or Fog-signalman required	8 pause 5 pause 5.
Testing Controlled or Slotted Signals	5 pause 5 pause 5.

^a CALL ATTENTION.—The Call Attention signal must always be given before any other signal, except those marked ^a, and must be acknowledged immediately on receipt.

Method of forwarding trains, absolute block system:—Assume two signal boxes “A” and “B.” (See Fig. 237.)

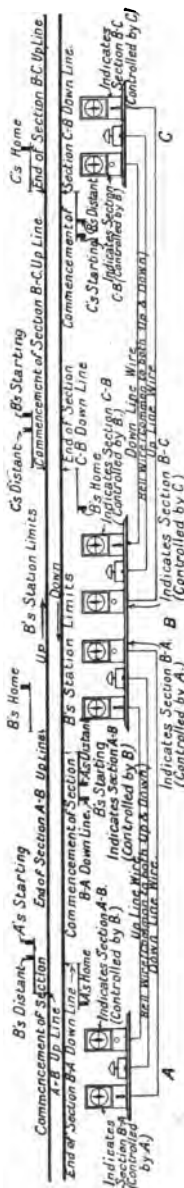
If the signalman at “A” has a train to forward to “B,” the following routine must be carried out.

It is assumed that all the outdoor signals and block instruments are in the normal position.

The block instrument for the line from “A” to “B” shows LINE BLOCKED; this simply means that the line is CLOSED.

If the last train has been passed through the section in the ordinary manner, “A” must first give the CALL ATTENTION signal on his bell key. “B” will return acknowledgment by repeating ring.

“A” then gives the “Is LINE CLEAR?” signal applicable to the class of train to be sent. “B” must satisfy himself that he can safely give permission for the train to approach. If the train is a passenger train the section “A-B” must be clear, and in addition the line ahead of the home signal for a distance of not less than 400 yards. This distance is termed the “OVER-RUN,” as it allows a clear line in the event of a driver being unable to bring his train to a stand at the home signal. The rule also requires that if a train should happen to have just cleared the over-run, it must be *proceeding on its journey* before the following train can be accepted; and should the train leaving “B” break down just ahead of the clearing point, the second train must not be accepted. If the section and the over-run are both



clear, "B" will acknowledge the "Is Line Clear?" signal by repeating it, thus letting "A" know that his signal has been correctly received by "B," and then "B" must move the handle of his block instrument for the section "A-B" to the **LINE CLEAR** position. This causes the needles in both boxes to move to the **LINE CLEAR** position. "A," on seeing his instrument show **LINE CLEAR**, can lower his starting signal for the train to proceed to "B."

As the train leaves "A" the signalman there must give the rings on his bell indicating **TRAIN ENTERING SECTION**; "B" on hearing this signal must acknowledge the signal by repeating it, and move the handle of his block instrument for the section "A-B" to **TRAIN ON LINE**. This moves the corresponding needles to **TRAIN ON LINE** in both boxes. When the train has reached "B" with tail light complete, and passed out of the section, past the over-run,* and is proceeding on its journey, the signalman must call "A's" attention, "A" must acknowledge by repeating the signal; "B" then gives the rings for **TRAIN OUT OF SECTION**, and places the handle of the block instrument in its normal position, "A" acknowledging the signal by repetition.

It will, of course, be understood that the signalman at "B" can give the **TRAIN OUT OF SECTION** signal to "A" if he has shunted the train clear of the running line (assuming he has a siding or cross-over road), instead of forwarding it on to the next box.

After a signalman has given permission for a train to approach towards his box from the box in the rear, he must not allow any obstruction to foul the running line on which the train has been accepted.

Before the line is considered clear, all points over which the train about to be accepted will run must be in the correct position for that train.

* Some railway companies' rules instruct the signalman to give **TRAIN OUT OF SECTION** to the box in the rear as soon as the last vehicle of the train with tail light has passed the home signal. This is undesirable, as although the section itself is clear, the over-run is occupied, and permission could not be given for a second train to approach from the box in the rear.

A signalman *must not ask the box ahead to accept* a passenger train, unless he has received TRAIN OUT OF SECTION for the preceding train, and the block indicator is in the normal position.

If a signalman shunts a train from one running line to another, the over-run of the line on which the train has been shunted is no longer clear; therefore, the permission of the box in the rear of the section concerned must be obtained before the train can be shunted; the BLOCKING BACK INSIDE HOME SIGNAL must be given and acknowledged, and the block instrument for that line must be made to indicate TRAIN ON LINE before the shunting movement is made.

On some railways the code gives separate rings for a passenger and non-passenger train, as it is necessary for the rear box to know what description of train is occupying the over-run; for example, should it be a passenger train, he would be prohibited from offering another train of any description on that line. If a train is moved out of a siding into the over-run, the same routine must be observed, *unless* the train is going ahead into the next section *without delay*.

If it is desired to shunt a train outside the home signal into the rear section, the permission of the signalman in the rear must first be obtained, by giving BLOCKING BACK OUTSIDE HOME SIGNAL, and the instruments concerned must show TRAIN ON LINE, the code of rings again giving the information as to whether the train is a passenger or non-passenger one. The signalman receiving the blocking back signal must see that he can safely give permission for the section or the over-run to be occupied.

Where the block boxes are so close together that the over-run of one box reaches to the home signal of the box ahead, the rear box must not accept a train until the box ahead has first accepted it, similarly the blocking-back signal must not be accepted by the box ahead until the rear box has accepted it.

Fig. 238 shows the signalling arrangements for a junction with the adjacent signal boxes. The signalman at "B" must not accept two trains which can cross the path of each other at the same time.

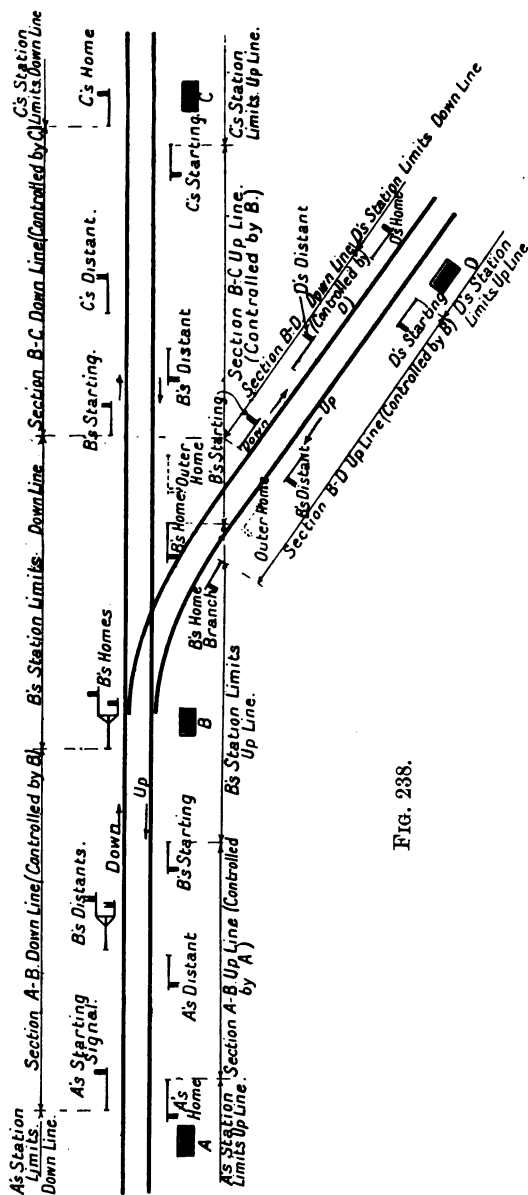


FIG. 238.

Thus he cannot accept a train from "A" to "C" at the same time as he has accepted a train from "D" to "A," nor must he accept a train from "C" and another one from "D" at the same time.

By setting his facing points, so as to secure the required over-run, he can, however, accept a train from "A" destined to go to "D," at the same time that he has accepted a train from "C" to "A." He can safely do so by keeping his signals for the train from "A" at danger, and having his facing points set for "C," so that in the event of the train over-running, it would proceed towards "C," and

not cross the path of the train from "D" to "A." If there is already a train standing at the starting signal of the line

towards "C," and a second train is required to be accepted from "A" to go to "C," the second train can be accepted if the facing points are set for the train to run to "D" in the event of its over-running the home signals, and no train has been accepted from "C" to "A" at the same time.

This ruling only applies to running trains, and a train may be accepted from "A" to go to "D," if the train accepted from "C" has come to a *stand* at the home signal clear of the crossing. Similarly, a train may be accepted from "C" to go to "A" if the train from "D" has come to a stand at the home signal, clear of the fouling point.

The chief essential is that there shall be *one clear section plus the over-run before a passenger train can be accepted*, and it is of no importance how the over-run is obtained; the provision of an outer home signal 400 yards in the rear of the inner home signals at junctions such as "B" is quite sufficient; this however ignores the provision that the train must not only be 400 yards clear, but also *proceeding on its journey*. The section "C-B" terminates at the outer home signal, and the over-run terminates clear of the fouling point of the junction; similarly, the section "D-B" terminates at the outer home signal on that line, and the corresponding over-run terminates well clear of the fouling point of the junction, therefore in a case of this sort trains may be accepted simultaneously from "C" and "D."

BLOCK WORKING UNDER WARNING ARRANGEMENT.

This is termed the WARNING ARRANGEMENT, because the signalman forwarding a train under this regulation must warn the driver that the line is only clear to the HOME signal. Working under this arrangement is often termed RULE 5 WORKING, because that is the number of the rule in the Standard Railway Clearing House Regulations for Block Working.

Where the line is clear only to the home signal, the over-run being occupied, and it is desired to accept a second train, then, if the first and second trains are *both* NON-PASSENGER trains, the second train may be offered and accepted. The

signalman accepting this train does not repeat the "Is Line Clear?" signal, but gives SECTION CLEAR, BUT STATION OR JUNCTION BLOCKED signal in its place; the signalman receiving this signal warns the driver that the line is only clear to the home signal. The needles of the block instruments concerned indicate TRAIN ON LINE, all the time that the section or over-

run is occupied, and TRAIN OUT OF SECTION must not be given, until both the section and the over-run are clear by both trains having passed out of the section. Trains can only be dealt with under this rule in clear weather. By obtaining exemption from absolute block working, passenger trains may be accepted under the "Warning Arrangement."

Fig. 239 shows Tyler's patent single wire block instruments.

The top arm is painted red, and can be regarded as representing the starting signal, as when the arm of the block instrument is at danger, the starting signal must be at danger, and when the arm of the instru-

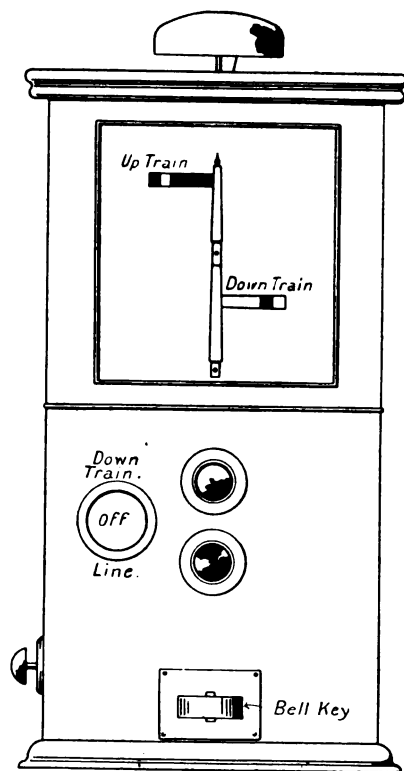


FIG. 239.—Tyler's Block Instrument.

ment is at CLEAR, the starting signal can be lowered. The arm does *not* necessarily give a faithful record of the state of the section plus the over-run. The lower arm is painted white, and represents the starting signal of the box in the rear. The top arm is operated from the signal box ahead, and gives permission for a train to enter the section. The lower arm is operated by pressing the plungers of the instruments; the

top plunger places the arm to the DANGER position, and the lower plunger places the arm to CLEAR. The lower arm is electrically connected to the top arm of the box in the rear, the top arm is connected to the lower arm of the box ahead (see Fig. 240).

The small indicator on the left-hand side shows TRAIN ON LINE, or TRAIN OFF LINE. It is re-set by the plunger at the side. When the top plunger is pushed in, to place the lower arm to danger, the indicator automatically shows TRAIN ON LINE; to place the indicator to TRAIN OFF LINE the side plunger must be pressed in.

All the bell code rings must be given on the bell key. To send a train from "A" to "B," "A" first calls attention in the usual manner; on receiving acknowledgment, "A" then gives the required IS LINE CLEAR? signal. "B" acknowledges by ringing 1, pause 2,* on the lower plunger, which lowers his white arm, and the red arm in "A's" instrument. "A" can then lower his starting signal in obedience to the arm in his instrument. On "Train Entering Section" being sent by "A" to "B," the latter acknowledges by giving one ring on the top plunger, which places his white arm to danger, shows TRAIN ON LINE in his indicator, and at "A" it raises the red arm. "A" will of course have placed his starting signal to danger on the train passing it. When the train has cleared the

* 1 pause 2 is given to indicate LINE CLEAR. This code is used by several railway companies instead of repeating the IS LINE CLEAR? signal, when giving permission for a train to approach from the box in the rear.

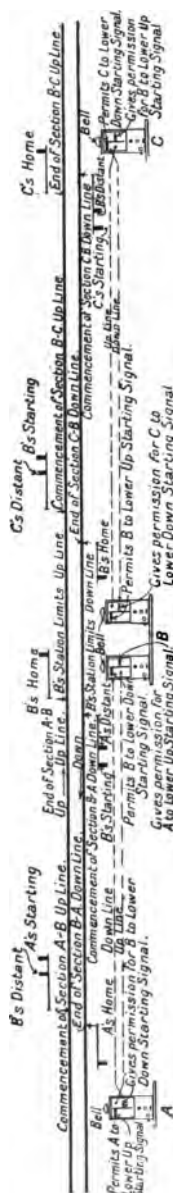


FIG. 240.

section at "B," the signalman there gives the train out of section signal on his bell key, and clears his indicator by pressing his side plunger. Whilst the indicator shows TRAIN ON LINE, the clearing plunger is locked to prevent the signalman from pressing that plunger and accepting a second train by mistake.

The general working arrangements are the same as with the needle instrument, except that with trains accepted under Rule 5, the TRAIN ON LINE indicator must be cleared, and the arm of the block instrument lowered to give permission for the train to approach from the rear. In this respect the instrument does not always give a faithful record of the state of the section plus the over-run. It does, however, give the state of the *section itself*. There are several other types of block instruments in use, but their working is some modification of either the needle instrument or the semaphore instrument and they rely on the same principles.

On most lines during some portion of the twenty-four hours traffic is slacker than at any other portion of the day or night. If the slack period is of several hours' duration, it is convenient to be able to work with longer block sections. To enable this to be done SWITCHES are provided in some of the signal boxes, allowing the box to be closed and the block instruments of the boxes on either side to be connected up. Thus, if A B and C are three boxes, B can be "SWITCHED OUT" and the instruments at A and C are connected together instead of A with B and B with C.

On certain lines for Sunday working, a large number of boxes are closed and the block section may be many miles long, with all the intermediate boxes switched out. Before a box is switched out by the signalman all the running signals for the line concerned must be pulled to *clear*. The box is no longer a block box, and at all boxes which are not block boxes the signals must be in the clear position, unless required to be put to danger to protect a train or obstruction.

The signalman is not allowed to switch out until the sections on either side of him are unoccupied by trains. On switching in the signalman must be informed of the position of the trains

(if any) in the sections controlled by him, and of any special circumstances which may require his attention.

With the needle type in use the instrument without the operating handle is included in the circuit; this informs the signalman on arrival of the state of the sections before he switches in.

LOCK-AND-BLOCK WORKING.

With the ordinary block signal arrangements there is nothing to prevent the signalman from pulling his starting signal to CLEAR before he receives permission from the box ahead.

There are several instruments designed to prevent this possibility.

This method of working is termed LOCK-AND-BLOCK working. Fig. 241 shows the face of a SYKES' Lock-and-Block instrument. The connections to the starting signal lever are similar to the arrangement shown in Fig. 186, p. 206. Where boxes are fitted with this instrument, the following mode of working is adopted:—

The usual code of bell signals is employed, and given on an independent bell. If the line is clear, the signalman at box "B"

presses in his plunger; this sends an electric current to the instrument at Box "A," and releases the lock on the starting signal. The instrument at "A" indicates FREE, informing the signalman that he can pull his starting signal lever. At "B" the lower indicator shows TRAIN ACCEPTED. The plunger at "B" having once been pressed in to release the starting signal at "A," cannot be depressed a second time until the train

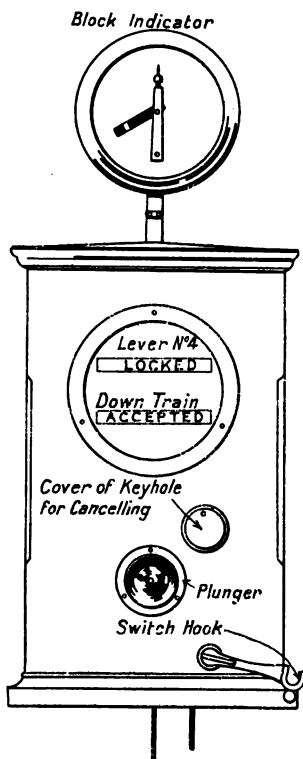


FIG. 241.—Sykes' Lock and Block Instrument.

accepted has passed through the section. When the train leaves "A," the usual TRAIN ENTERING SECTION signal is given on the bell; "B" acknowledges it by repetition, and at the same time turns his switch hook over his plunger; this causes the small semaphore arm on the top of the instrument at both boxes to go to the danger position, indicating that the section is occupied, and at the same time the TRAIN ACCEPTED indication at "B" is covered by a disc which shows TRAIN ON LINE.

The starting signal lever at A, when once it has been pulled to allow a train into the section, is back-locked until the train has passed over a treadle a train's length past the signal, when the signal lever can be restored to the normal position. The back locking is arranged in most cases so that the lever can be put sufficiently back to place the signal to danger, if required, in the case of emergency, but not far enough back to operate, or release any interlocking. When the train arrives at "B" and has passed over the treadle ahead of the starting signal (the box at C having accepted the train), the starting signal at "B" can be restored to the normal position, and the replacing of the starting signal lever re-sets the instrument to its normal position. A second train can then be accepted from "A."

In most installations the starting signal is fitted with a "reverser," so that the train passing the treadle ahead automatically places the signal to danger behind it, and the signal cannot be lowered until the starting signal lever has been put back, and then pulled again, but the lever cannot be pulled until the lock has been released by the signalman ahead. Any movement of the starting signal lever causes it to be locked either in the normal or in the reversed position. The normal lock can only be released by the signalman ahead, and the reverse lock can only be released by a train passing over the treadle ahead of the starting signal (in the ordinary course of events).

At stations where there are sidings into which the train can be shunted clear, or at junctions where a train is brought to a stand at starting signal, and the facing points moved to run the following train on to a different line, additional treadle

contacts must be provided to allow the signalman to accept a second train as soon as a CLEAR section plus an over-run has been provided.

In the case of shunting the first train into a siding to clear the main line for a second train, treadles can be fixed on the siding, to give the necessary clearing of the instruments, and in the case of junction working, an electric contact on the facing point lever can be used to give the necessary relief.

On lines where the SECTION CLEAR BUT STATION OR JUNCTION BLOCKED ruling is in force, the clearing treadles can be placed immediately clear of the home signal, and on this signal being pulled over and then restored to DANGER, the instrument must be re-set to allow a second train to be accepted. The home signal in this case is locked in the reversed position until the train passes over the treadle. The arrangements for locking and releasing the starting signal will be similar to the case in which that signal lever on being put back re-sets the instruments. It will not, however, be locked in the reverse position, as that is done by the home signal.

A better system for allowing the SECTION CLEAR BUT STATION OR JUNCTION BLOCKED arrangement to be used with lock and block working, is to provide a special arm below the starting signal. The lowering of this arm indicates to the driver the absolute block working is not in force and that he must be prepared to stop clear of the next home signal. The "warning" arm is worked by a separate lever which is not locked with the block instrument.

The block telegraph rules require all points over which the train has to pass to be in the correct position before a train can be accepted, and as no obstruction to the line on which the train is about to travel can be allowed after the train has been accepted, until the train has either come to a stand at the home or starting signal, or has cleared the section, the points connected with that line should not be moved to allow any vehicles to foul the line concerned.

At through-running junctions all the necessary safety as to crossing trains, holding and locking points, etc., can be ensured by arranging that until the home signal has been pulled, a

train cannot be accepted on the instrument from the box in the rear. The home signal, having been pulled over to release the block instrument plunger, is locked in the reversed position until the train arrives at, and passes over, a treadle fixed AHEAD of the home signal.

At junctions which are stations, it would be very inconvenient to compel the signalman to lower the home signal before accepting a train, and to obviate this a special setting lever can be introduced. This lever does all the necessary interlocking of points, and it must be pulled before a train can be accepted on the instrument, and once it has been pulled and a train accepted it cannot be put back to unlock the points, until the train has arrived at a treadle, or balanced bar, fixed immediately in the REAR of the home signal. This allows a train to come to stand at the junction home signals, and the points can then be moved as may be required for traffic purposes. When the treadle releasing the setting lever is in the REAR of the home signal, the block instruments must not be released to accept a second train from the rear, until the first train has passed over a second treadle AHEAD of the home or starting signal, as may be required. The setting lever can also be used to advantage at stations other than junctions, where it is necessary to shunt a train from one running line to another, as the pulling over of the crossover road points will be made to lock the setting lever, and so prevent a train from being accepted on the occupied line; conversely, if a train has been accepted on the other line, the setting lever being pulled prevents the crossover road lever from being used.

By the use of a treadle and a fouling bar in conjunction, it can be arranged that, until the whole of the train has passed over the treadle and bar, the required release is not given. This is chiefly necessary when the treadle is on a siding, for the purpose of clearing the section after the first train has been shunted into the siding off the main line.

Lock-and-block working can be carried out in conjunction with almost any type of block instrument. The instrument as shown in Fig. 239 (Tyer's), in conjunction with the electric lock as shown in Fig. 184, is used for lock-and-block working,

the instruments being worked by the signalman in the same manner as when the lock is not fitted.

With all types of instruments some arrangement has to be made for cancelling or re-setting the instrument in case of failure of the treadles or plungers, and also in the event of a train being cancelled after having been accepted. It is now usual to compel the signalman to obtain permission from the signalmen on either side of him before he can obtain the desired release. With SYKES' instrument this is done by fitting an electric lock on the cover of the keyhole in the instrument, so that the two men on either side must press a button before the signalman desiring the freedom can insert a re-setting key. With the TYER's pattern the re-setting is effected by means of a relieving instrument. This is fitted with a disc handle which can be rotated, and is lettered, (1) NORMAL, (2) RELIEF TO BOX "A," (3) RELIEF TO BOX "C," (4) KEY.

To release the instrument the signalmen on either side must move their discs in the direction giving relief to the box asking for that relief; the signalman at the latter box then turns his disc to KEY, and can thus gain access to the top portion of the instrument. By manipulating the required switches either "LEVER LOCK" or "INDICATOR and KEY LOCK" he can then carry out the required resetting or releasing. These arrangements involve three signalmen, which is a guarantee against the relief being obtained for an irregular purpose.

TIME INTERVAL OR RECORDING TELEGRAPH WORKING.

On lines used exclusively for Goods Traffic, trains may be allowed to enter the section when not only is the over-run occupied, but the section itself also occupied; the trains following may be sent after a certain interval of time, or on slow-speed lines no interval may be prescribed. Instruments may or may not be used, but a bell is generally employed for signalling purposes.

Fig. 242 shows an instrument used on lines worked under the Recording Telegraph arrangement.

Instead of a long handle, as in the case of the ordinary needle

instrument, a circular handle is provided. Normally, the needle hangs vertically, the indicator then reading *LINE CLOSED*. To accept a train, the handle is turned slightly, and the needle moves to the *LINE CLEAR* position, the indicator showing the same reading. When the train enters the section, the handle is turned further round, the needle then takes up the *TRAIN ON LINE* position, the reading of the indicator corresponds; if a second train is admitted into the section before the first is clear, the handle is turned still further, the needle remains at *TRAIN*

ON LINE, but the indicator reads 2, to signify that two trains are in the section. The instruments are designed to accommodate about six trains. As a train passes clear of the Home Signal, "*TRAIN OUT OF SECTION*" is given to the box in the rear, and the handle turned back one step, thus indicating one train less in the section. The side plunger is for the purpose of preventing the handle from being moved more than one step at a time, as after each step the handle

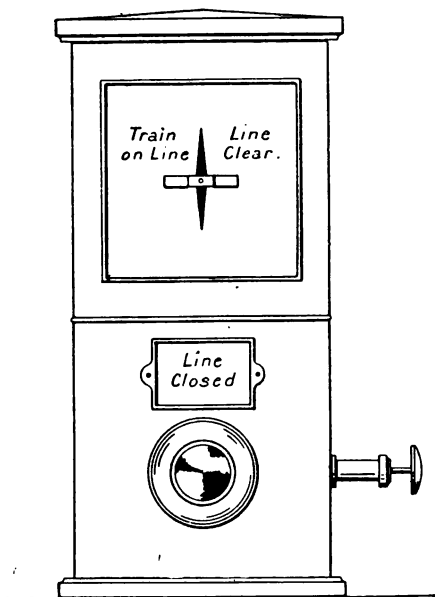


FIG. 242.—Recording Block Instrument.

becomes locked, until released by pressing in the side plunger.

These instruments can be used for either *ABSOLUTE BLOCK* or *WARNING* arrangement working, in addition to purely non-passenger line work. In accepting non-passenger trains, in good weather, if the line is clear to the home signal they are accepted at *LINE CLEAR* by repeating the *IS LINE CLEAR?* signal, but during foggy weather, when the over-run is occupied, and the section itself clear, *SECTION CLEAR BUT STATION OR JUNCTION BLOCKED* signal is used; when the *SECTION* is occupied, a special

signal CAUTION (4 pause 3) is given. The instrument at the receiving end always gives a faithful record of the state of the section. At the sending end, however, there is nothing except the ordinary needle indicating the usual "LINE BLOCKED," "LINE CLEAR," and "TRAIN ON LINE"; the signalman sending the trains has to refer to his train register book if he wishes to know how many trains are in the section ahead.

Where a line not worked on the ABSOLUTE block system joins another line so worked, the signalman at the junction signal box must only accept trains on the converging lines under ABSOLUTE BLOCK Regulations, unless catch points are provided on the non-absolute block line, when, so long as the catch points are set so as to protect the absolute block line, trains may be dealt with on the non-passenger line under non-absolute block regulations.

SINGLE LINE WORKING.

On railways where traffic runs in both directions on the same line, the methods of working are given in the Board of Trade Rules (p. 13).

Fig. 243 shows one pattern of single line staff.

1. *Train Staff and Tickets*.—The line is equipped with block instruments of a similar type to those used for double lines, and the regulations for working trains are similar, with the following exception as to accepting trains at LINE CLEAR.

At a train staff station which is a passing place, LINE CLEAR may be given if the line, on which the approaching train has to run, is clear to the starting signal, and the facing points set for that line. It is possible that the starting signal may be considerably less than 400 yards from the home signal, so that the distance beyond the home signal for an over-running train may be *less* than the standard 400 yards. Where special over-run sidings are laid down this exception disappears.

Rule as to working signals at PASSING PLACES :—

"When trains which have to pass each other are approaching



FIG. 243.—
Staff for
Single
Line.

a staff station in opposite directions, the signals in both direc-

tions must be kept at DANGER, and when the train which has first to be admitted into the station has come to a stand, or where there are over-run sidings, nearly to a stand, the home signal applicable to such train may be lowered to allow it to draw forward to the station or the starting signal, and after it has again come to a stand, and the signalman has seen that the line on which the other train will arrive is quite clear, the necessary signals for that train may also be lowered."

In dividing the line into block sections for this mode of working, a block box must be placed at each passenger station, sidings between stations being, as a rule, controlled by the train staff, in which case signals are not required. At stations which are not used as passing places the block instruments are usually kept

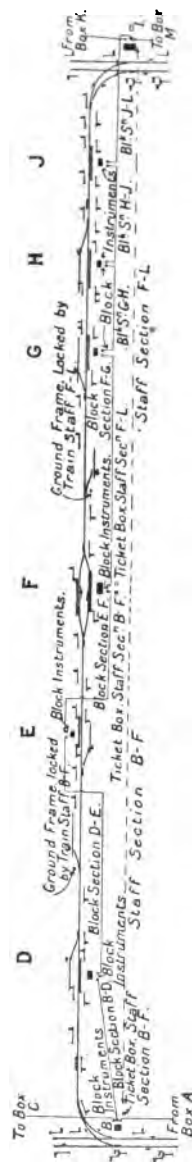


FIG. 244.—Single Line equipped with Train Staff, Tickets and Block Instruments.

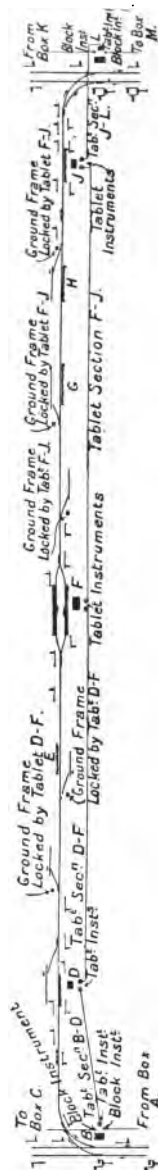


FIG. 245.—Single Line equipped with Electric Tablet Instruments.

in the station master's office, a small locking frame being

erected on the platform (with or without cover) for working the points (if any) and signals.

Each PASSING PLACE must be equipped with signals and block instruments, and must be a STAFF STATION. It is usual to have staff stations only at passing places, but if traffic necessitates it, a staff station *may* be placed between passing places. All staff stations must be equipped with block instruments and signals.

Fig. 244 shows a line signalled to suit this system.

2. *With One Engine in Steam carrying the Staff on a Single Line.*—With this system neither block instruments nor signals are required on the single line. All points are locked with the train staff. If the single line joins another line, single or double, a block box with signals, etc., will be required at the junction of the lines.

3. *Electric Tablet or Electric Train Staff.*—With these systems ordinary block instruments are dispensed with, and outdoor signals are only provided at STAFF or TABLET STATIONS. All intermediate sidings are controlled by the tablet or staff, and any intermediate stations which may be between Staff or Tablet Stations are *not* equipped with signals of any description. Staff or tablet stations may exist at places which are not passing places, but all passing places must be equipped as staff or tablet stations (see Fig. 245).

Fig. 246 shows one pattern of Tyler's tablet instruments. There are about twelve tablets in each instrument, and there are two instruments to each tablet section, one at each end of the section. The two instruments are connected electrically, and the arrangements are such that only one tablet at any one time can be out for any one section. If a tablet is taken out of the instrument at "A," the instrument at "A" becomes locked, so that a second tablet cannot be withdrawn, and the instrument at "B" is also locked, so that no tablet can be obtained from that instrument. The method of obtaining a tablet, assuming both instruments normal with the slides in, is as follows (the general block signalling rules are carried out as in the case of system 1):—"A" calls "B's" attention by depressing the plunger marked "BELL." "B" replies. "A"

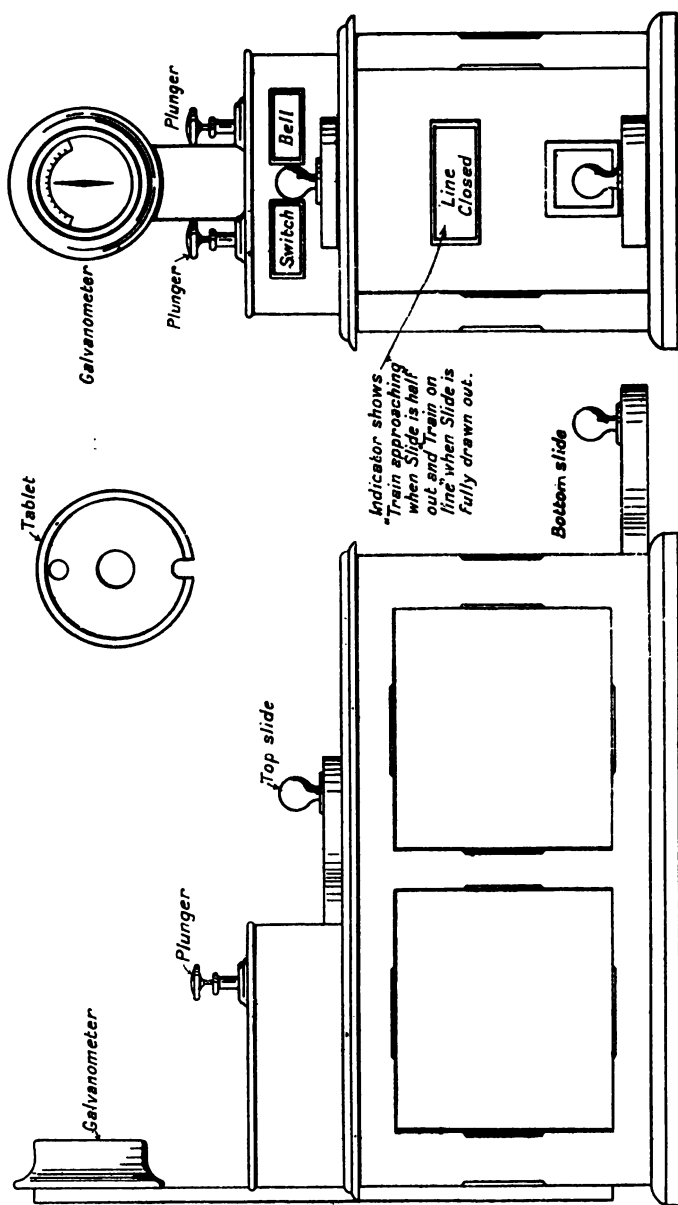


FIG. 246.—Tyer's Tablet Instrument.

then gives the IS LINE CLEAR signal according to the class of train to be forwarded. "B" acknowledges, and then "A" again holds down his BELL plunger for a few seconds. Whilst the bell plunger is depressed the needle above the instrument is deflected to one side. "B," on seeing the needle deflected, depresses his SWITCH plunger with one hand, and withdraws his bottom slide with the other hand, the slide only coming half way out; he then ceases to hold down the SWITCH plunger, but depresses the BELL plunger. "A" then depresses his SWITCH plunger, and at the same time withdraws his bottom slide right out, and then can obtain the tablet. Having taken the tablet off the bottom slide, the signalman at "A" puts it into a carrier pouch and hands it to the driver. The indications given by the instrument are:—bottom slide right in—LINE CLOSED, slide half out (tablet cannot be extracted)—TRAIN APPROACHING, and the bottom slide right out (tablet can be obtained)—TRAIN ON LINE.

The bottom slide having been pulled out cannot be put back again, unless the tablet has been restored to the same instrument by pulling out the top slide, inserting tablet thereon and pushing the top slide in (this returns the tablet to the magazine of the instrument), or unless the tablet has been taken through the section and inserted into the instrument at "B" by means of the top slide. When the tablet is restored to the instrument from which it was obtained (say box "A"), the bottom slide can be put back, and to enable the signalman at "B" to put in his slide (which was pulled half way out), "A" must give the cancelling or shunting completed signal, and hold down the bell plunger on the last beat. "B" must then depress his switch plunger, when he will be able to return the bottom slide to its normal position. If the tablet is taken through the section to "B," on the tablet being restored to the instrument there (by means of the top slide), the bottom slide can be put back to its normal position. "B" then gives "Train out of Section," holding down his bell plunger on the last beat. "A" then must depress his switch plunger, at the same time returning his bottom slide to its normal position.

In order to move the bottom slides, in either direction, the

tablet is required to be inserted by means of the top slide, or the signalman at the other end of the section must depress his bell plunger with his bottom slide right in, and the switch plunger of the instrument requiring the movement must also be depressed.

The ELECTRIC TRAIN STAFF is identical in principle to the tablet system. One staff only can be out for any one section at once; one may be obtained from either instrument, but only by the consent of the other signalman, and the staff can be returned either to the instrument from which it was obtained, or to the instrument at the other end of the section.

There are about twenty staffs for each section (some instruments have twenty per instrument). See Fig. 247.

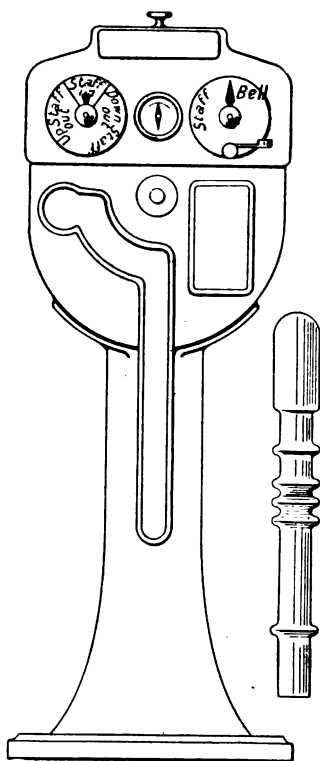


FIG. 247.—Electric Train Staff Instrument.

To obtain a staff, the usual CALL ATTENTION, and IS LINE CLEAR Signals are exchanged. "B" must hold down his bell key on giving the last beat acknowledging the IS LINE CLEAR signal. "A" seeing the needle deflected, turns his right hand indicator to FOR STAFF, and he can then obtain a staff from the instrument. On withdrawing the staff the indicator moves from FOR STAFF to FOR BELL automatically. "A" must then turn his left-hand indicator to UP (or DOWN), STAFF OUT, and press it hard down for a few seconds; this causes the needle to assume a vertical position in both boxes, and "B" then knows that "A" has withdrawn a staff and ceases to hold down the bell key.

"B" must then turn his indicator to UP (or DOWN) STAFF

OUT. If the staff is taken through the section the signalman at "B" will insert it in his instrument and give the TRAIN OUT OF SECTION signal to "A." Both signalmen then restore their indicators to STAFF IN. The instruments are now in the normal position ready for another staff to be withdrawn at either end. If the staff is restored to the instrument from which it was obtained, the cancelling or shunting completed signal would be given to the other box, and then both signalmen must return their indicators to STAFF IN, thus placing everything in the normal position.

At staff or tablet stations which are not passing places, the signalman must on no account accept trains from opposite directions at the same time. If there should be two staff or tablet stations between passing places, "A" being a passing place, "B" and "C" staff or tablet stations but not passing places, and "D" a passing place, then for a train to pass from "A" to "D," "B" must not permit "A" to withdraw a staff or tablet until he has, himself, obtained one for the section "B-C." "C" will not allow "B" to obtain this staff or tablet if he has allowed a train to approach from "D." This, then, prevents two trains leaving "A" and "D" simultaneously. A similar arrangement being in force for trains leaving "D" to go to "A," "C" cannot give "D" permission to withdraw a staff or tablet until he has first obtained a tablet with the permission of "B."

It is usual to make a ruling that no train (or engine) must foul the single line unless the driver is in possession of the STAFF or TABLET for that section of the single line, and for this reason, as a rule, no advanced starting signals are provided ON THE SINGLE LINE. Where shunting is required to be performed at both ends of the section simultaneously, a special SHUNTING STAFF is provided at each box, and interlocked with the train tablet or train staff instrument, so that if permission has been given for a train to approach, the SHUNTING STAFF cannot be obtained. The shunting staff (like the SHUNTING SIGNAL) only allows the driver to proceed into the section far enough to enable the rear vehicle of his train to clear the points. Under no conditions must the driver proceed ahead into the section

without the correct STAFF or TABLET for that section. Where shunting staffs are not provided, shunting is sometimes allowed under the rules for blocking back outside home signal. At places where either of these shunting facilities is allowed, starting signals are sometimes provided on the single line sufficiently far ahead of the points (as in the case of double lines), in which event it is common practice to place a home signal (for the opposite direction) just beyond the starting signal.

Locking is sometimes carried out between the staff or tablet instruments, and the starting signal levers, with a modification of lock-and-block working, so that the starting signal cannot be lowered until a staff or tablet has been obtained.

If it is desired to switch out a staff or tablet station, it is necessary to provide additional staffs or tablets, with instruments to suit, for the new long section to be used when the box is switched out. It is necessary that the two sets of instruments shall interlock each other, so that it is impossible for a tablet or staff for the long and short sections to be out of the instruments simultaneously. It is of course possible to switch out more than one staff or tablet station if desired, and make the long section cover two or more short sections.

Boxes so switched out must have a device which permits of the signals for opposite directions being pulled to clear during the hours that the box is switched out.

Messrs. Sykes have a system employing lock-and-block working, in which staff and tablets are dispensed with. The instruments are designed with slides similar to the tablet instruments. The signalman at "B" pushes in his slide to release the slide at "A," the signalman at "A" on pulling his slide, after being released by "B," causes his starting signal to show CLEAR (an electric signal being used for this). The train, on passing over a treadle ahead of the starting signal, places the signal to danger, and it cannot be cleared again to allow a second train to enter the section until the first train has passed over a second treadle at "B," as in the usual lock-and-block method. The slide at "A" when pulled out becomes backlocked until the slide at "B" has been restored to its normal position. The slide at "B" on being pushed in to

release "A's" slide becomes locked in that position until the train passes a treadle ahead of the home signal, when it can be restored to the normal position. For "B" to send a train to "A," the slides must be reversed in position, "A's" slide being pushed in, and "B's" slide then being pulled out. Either signalman can push in the slide, but only one slide can be pulled out at any one time, and then only with the permission of the other signalman, whose slide must be in the correct "IN" position, and whose bell key must be pressed down, as in the case for an ordinary tablet instrument.

On a portion of the London Brighton and South Coast Railway a system, known as REVERSIBLE WORKING (patented by Mr. Dutton), has been put into operation recently. The purpose is to enable one line to be used in the UP direction during a certain portion of the day, and in the DOWN direction at other times of the day. The line forms a third line, there being two other running lines, one for UP and the other for DOWN traffic exclusively.

All the lines are equipped with LOCK-AND-BLOCK instruments. The reversible line is equipped with signals and block instruments for both directions, with a master lever in each box which determines, by means of ordinary interlocking, which set of signals can be used. The master lever is fitted with two keys, one of which can be obtained when the lever is normal, the other key then being locked in the apparatus; the withdrawal of either key locks the master lever in the position to which it has been pulled to release that particular key.

The keys are painted RED and BLUE, the red for UP working and the blue for DOWN working. The key on being taken from the lever lock is inserted into an electric instrument which switches in the block circuit for the direction corresponding with the lettering on the key. There are two key instruments, one for each key.

The keys are electrically locked in the instruments, and are released by the signalmen in the adjacent boxes. Five boxes are concerned with this reversible line working, "A," "B," "C," "D" and "E." Assume that the instruments are arranged for working traffic from "A" to "E," and that it is required to reverse the working to send trains from "E" to

"A." On "E" giving TRAIN OUT OF SECTION to "D" (assuming that the whole of the reversible line is unoccupied), "D" turns a special INITIATING switch, which then becomes locked. There is an initiating switch only in "B" and "D" boxes. This connects electrically with the key instrument in box "A," and allows "A" to withdraw his key, insert it in the lever lock, reverse the lever, and take out the key for bringing into operation the block instrument for traffic running in the direction "B" to "A." This being done, "B" is enabled to go through the same routine, then "C," then "E," and last of all "D," the latter being the box which *accepts* the first train in the direction "E" to "A." When "D" has turned his last key, it becomes locked, but the initiating switch becomes unlocked, thus breaking the releasing circuit, the change over having been completed. To change the working back again for the direction "A" to "E," "B" makes the first move, by turning his initiating switch; this connects up to "E," allows the keys to be changed over there, then "D," "C," "A," and last "B," the final movement again releasing the initiating switch.

The circuit which gives the release for reversal of the keys is interrupted should any of the signals or block instruments not be in the normal position, and the home signals are interlocked with the starting signals with a special device, so that, even should all the signals and instruments be normal, the presence of a train between the home and starting signals will interrupt the releasing circuit and prevent the reversal of working.

In foggy weather a pilot engine is sent as the last train before reversal takes place to inform fogmen that they must change over and fog the signals for the reverse direction.

The foregoing description of the rules and methods of block-working is by no means a complete record of all the rules necessary for the working of traffic under all conditions, such as emergencies and breakdowns, etc. Only the main principles of block working have been included for the purpose of showing how the Board of Trade Rules with respect to the provision of an adequate SPACE INTERVAL are carried out in practice.

CHAPTER XII

APPENDIX

FOG SIGNALLING.

IN foggy weather, or during falling snow, when the drivers cannot see the signals clearly, it is the general practice to station ground signalmen with flags or lamps and detonators at the Distant signals. They are instructed to maintain two detonators 10 yards apart some distance in the rear of the signal which they have to repeat, so long as that signal is in the danger position ; when the signal moves to clear the detonators should be removed. In addition to placing the detonators on the rails for the on-coming train to explode, each fogman must have hand signals for showing RED and GREEN. The purpose of the detonators is to draw the driver's attention to the hand signals ; if the signal is cleared, whether the detonators are removed or not, the fogman must exhibit a green hand signal to the driver. If the driver explodes a detonator and does not receive a hand signal he must regard it as a DANGER signal and be prepared to stop short of any obstruction.

In the event of the signalman requiring a train to stop during the time between calling out the fogmen and their arrival at their posts, he must endeavour to place two detonators on the rails opposite his signal box.

In many cases this is difficult to carry out, and some mechanical device worked by a lever in the signal box is desirable for placing the detonators on the rails, especially where the signalman has to cross a set of running lines to carry out the rule.

A detonator-placer might be in operation, working permanently in connection with the home signal lever, so

that should a train over-run the home signal at any time an audible warning would be given. Of course the signalman would have to replace the exploded detonators in the machine after a train had over-run the signal, but in ordinary working that would be *very* seldom. Where this device is used it is necessary that the detonators be changed at regular intervals to ensure their being in good condition.

Numerous devices have been, and are being, invented to dispense with the services of fog signalmen. They usually take the form of automatic magazine devices controlled from the signal box, or some form of "CAB SIGNALLING," where an indication is given to the driver in his cab.

Generally speaking, no form of fog signalling device is likely to be successful which requires to be worked by the distant signal *wire*; where distant signals are about 1,000 yards from the box, and occasionally work more than one slotted signal, that alone is sufficient duty for that wire to perform satisfactorily without extra weight being added.

No device which depends on pendulums or triggers on the engine striking a projection in the 4 ft. space (or by the side of the line) is likely to be successful, as the impact is very severe, and renders the fittings very costly to keep in efficient working order.

The following features are necessary for a good working fog-signalling device of the CAB-SIGNALLING TYPE:—

(1) Distinctive indication for both CLEAR and DANGER (the *absence* of an indication is not sufficient for CLEAR).

(2) The apparatus should be constantly in service during all weathers, both foggy and clear.

(3) It should work in conjunction with the distant signal, but should not add any additional work to the lever of that signal.

(4) Any portions on the engine which move when passing over the apparatus should have the minimum amount of INERTIA.

It is practically impossible to design a *purely* mechanical device to fulfil all these requirements. The employment of electricity is necessary for the operation of a successful

device. There are a few types of apparatus employing electricity, and as a rule they employ skids on the engine, which make an electric contact with a ramped bar placed in the 4 ft. way, as mentioned on p. 34.

Another distinct type of automatic fog-signalling machine employs a magazine containing cartridges, which are exploded electrically on the train running over a treadle when the signal is at danger.

There is a very useful type of fog-signalling machine on the market (Messrs. Clayton's) with a magazine which prevents the fog-men from having to place the detonators on the line by hand. Where there are more than two lines, and the fog-man is required to cross over a running line to place the detonators, the fixing of a magazine machine saves the fog-man from having to cross the lines to do his work. The machines are worked with rodding from small levers fixed by the side of the line.

Instead of two separate detonators, where machines are used, it is usual to employ a double detonator, which gives only one report on exploding; this saves the fixing of two machines.

A machine is also on the market for saving one of the two detonators, except in the event of the first one proving defective; the sole purpose of using two detonators is to safeguard against one being defective. With this device the detonator which would be exploded last is fixed to a strip of metal, the strip of metal in turn is connected to a small shaft, while on the opposite end of the shaft a shield is fitted. The apparatus is fixed by the side of the rail with the shield opposite the *first* detonator, the first one being placed on the rail by hand in the usual manner. If the first one explodes as the train runs over it, the force of the explosion acts on the shield and causes the shaft to turn and take off the second detonator *before* the train reaches it.

It is usual to provide small huts for the fog-men, and occasionally, where the clearances are narrow, fog-pits are sunk for the men. Where very dense fogs are experienced, it is necessary to fix some type of indicator to repeat the action of the signal, otherwise it is not possible for the

fog-man to ascertain the position of the signal arm he is intended to indicate. This may be done by the signal wire or electrically. It is common to place short arms low down on the post working in conjunction with the distant arm for this purpose.

SWING BRIDGES.

Where swing bridges carry a passenger line over a river or canal, they must be fitted with a bolt and electrical locking gear to ensure that the bridge is held safely for the passage of the train, and in the event of the bridge being swung, to ensure that all trains are held at a sufficient distance away for safety.

There are two common methods of carrying out the necessary safeguards. In the first case a block signal box is built by the side of the swing bridge, and the levers with the other control gear for operating the bridge are fixed in the signal box. This arrangement is employed when the railway takes precedence over the waterway. In the second arrangement the controlling gear is installed in a box fixed on the swinging bridge, and outpost boxes not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ mile away are erected. This second arrangement is adopted when the waterway is of greater importance than the railway.

Taking the first arrangement, where the block box is built by the side of the bridge, a modified form of lock-and-block working (see p. 325) is installed between the bridge box and the block boxes on either side of it, and in addition, a bridge release lever which locks the starting signals is fitted in these adjacent boxes. A similar release lever is fitted in the bridge box, and it is required that ALL the release levers be pulled before the bridge can be swung. With this arrangement, before a train can be accepted by the bridge box, the release lever must be normal; this holds the turning and other gear, also the bridge bolt in the position securing the bridge for the railway traffic (ordinary mechanical interlocking being used). The home and distant signals are fitted with reversers, the electric circuits being arranged so that unless the bridge is firmly seated on its four corner blocks (or corner wedges, where such are pro-

vided) and the bolt in the correct position holding the bridge, the signals cannot be lowered, and if after the signals have been lowered any movement of the bridge takes place, they go to danger.

When everything is normal, the signalman at the bridge box can accept a train from either (or both) of the boxes adjacent to him.

Having accepted a train on the block instruments, his bridge release lever is locked electrically until the accepted train has passed over the bridge and the tail of the train is well clear of it. This is effected by means of a balanced bar and treadle working an electric lock. Sometimes catch-points are fitted on the line ahead of the bridge, so that in the event of a train backing it will not foul the bridge.

Unless the bridge bolt is of the balanced latch type, it is necessary to provide against its being placed in the bolted position before the bridge is resting on the corner blocks. This can readily be effected by putting an electric lock on the bolt lever, so that until the bridge is home on its corner blocks the bolt lever is back-locked. Fig. 248* shows diagram of wiring, etc., for the above system.

There are several different ways of arranging the details of the interlocking of the release lever in the bridge box. It is in many cases effected without the aid of release levers in the adjacent signal boxes.

With the second method of control, using outpost block boxes, the general principles are the same as the system just described.

The bridge box is built over the lines on the bridge and controls all the turning and bridge gear, including the bridge bolt. A release lever interlocks with the bridge-gear levers, and when the release lever is normal the starting signal levers of the outpost boxes are locked, and the bridgeman is at liberty to swing the bridge as required. When a train requires to be accepted the bridgeman pulls his release lever, which then becomes electrically back-locked. When the lock is in the notch of the release lever plunger, the bridgeman is

* Folding plate at end of book.

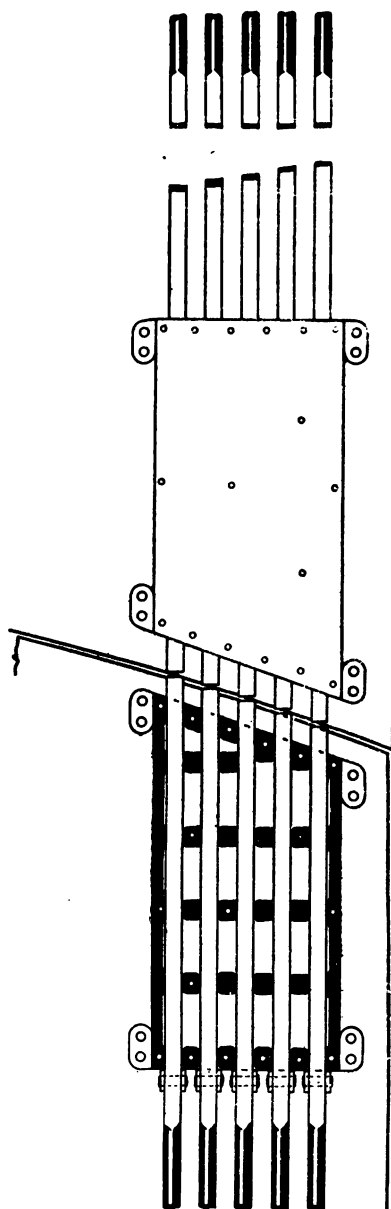
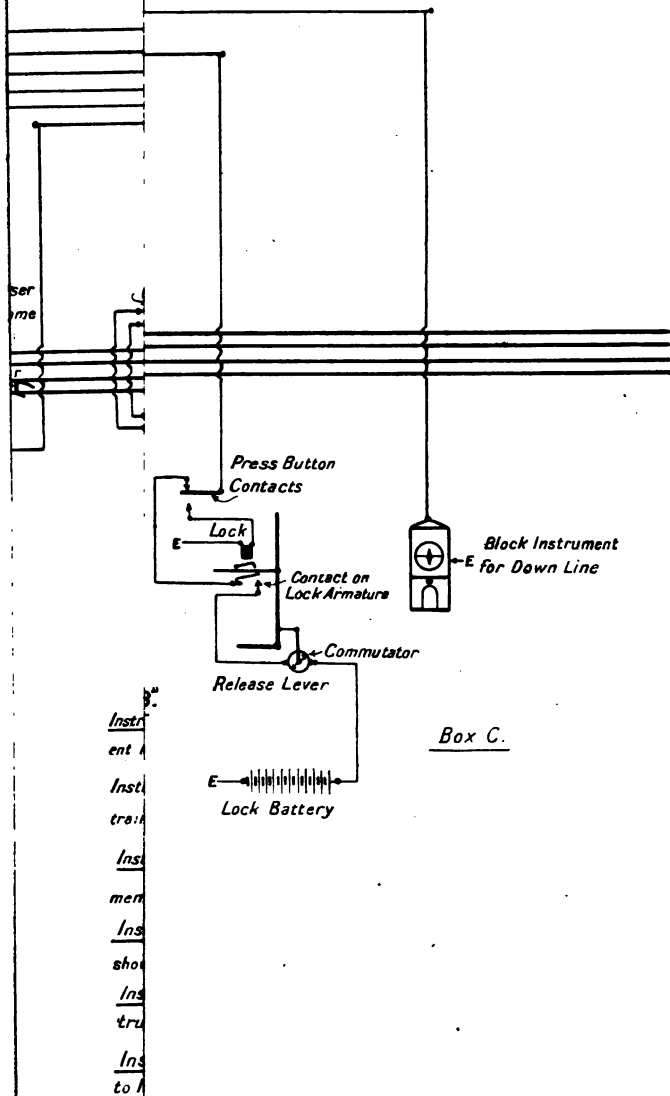


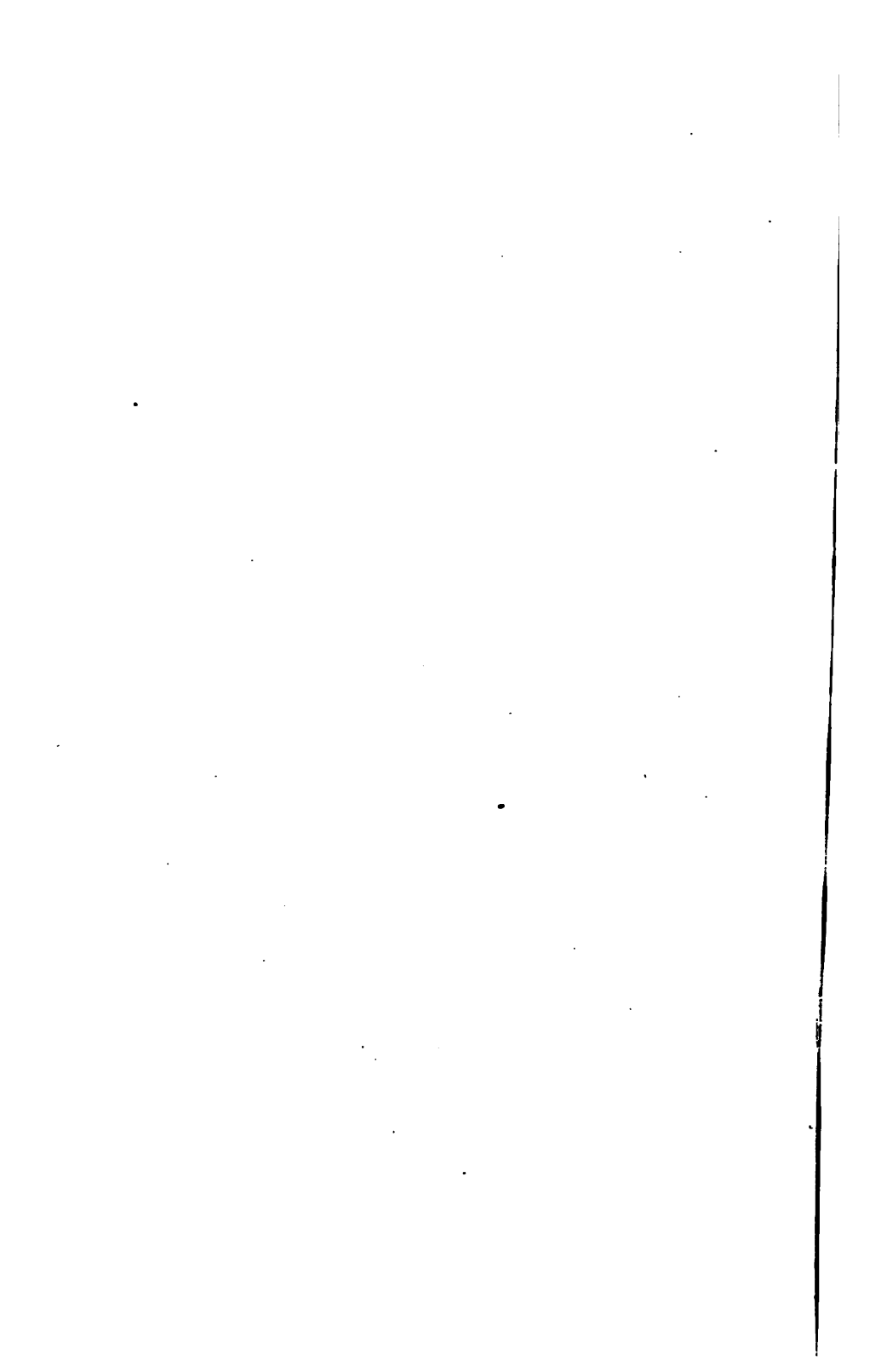
FIG. 249.—Method of running Rods over Swing Bridge.

able to release electrically the starting signals of the outpost boxes. The release lever remains back-locked until the trains accepted have passed over treadles clear of the swing bridge, when he can again replace the release lever to its normal position and swing the bridge as required. The starting signals, having been pulled and put back, cannot be pulled a second time until again released from the bridge box.

When the bridge is swung, the circuits for the block instruments of the outpost boxes are broken, so that no attempt can be made to accept trains. The home and distant signals of the two outpost boxes are fitted with reversers, and the circuits for these pass through contacts on the four bearing corners of the bridge, so that any displacement of the bridge places the signals to danger. The reversers for these signals must be of the type requiring a current to flow before the signals can be lowered, and any cessation of current must place the signals to danger. Indicators are fitted in the three boxes concerned, in circuit with the reversers and bridge contacts, to inform

the signalmen when the bridge is home on its seatings.





Most swing bridges require some gear for allowing signal wires or point rods to be worked across the bridge. Electrical circuits are easily connected up with ordinary rubbing contacts. Fig. 249 shows a simple arrangement for working signal connections over a swing bridge. All the rods from the signal box butt against rods on the bridge, these in turn butting against rods on the land on the opposite side of the bridge, and the latter are connected to counterbalanced levers which pull the signal wire. This device can only transmit a *PUSH*. For the return motion, the rods are moved by counterbalanced levers, so that when the lever in the box is replaced, the rods follow and return to their normal position.

For points, two separate rods are necessary; on the land side the rods are connected by cross levers, so that they work in

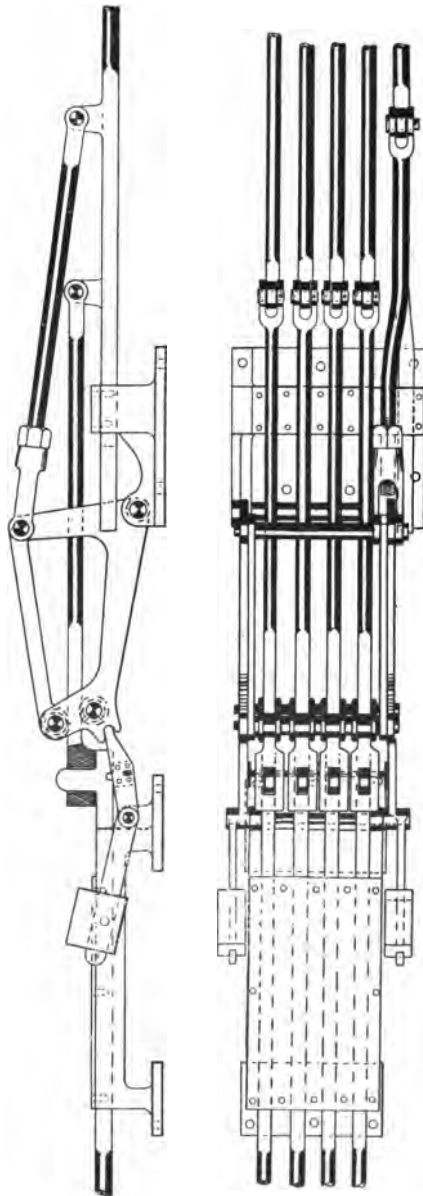


FIG. 250.—Rod Connector for Swing Bridge.

opposite directions; this, then, provides one rod in compression for each direction of motion. This method allows the bridge to be swung when all the rods are in the normal position.

Fig. 250 shows a type of connector for rods passing across swing bridges, which requires a special lever for disengaging purposes. This type is for use where the operating box is placed on the bridge itself, as the disengaging lever connections are all on the swinging portion of the gear. This type only requires one rod for the points, and is also suitable for signal connections.

TRACK CIRCUITS.

Track circuits are often employed for the purpose of indicating the presence of a train on a portion of line. To equip a portion of line for this purpose it is first necessary to insulate the portion of line being treated from the remainder of the line. Insulated joints, consisting of fibre placed between the fishplates and the rails, fibre ferrules round the fishplate bolts, and a piece of fibre between the two adjacent rail ends, must be inserted on each line of rails at both ends of the section. Bond wires must be fastened from rail to rail across the fishplates in order to increase the conductivity of the rail joint. At one end of the section so insulated and bonded, a battery is connected, and at the opposite end of the section a relay is connected. The current from the battery flows along one of the bonded rails to the relay and back along the opposite rail to the battery; this completes a track-circuit. When no train is in the track-circuited section the relay is "energised," and the armature of the relay is held up against the electro-magnet. When a train enters the section, if the wheels are metallic throughout, the current from the battery flows through the wheels and axles of the train to the opposite rail, and as the resistance of the wheels and axles of a train is much less than the resistance of the relay, most of the current flows through the former and a very small amount flows through the relay. If

the resistance of the relay has been designed to suit the capacity of the battery, the relay will become "de-energised" when the train is in the section; that is to say, the armature is no longer held up against the electro-magnet. The armature can be made to operate any secondary circuits desired, such as operating a VEHICLES-ON-LINE indicator, ring a warning bell, etc., etc. Track circuiting can be used instead of treadles or fouling bars; it can also be used to lock a facing point lever when a train is standing foul of the points, and in this case it performs the function of a lockbar.

In practice the following arrangements are commonly adopted:—

Bonding.—Two galvanised iron wires pinned into the rails with channelled plugs. About 12 ins. of slack wire, in the form of a coil, should be left to allow for movements of the rail.

Batteries.—Two copper sulphate gravity pattern cells, coupled in *parallel*. Elements, zinc (about 4-lb. ring). Copper, thin leaf. Glass jars, 6 ins. diameter and about 8 ins. deep. The batteries require washing out every two weeks, and the zinc lasts about one month under average conditions. This battery gives about 1 volt constantly.

Track Relays.—Resistance about 4 ohms. Contacts on armature for operating secondary circuits are generally carbon to platinum. It should be designed to attract the armature when about .06 amp. flows through coils, and allow the armature to move away from the coils when .04 amp. (or less) flows through coils.

The batteries are as a rule kept in "chutes" let into the ground below the frost line if possible. The relays are generally housed in wooden shelters, which must be weather-proof. If the rolling stock is fitted with wood or composition wheel centres, it is necessary to connect the tyres of the wheels with the axles by means of copper wire to ensure good conductivity. Even with properly-bonded wheels one vehicle by itself cannot be relied upon to short circuit the relay effectively. The weight of an engine is, with rare exceptions, sufficient to ensure a good electrical contact between the rails and wheels.

REMINDERS FOR SIGNALMEN.

Trains or engines which have been shunted from a siding to a running line, or from one running line to another, also trains or engines which have been sent forward to stand at the advanced starting signal, are liable to be forgotten by the signalmen unless some special means is adopted to remind the signalmen of the presence of the train. If the Block System is rigidly carried out, the Block Instruments in such cases, would indicate *TRAIN ON LINE*, the *BLOCKING BACK* Signal would have been used in the case of shunted trains, and the *TRAIN OUT OF SECTION* Signal should *not have been given* in the case of a train which had arrived from the box in the rear, and been sent to stand at the starting signal. Some companies' rules, however, do not give this latter safeguard (see p. 318).

The Railway Clearing House Standard Rule No. 55 instructs one of the train men to go to the signal box as a reminder when the train has been kept at a signal on a running line for an unusual length of time.

Where there are many lines it is objectionable to have several train men in the signal box, as this is liable to hinder the signalmen in their work.

Electrical and mechanical reminders are sometimes used for the above purpose.

The simplest is a ring or plate which can be slipped over the Home Signal lever handle, and so prevent the catch being lifted to enable the signalman to pull the lever in order to send a second train forward, which might collide with the standing train. The signalman is instructed to place the ring on the lever of the protecting signal as soon as a train has been sent to stand on a running line. When the fireman of the train has been sent to the signal box as a reminder, time is often lost by the line being cleared as soon as he arrives at the box, and the train having to wait until he can rejoin it; the loss of time is greatest when a train has been sent to stand at an advanced starting signal which may be about 500 yards from the signal box.

To obviate the necessity for any of the trainmen going back

as a reminder, an indicator—which may work in conjunction with a lock on the protecting signal, or a lock on the Block Instrument preventing a second train from being accepted—can be installed in the signal box, and can be operated either by track circuit or a system of treadles or balanced bars.

Where the Lock and Block System is fully installed, no reminder is necessary, as full protection is afforded by the locking.

Where the cost of treadles, track circuit, etc., is too great, a simple device fixed on the advanced starting signal post, to be operated by the fireman, could be fixed. This could take the form of a press button or switch handle, with an indicator both in the signal box and at the signal, so that the fireman can see that the device works correctly. The apparatus should be arranged so that the button being pressed in, or the handle turned, indicates VEHICLES ON LINE, and locks the protecting signal (and the block instrument if required). The lowering of the advanced starting signal could be used to re-set the apparatus to the normal position, or the fireman could clear the indicator by turning the handle back, as soon as the signal is lowered.

INDEX

A.

ABSOLUTE block, 313
 Accepting trains, 317
 Adjusting screws, 101
 Advance signal, 46
 Advanced starting signal, 46
 Angles for arms (droop, etc.), 66
 Annett lock, 199
 Annett signal, 39, 41
 Anti-friction rollers, 98
 Arms (signal), 9
 fittings, 63
 painting, 18
 sizes, 17, 40, 42
 Arrangements,
 levers, 259
 signals, 31, 39, 40, 48
 Auxiliary signals, 27

B.

BACKING signals, 52
 Back blinder (spectacle), 69
 Back lights, 10
 Balance lever, 71
 Balance weights, 71
 Balanced bars, 223
 Barrel screw, 101
 Bars,
 clearance (fouling), 223, 229
 interlocking, 142, 149
 lock, 10, 109
 Bases,
 signal bridges, 61
 signals, 54, 56
 Battery for track circuits, 349
 Bearings,
 arms, 64
 cranks, 104
 levers, 138
 Bell code (block working), 316

R.S.E.

Bells,
 electric, 197, 215
 lever colour, 301
 Blades,
 detector, 115
 point, 93
 Block sections, 5, 313
 Block telegraph rules, 312
 Board,
 direction (name), 304
 painted for signal, 2
 Board of Trade requirements, 8
 Bolt,
 facing point, 10, 104, 119
 level crossing gate, 194
 swing bridge, 345
 Bonding rails for track circuit, 349
 Bothways locking, 143
 Bothways signal, 51
 Box,
 block, 313
 gate stop, 186
 locking, 149
 signal, details of, 169
 Boxing and covering, 135
 Brackets,
 locking, 148
 signal, 38, 57
 Bridge,
 obstruction to view, 40
 signal, 39, 60
 swing, 344
 Bridles (locking), 149
 Burners for lamps, 82
 Butts (locking), 298

C.

CAB signalling, 34
 Calling-on arms, 42
 Cams (locking), 150
 Cases (lamp), 80

A A

- Catch handle locking, 158
 - Catch points, 11, 12
 - Catches, 139
 - Caution signals, 18
 - Channels (locking), 149
 - Clearance bars, 223, 229
 - Clearance for signals (structure gauge), 12, 88, 234
 - Clips (lockbar rail), 109
 - Code of block bells, 316
 - Colours for,
 - diagrams, 304
 - levers, 301
 - plans, 269
 - signal arms, 18
 - signal lights, 4, 5, 9, 33
 - Combination of signals, 25, 48
 - Compensating screw, 101
 - Compensation of rodding, 123
 - wires, 179
 - Conditional locking, 144
 - Connecting rods,
 - arms, 70
 - interlocking, 149
 - points, 10, 96
 - Connecting up points, 117
 - Connections, rodding, 97
 - Connector (swing bridge), 347
 - Contacts (electric), 221
 - Controls for,
 - ground frames, 197
 - signals (slots), 73
 - Costing, 310
 - Counterbalancing of arms, 68
 - Couplings (point rod), 98
 - Coverings (rods and wires), 135
 - Cranks and stands, 102
 - Crossings,
 - compound (or slip), 264
 - diamond, 12, 123
 - level, 13, 182
 - movable, 123
- D.
- DETECTORS, 10, 113
 - counterbalanced, 116
 - electric, 224
 - rod, 115
 - wire, 115, 116
 - Detonators, 341
 - Diagrams, 304
 - Diagrams of locking, 294
 - Diamond crossings, 12
 - Diamonds, movable, 123
 - Direction board, 304
 - Direction signals, 36
 - Disc and crossbar signal, 2
 - Discs, 3, 52, 84
 - Disengager,
 - for lock-bars, 121
 - for rods over swing bridge, 347
 - Distant signal lock, 202
 - Distant signals, 8, 18
 - Documents for Board of Trade, 8
 - Dolls,
 - (discs), 52, 84
 - (signal posts), 37
 - Double plunger locking, 162
 - Double slips, 264
 - Down rod (signal arm), 70
 - Driving irons, 142
 - Droop of arms, 66
 - Drop boxes, 139
 - Drop-off slots, 74
 - Dummies (disc) signals, 52, 84
 - Dutton's locking machine, 163
 - Dwarf frames, 197
 - Dwarf signals, 52, 84
- E.
- ELECTRIC,
 - detectors, 224
 - fouling bars, 223
 - locks, 203
 - repeaters (arm), 209, (light), 212
 - reversers, 218
 - tablet, 15, 333
 - telegraph block instruments, 8, 315
 - train staff, 15, 336
 - treadles, 220
 - Escape crank, 120
 - Estimates, 310
 - Expansion, 132
 - rods, 125
 - wires, 179

F.

FACING points,
 definition, 93
 equipment, 10, 104
 limit of distance for, 10
 Fixed signals, 17
 Fixing signals at danger, 22, 24
 Flanges of wheels, 109
 Fog signalling, 341
 Fouling bars, 223, 229
 Fouling point, 35

G.

GANTRY for signals, 39, 60
 Gate stops, 13, 186
 Gates, level crossing, 13 182
 Gauges,
 lines, 94
 loads, 88
 structure, 234
 Geographical system of numbering,
 260
 Girder for signal bridges, 60
 Girder supporting locking frame, 172
 Glasses for signals, 67
 Gradients, B.O.T. rules, 11
 Green lights, 9
 Ground frames,
 levers, 137
 locks, 197
 Ground signals, 52, 84
 Grouping of levers, 259
 Grouping of signals, 37, 48
 Guy wires, 57

H.

HAND points, 3
 Hand signals, 17
 Hand-worked gates, 182
 Hangers for lockbars, 109
 Height of signal boxes, 169
 Height of signals, 57, 232
 "Holding the road," 247, 276
 Home signals, 8, 35
 Hook locking, 142

I.

INDICATING signals, 39
 Inner distant signals, 26
 Inner home signals, 36
 Instruments,
 block, 315, 322
 lock-and-block, 325
 recording, 330
 repeating, 209
 single line, 332
 staff, 336
 tablet, 334
 Interlocking,
 apparatus, 141
 diagrams, 294
 early, 6
 electric, 203
 frames, 137
 tables, 270
 Intermediate signals, 46
 Intermediate stations, 313
 Intermediate sidings, 9, 207
 Interval,
 space, 5, 8, 312
 time, 5, 329
 Iron signal posts, 55
 Irons (driving), 142

J.

JOINTS,
 adjusting, 102
 plain, 101
 rod, 98
 screw, 101
 wire, 92
 Junction block working, 319
 Junction locking, 278
 Junctions, signalling of, 38, 240

K.

KEY, Annett's, 199
 Key releasing, 199
 Key Staff, 200

L.

LADDERS, 62
 Lamps for signals, 79

Lamps, long-burning, 83
 Landings, 70
 Lattice iron post, 55
 Lattice signal bridge, 60
 Lay-out of points, 117
 Leading-off cranks, 104
 Leading-off timbers, 170
 Legs of signal bridges, 61
 Lenses, 83
 Level crossings,
 B.O.T. rules, 13
 gates, 182
 signals, 44
 Lever arrangements, 259
 Lever colours, 301
 Lever plate (signal), 70
 Levers,
 points, 139
 signals, 139
 " Lie of points," 228
 Lights for signals, 4, 5, 9
 Limits,
 facing points, 10
 signals from points, 253
 trailing points, 10
 Line Clear rules, 317
 Lock-bars, 10, 109
 Locking, 11
 apparatus, 141
 conditional, 143
 diagrams, 294
 frames, 137
 special, 143
 tables, 270
 Locks, Annett, 199
 back, 143
 bothway, 143
 dead, 271
 electric, 203
 facing point, 104
 gate, 183, 194
 half, 272
 lever, 158
 normal, 271
 split, 272
 special, 143
 staff, 207
 tablet, 208

M.

MARSHALLING yard, 244

Master lever, 339
 McKenzie and Holland's cam and
 tappet locking, 150

N.

NAME board, 304
 Neutral point, 130
 Notices (signal), 306
 Numbering schemes, 259
 Numbers (releasing), 302

O.

OCCUPATION crossings, 13
 Outer distant signals, 26
 Outer home signals, 36
 Outside lock-bars, 109
 Outside signal arms, 64
 Over-crossings, 263
 Over-runs, 255, 317
 Over-sailing lock-bars, 112

P.

PAINTINGS (lever colours), 301
 Passenger lines,
 block working, 312
 equipment, 253
 Passing places, 256, 333
 Pitch of levers, 139
 Pitch of rollers, 99, 100
 Pitch of signal posts, 57
 Pitch of wire stumps, 91
 Plans, 227
 Platform clearances, 11
 Plungers (block instruments), 322, 325
 Plungers (facing points), 105
 Plungers (interlocking), 149
 Point indicators, 4
 Point layouts, 117
 Point levers, 137, 139
 Point rods, 97
 Points,
 catch, 10
 facing, 9, 10, 93
 hand, 3
 run-away, 10
 safety, 10
 trailing, 10
 trap, 10

Position of signals, 20, 35, 37, 46
 Posts,
 signal, 54
 signal wire, 91
 Prices, 310
 Pulley wheels, 89
 Purple lights, 53
 Push-off slots, 76

R.

RACK compensators, 126
 Rail clips, 109
 Reading of signals, 48
 Recording block instruments, 329
 Red lights, 9
 Regulators (wire), 179
 Releasing numbers, 302
 Reminders for signalmen, 350
 Repeater arms, 40
 Repeater signals, 41
 Repeaters, 209
 Reversers, 215
 Reversible working, 339
 Rods,
 connecting, 10, 95
 point, 97
 signal, 70
 stretcher, 10, 95
 tie, 10, 96
 Rollers for rods, 94
 Rotation locking, 155
 Route indicators, 41
 Rules,
 block, 312
 B.O.T., 8
 locking, 11, 272
 signalling, 8, 252, 258
 Runaway catch points, 11

S.

SAFETY points, 10, 11
 Saxby and Farmers' frames, 159
 Screw gearing for gates, 193
 "Section clear but station or junction
 blocked" rule, 321
 Section of lock bars, 109
 Section of point rods, 97
 Sections (block), 313

Sections (short block), 29, 319
 Selection of signals, 265
 Semaphores, 5, 6, 17, 63
 Setting of points, 228
 Setting lever, 328
 Shoe,
 lever, 136
 lock, 106
 Shunting signal, 47
 Shunting staff, 337
 Siding,
 controls, 197
 locks, 197
 signals, 9, 49
 Siemens' treadle, 220, 222
 Signal arms, 9, 17, 40, 42, 63
 Signal boxes, 169
 Signal diagrams, 304
 Signal notices, 306
 Signal repeaters, 10, 209
 Signal wire, 89
 Signal wire compensators, 179
 Signal wire regulators, 179
 Signalling schemes, 227
 Signals,
 advance, 46
 advanced starting, 46
 audible, 34
 backing, 52
 block, 316
 bothways, 51
 cab, 34
 calling-on, 42
 detonating, 341
 direction, 267
 distant, 8, 18
 fog, 341
 hand, 17
 home, 8, 35
 lights, 4, 5, 9, 33
 repeater, 41
 shunting, 47
 siding, 49
 starting, 46
 stop, 35
 wrong line, 49
 Single line,
 block working, 13, 331
 catch points, 12
 locking, 292
 sidings, 9, 255

- Single line— *continued*.
 signalling, 255
 staff locks, 207
 tablet locks, 207
 Slide chair, 106
 Slips,
 double, 264
 single, 239
 Slots, 73
 Slotting of signals, 26
 Snow on arms, 68
 Space interval, 5, 8, 312
 Special locking, 144
 Spectacles, 63
 Speed indication, 20
 Split lock stretchers, 105
 Split locks, 272
 Staff,
 electric, 326
 key, 200
 train, 14, 331
 Starting signal, 46
 Steel arms, 63
 Stepping of signals, 37
 Steven's tablet lock, 209
 Stevens and Sons' locking, 141
 Stock rails, 10
 Stops for gates, 13, 185
 Stretchers,
 lock, 105
 plain, 96
 Structure gauge, 234
 Swing bridges, 314
 Switches, 93
 " Switching out," 324
 Sword irons, 151
 Sykes' electric lock instrument, 203
 electric signal reverser (banjo), 218
 electric treadle contact, 221
 locking frame, 152
- T.
- TABLET,
 instruments, 334
 locks, 207
 Tappet locking, 141
- Terminal station,
 distant for, 24
 signalling scheme, 247
 Testing interlocking frame, 299
 Tie plate, 106
 Tie rods, 10, 96
 Timber for cranks, etc., 91
 Time interval system, 5, 329
 Tongues (points), 93
 Track circuits,
 arrangements, 348
 uses of, 36, 351
 Train entering section signal, 318
 Train staff, 9, 14, 331
 Train tablet, 14, 333
 Train ticket, 9, 14, 331
 Trap points, 10
 Travel of points, 97
 Treadles (electric), 220
 Tyler's block instrument, 322
 Tyler's tablet instrument, 334
 Tyler's tablet lock, 207
- V.
- VERTICAL cranks, 103
 Vertical wheels, 90
- W.
- WARNING arrangement (block work-
 ing), 321
 Wayside station (signalling), 229
 Wedge locking, 141
 Wheel base of vehicles, 10, 109
 Wheel flanges, 109
 Wheels (pulleys), 89
 White lights, 9
 Wicket gates, 193
 Winding gear for gates, 193
 Wire regulators, 179
 Wires (signal), 89
 Wood arms, 63
 Wood posts, 54
 Wrong line working (signals), 49
- Y
- YELLOW light, 33

D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY

23 MURRAY AND 27 WARREN STREETS

New York

SHORT-TITLE CATALOG

OF

Publications and Importations

OF

SCIENTIFIC AND ENGINEERING
BOOKS



This list includes the technical publications of the following
English publishers:

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & CO. CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON
CONSTABLE & COMPANY, Ltd. TECHNICAL PUBLISHING CO.
ELECTRICIAN PRINTING & PUBLISHING CO.

for whom D. Van Nostrand Company are American agents.

SHORT-TITLE CATALOG

OF THE

Publications and Importations

OF

D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY

23 MURRAY AND 27 WARREN STREETS, N. Y.

Prices marked with an asterisk () are NET.*

All bindings are in cloth unless otherwise noted.

A B C Code. (See Clausen-Thue.)

Abbott, A. V. The Electrical Transmission of Energy.....	8vo,	*\$5 00
— A Treatise on Fuel. (Science Series No. 9.)...	16mo,	0 50
— Testing Machines. (Science Series No. 74.).....	16mo,	0 50
Adam, P. Practical Bookbinding. Trans. by T. E. Maw.....	12mo,	*2 50
Adams, J. W. Sewers and Drains for Populous Districts.....	8vo,	2 50
Addyman, F. T. Practical X-Ray Work.....	8vo,	*4 00
A1 Code. (See Clausen-Thue.)		
Aikman, C. M. Manures and the Principles of Manuring.....	8vo,	2 50
Alexander, J. H. Elementary Electrical Engineering.....	12mo,	2 00
— Universal Dictionary of Weights and Measures.....	8vo,	3 50
Allan, W. Strength of Beams Under Transverse Loads. (Science Series No. 19.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Theory of Arches. (Science Series No. 11.).....	16mo,	0 50
Allen, H. Modern Power Gas Producer Practice and Applications..	12mo,	*2 50
— Gas and Oil Engines.....	8vo,	*4 50
Anderson, F. A. Boiler Feed Water.....	8vo,	*2 50
Anderson, Capt. G. L. Handbook for the Use of Electricians.....	8vo,	3 00
Anderson, J. W. Prospector's Handbook.....	12mo,	1 50
Andés, L. Vegetable Fats and Oils.....	8vo,	*4 00
— Animal Fats and Oils. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 00
— Drying Oils, Boiled Oil, and Solid and Liquid Driers.....	8vo,	*5 00
— Iron Corrosion, Anti-fouling and Anti-corrosive Paints. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 00
— Oil Colors, and Printers' Ink. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson	8vo,	*2 50
— Treatment of Paper for Special Purposes. Trans. by C. Salter..	12mo,	*2 50
Annual Reports on the Progress of Chemistry.		
Vol. I. (1904).....	8vo,	*2 00
Vol. II. (1905).....	8vo,	*2 00

Annual Reports on the Progress of Chemistry.

Vol. III. (1906).....	8vo,	*2 00
Vol. IV. (1907).....	8vo,	*2 00
Vol. V. (1908).....	8vo,	*2 00
Vol. VI. (1909).....	8vo,	*2 00
Argand, M. Imaginary Quantities. Translated from the French by A. S. Hardy. (Science Series No. 52.).....	16mo,	0 50
Armstrong, R., and Idell, F. E. Chimneys for Furnaces and Steam Boilers. (Science Series No. 1.).....	16mo,	0 50
Arnold, E. Armature Windings of Direct-Current Dynamos. Trans. by F. B. DeGress.....	8vo,	*2 00
Ashe, S. W., and Keiley, J. D. Electric Railways. Theoretically and Practically Treated. Vol. I. Rolling Stock.....	12mo,	*2 50
Ashe, S. W. Electric Railways. Vol. II. Engineering Preliminaries and Direct Current Sub-Stations.....	12mo,	*2 50
— Electricity: Experimentally and Practically Applied.....	12mo,	*2 00
Atkinson, A. A. Electrical and Magnetic Calculations.....	8vo,	*1 50
Atkinson, J. J. Friction of Air in Mines. (Science Series No. 14.).....	16mo,	0 50
Atkinson, J. J., and Williams, Jr., E. H. Gases Met with in Coal Mines. (Science Series No. 13.).....	16mo,	0 50
Atkinson, P. The Elements of Electric Lighting.....	12mo,	1 50
— The Elements of Dynamic Electricity and Magnetism.....	12mo,	2 00
— Power Transmitted by Electricity.....	12mo,	2 00
Auchincloss, W. S. Link and Valve Motions Simplified.....	8vo,	*1 50
Ayrton, H. The Electric Arc.....	8vo,	*5 00
Bacon, F. W. Treatise on the Richards Steam-Engine Indicator ..	12mo,	1 00
Bailes, G. M. Modern Mining Practice. Five Volumes	8vo, each,	3 50
Bailey, R. D. The Brewers' Analyst.....	8vo,	*5 00
Baker, A. L. Quaternions	8vo (<i>In Preparation.</i>)	
Baker, Benj. Pressure of Earthwork. (Science Series No. 56.).....	16mo,	
Baker, I. O. Levelling. (Science Series No. 91.).....	16mo,	0 50
Baker, M. N. Potable Water. (Science Series No. 61.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Sewerage and Sewage Purification. (Science Series No. 18.).....	16mo,	0 50
Baker, T. T. Telegraphic Transmission of Photographs.....	12mo,	*1 25
Bale, G. R. Modern Iron Foundry Practice. Two Volumes. 12mo.		
Vol. I. Foundry Equipment, Materials Used.....		*2 50
Vol. II. Machine Moulding and Moulding Machines.....		*1 50
Bale, M. P. Pumps and Pumping.....	12mo,	1 50
Ball, R. S. Popular Guide to the Heavens.....	8vo,	*4 50
— Natural Sources of Power. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Ball, W. V. Law Affecting Engineers.....	8vo,	*3 50
Bankson, Lloyd. Slide Valve Diagrams. (Science Series No. 108.).....	16mo,	0 50
Barba, J. Use of Steel for Constructive Purposes.....	12mo,	1 00
Barker, A. H. Graphic Methods of Engine Design.....	12mo,	*1 50
Barker, A. Textiles and Their Manufacture. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	2 00
Barnard, F. A. P. Report on Machinery and Processes of the Industrial Arts and Apparatus of the Exact Sciences at the Paris Universal Exposition, 1867.....	8vo,	5 00
Barnard, J. H. The Naval Militiaman's Guide.....	16mo, leather	1 25
Barnard, Major J. G. Rotary Motion. (Science Series No. 90.).....	16mo,	0 50

Barrus, G. H. Boiler Tests.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Engine Tests.....	8vo,	*4 00
The above two purchased together.....		*6 00
Barwise, S. The Purification of Sewage.....	12mo,	3 50
Baterden, J. R. Timber. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Beadle, C. Chapters on Papermaking. Five Volumes.....	12mo, each,	*2 00
Beaumont, R. Color in Woven Design.....	8vo,	7 50
— Finishing of Textile Fabrics.....	8vo,	*4 00
Beaumont, W. W. The Steam-Engine Indicator.....	8vo,	2 50
Bedell, F., and Pierce, C. A. Direct and Alternating Current Testing.....	8vo,	*2 00
Beech, F. Dyeing of Cotton Fabrics.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Dyeing of Woollen Fabrics.....	8vo,	*3 50
Beckwith, A. Pottery.....	8vo, paper,	0 60
Begtrup, J. The Slide Valve.....	8vo,	*2 00
Bender, C. E. Continuous Bridges. (Science Series No. 26.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Proportions of Piers used in Bridges. (Science Series No. 4.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bennett, H. G. The Manufacture of Leather.....	8vo,	*4 50
Bernthsen, A. A Text - book of Organic Chemistry. Trans. by G. M'Gowan.....	12mo,	*2 50
Berry, W. J. Differential Equations of the First Species. 12mo (<i>In Preparation</i> .).....		
Bersch, J. Manufacture of Mineral and Lake Pigments. Trans. by A. C. Wright.....	8vo,	*5 00
Bertin, L. E. Marine Boilers. Trans. by L. S. Robertson.....	8vo,	5 00
Beveridge, J. Papermaker's Pocket Book.....	12mo,	*4 00
Binns, C. F. Ceramic Technology.....	8vo,	*5 00
— Manual of Practical Potting.....	8vo,	*7 50
— The Potter's Craft.....	12mo,	*2 00
Birchmore, W. H. How to Use a Gas Analysis.....	12mo,	*1 25
Blaine, R. G. The Calculus and Its Applications.....	12mo,	*1 50
Blake, W. H. Brewers' Vade Mecum.....	8vo,	*4 00
Blake, W. P. Report upon the Precious Metals.....	8vo,	2 00
Bligh, W. G. The Practical Design of Irrigation Works.....	8vo,	*6 00
Blyth, A. W. Foods: Their Composition and Analysis.....	8vo,	7 50
— Poisons: Their Effects and Detection.....	8vo,	7 50
Böckmann, F. Celluloid.....	12mo,	*2 50
Bodmer, G. R. Hydraulic Motors and Turbines.....	12mo,	5 00
Boileau, J. T. Traverse Tables.....	8vo,	5 00
Bonney, G. E. The Electro-platers' Handbook.....	12mo,	1 20
Booth, W. H. Water Softening and Treatment.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Superheaters and Superheating and Their Control.....	8vo,	*1 50
Bottcher, A. Cranes: Their Construction, Mechanical Equipment and Working. Trans. by A. Tolhausen.....	4to,	*10 00
Bottler, M. Modern Bleaching Agents. Trans. by C. Salter.....	12mo,	*2 50
Bottone, S. R. Magnetos for Automobilists.....	12mo,	*1 00
Boulton, S. B. Preservation of Timber. (Science Series No. 82.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bourgougnon, A. Physical Problems. (Science Series No. 113.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bourry, E. Treatise on Ceramic Industries. Trans. by W. P. Rix.....	8vo,	
(<i>In Press</i> .).....		
Bow, R. H. A Treatise on Bracing.....	8vo,	1 50
Bowie, A. J., Jr. A Practical Treatise on Hydraulic Mining.....	8vo,	5 00

Bowker, W. R. Dynamo, Motor and Switchboard Circuits.....	8vo,	*2 50
Bowles, O. Tables of Common Rocks. (Science Series No. 125.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bowser, E. A. Elementary Treatise on Analytic Geometry.....	12mo,	1 75
— Elementary Treatise on the Differential and Integral Calculus.....	12mo,	2 25
— Elementary Treatise on Analytic Mechanics.....	12mo,	3 00
— Elementary Treatise on Hydro-mechanics.....	12mo,	2 50
— A Treatise on Roofs and Bridges.....	12mo,	*2 25
Boycott, G. W. M. Compressed Air Work and Diving.....	8vo,	*4 00
Bragg, E. M. Marine Engine Design.....	12mo,	*2 00
Brainard, F. R. The Sextant. (Science Series No. 101.).....	16mo,	
Brassey's Naval Annual for 1910.....	8vo,	*6 00
Brew, W. Three-Phase Transmission.....	8vo,	*2 00
Brewer, R. W. A. The Motor Car.....	12mo,	*2 00
Briggs, R., and Wolff, A. R. Steam-Heating. (Science Series No. 67.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bright, C. The Life Story of Sir Charles Tilson Bright.....	8vo,	*4 50
British Standard Sections.....	8x15	*1 00
Complete list of this series (45 parts) sent on application.		
Broughton, H. H. Electric Cranes and Hoists.....	(In Press.)	
Brown, G. Healthy Foundations. (Science Series No. 80.).....	16mo,	0 50
Brown, H. Irrigation.....	8vo,	*5 00
Brown, Wm. N. The Art of Enamelling on Metal.....	12mo,	*1 00
— Handbook on Japanning and Enamelling.....	12mo,	*1 50
— House Decorating and Painting.....	12mo,	*1 50
— History of Decorative Art.....	12mo,	*1 25
— Dipping, Burnishing, Lacquering and Bronzing Brass Ware.....	12mo,	*1 00
— Workshop Wrinkles.....	8vo,	*1 00
Browne, R. E. Water Meters. (Science Series No. 81.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bruce, E. M. Pure Food Tests.....	12mo,	*1 25
Bruhns, Dr. New Manual of Logarithms.....	8vo, half morocco,	2 50
Brunner, R. Manufacture of Lubricants, Shoe Polishes and Leather Dressings. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*3 00
Buel, R. H. Safety Valves. (Science Series No. 21.).....	16mo,	0 50
Bulman, H. F., and Redmayne, R. S. A. Colliery Working and Management.....	8vo,	6 00
Burgh, N. P. Modern Marine Engineering.....	4to, half morocco,	10 00
Burt, W. A. Key to the Solar Compass.....	16mo, leather,	2 50
Burton, F. G. Engineering Estimates and Cost Accounts.....	12mo,	*1 50
Buskett, E. W. Fire Assaying.....	12mo,	*1 25
Cain, W. Brief Course in the Calculus.....	12mo,	*1 75
— Elastic Arches. (Science Series No. 48.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Maximum Stresses. (Science Series No. 38.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Practical Designing Retaining of Walls. (Science Series No. 3.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Theory of Steel-concrete Arches and of Vaulted Structures. (Science Series No. 42.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Theory of Vauissior Arches. (Science Series No. 12.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Symbolic Algebra. (Science Series No. 73.).....	16mo,	0 50
Campin, F. The Construction of Iron Roofs.....	8vo,	2 00
Carpenter, F. D. Geographical Surveying. (Science Series No. 37.).....	16mo,	
Carpenter, R. C., and Diederichs, H. Internal Combustion Engines.....	8vo,	*5 00

Carter, E. T. Motive Power and Gearing for Electrical Machinery	8vo,	*5 00
Carter, H. A. Ramie (Rhea), China Grass	12mo,	*2 00
Carter, H. R. Modern Flax, Hemp, and Jute Spinning	8vo,	*3 00
Cathcart, W. L. Machine Design. Part I. Fastenings	8vo,	*3 00
Cathcart, W. L., and Chaffee, J. I. Elements of Graphic Statics	8vo,	*3 00
Caven, R. M., and Lander, G. D. Systematic Inorganic Chemistry	12mo,	*2 00
Chambers' Mathematical Tables	8vo,	1 75
Charnock, G. F. Workshop Practice. (Westminster Series.)	8vo (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Charpentier, P. Timber	8vo,	*6 00
Chatley, H. Principles and Designs of Aeroplanes. (Science Series.)		
No. 126.)	16mo,	0 50
— How to Use Water Power	12mo,	*1 00
Child, C. T. The How and Why of Electricity	12mo,	1 00
Christie, W. W. Boiler-waters, Scale, Corrosion, Foaming	8vo,	*3 00
— Chimney Design and Theory	8vo,	*3 00
— Furnace Draft. (Science Series No. 123.)	16mo,	0 50
Church's Laboratory Guide. Rewritten by Edward Kinch	8vo,	*2 50
Clapperton, G. Practical Papermaking	8vo,	2 50
Clark, C. H. Marine Gas Engines	(<i>In Press.</i>)	
Clark, D. K. Rules, Tables and Data for Mechanical Engineers	8vo,	5 00
— Fuel: Its Combustion and Economy	12mo,	1 50
— The Mechanical Engineer's Pocketbook	16mo,	2 00
— Tramways: Their Construction and Working	8vo,	7 50
Clark, J. M. New System of Laying Out Railway Turnouts	12mo,	1 00
Clausen-Thue, W. A B C Telegraphic Code. Fourth Edition	12mo,	*5 00
Fifth Edition	8vo,	*7 00
— The A 1 Telegraphic Code	8vo,	*7 50
Cleemann, T. M. The Railroad Engineer's Practice	12mo,	*1 50
Clerk, D., and Idell, F. E. Theory of the Gas Engine. (Science Series		
No. 62.)	16mo,	0 50
Clevenger, S. R. Treatise on the Method of Government Surveying.		
16mo, morocco		2 50
Clouth, F. Rubber, Gutta-Percha, and Balata	8vo,	*5 00
Coffin, J. H. C. Navigation and Nautical Astronomy	12mo,	*3 50
Colburn, Z., and Thurston, R. H. Steam Boiler Explosions. (Science		
Series No. 2.)	16mo,	0 50
Cole, R. S. Treatise on Photographic Optics	12mo,	2 50
Coles-Finch, W. Water, Its Origin and Use	8vo,	*5 00
Collins, J. E. Useful Alloys and Memoranda for Goldsmiths, Jewelers.		
16mo		0 50
Constantine, E. Marine Engineers, Their Qualifications and Duties. 8vo,		*2 00
Coombs, H. A. Gear Teeth. (Science Series No. 120.)	16mo,	0 50
Cooper, W. R. Primary Batteries	8vo,	*4 00
— "The Electrician" Primers	8vo,	*5 00
Copperthwaite, W. C. Tunnel Shields	4to,	*9 00
Corey, H. T. Water Supply Engineering	8vo (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Corfield, W. H. Dwelling Houses. (Science Series No. 50.)	16mo,	0 50
— Water and Water-Supply. (Science Series No. 17.)	16mo,	0 50
Cornwall, H. B. Manual of Blow-pipe Analysis	8vo,	*2 50
Courtney, C. F. Masonry Dams	8vo,	3 50
Cowell, W. B. Pure Air, Ozone, and Water	12mo,	*2 00

Craig, T. Motion of a Solid in a Fuel. (Science Series No. 49.)	16mo,	0 50
— Wave and Vortex Motion. (Science Series No. 43.)	16mo,	0 50
Cramp, W. Continuous Current Machine Design.	8vo,	*2 50
Crocker, F. B. Electric Lighting. Two Volumes.	8vo.	
Vol. I. The Generating Plant.		3 00
Vol. II. Distributing Systems and Lamps.		3 00
Crocker, F. B., and Arendt, M. Electric Motors.	8vo,	*2 50
Crocker, F. B., and Wheeler, S. S. The Management of Electrical Machinery.	12mo,	*1 00
Cross, C. F., Bevan, E. J., and Sindall, R. W. Wood Pulp and Its Applications. (Westminster Series.)	8vo (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Crosskey, L. R. Elementary Perspective.	8vo,	1 00
Crosskey, L. R., and Thaw, J. Advanced Perspective.	8vo,	1 50
Culley, J. L. Theory of Arches. (Science Series No. 87.)	16mo,	0 50
Davenport, C. The Book. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Davies, E. H. Machinery for Metalliferous Mines.	8vo,	8 00
Davies, D. C. Metalliferous Minerals and Mining.	8vo,	5 00
— Earthy Minerals and Mining.	8vo,	5 00
Davies, F. H. Electric Power and Traction.	8vo,	*2 00
Dawson, P. Electric Traction on Railways.	8vo,	*0 00
Day, C. The Indicator and Its Diagrams.	12mo,	*2 00
Deerr, N. Sugar and the Sugar Cane.	8vo,	*3 00
Deite, C. Manual of Soapmaking. Trans. by S. T. King.	4to,	*5 00
De la Coux, H. The Industrial Uses of Water. Trans. by A. Morris.	8vo,	*4 50
Del Mar, W. A. Electric Power Conductors.	8vo,	*2 00
Denny, G. A. Deep-level Mines of the Rand.	4to,	*10 00
— Diamond Drilling for Gold.		*5 00
De Roos, J. D. C. Linkages. (Science Series No. 47.)	16mo,	0 50
De Varona, A. Sewer Gases. (Science Series No. 55.)	16mo,	0 50
Derr, W. L. Block Signal Operation	Oblong 12mo,	*1 50
Desaint, A. Three Hundred Shades and How to Mix Them.	8vo,	*10 00
Dibdin, W. J. Public Lighting by Gas and Electricity.	8vo,	*8 00
— Purification of Sewage and Water	8vo,	6 50
Dieterich, K. Analysis of Resins, Balsams, and Gum Resins.	8vo,	*3 00
Dinger, Lieut. H. C. Care and Operation of Naval Machinery.	12mo,	*2 00
Dixon, D. B. Machinist's and Steam Engineer's Practical Calculator.	16mo, morocco,	1 25
Doble, W. A. Power Plant Construction on the Pacific Coast (<i>In Press.</i>)		
Dodd, G. Dictionary of Manufactures, Mining, Machinery, and the Industrial Arts.	12mo,	1 50
Dorr, B. F. The Surveyor's Guide and Pocket Table-book.	16mo, morocco,	2 00
Down, P. B. Handy Copper Wire Table.	16mo,	*1 00
Draper, C. H. Elementary Text-book of Light, Heat and Sound.	12mo,	1 00
— Heat and the Principles of Thermo-dynamics.	12mo,	1 50
Duckwall, E. W. Canning and Preserving of Food Products.	8vo,	*5 00
Dumesny, P., and Noyer, J. Wood Products, Distillates, and Extracts.	8vo,	*4 50
Duncan, W. G., and Penman, D. The Electrical Equipment of Collieries.	8vo,	*4 00

Duthie, A. L. Decorative Glass Processes. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Dyson, S. S. Practical Testing of Raw Materials	8vo,	*5 00
Eccles, R. G., and Duckwall, E. W. Food Preservatives	8vo,	1 00
Paper		0 50
Eddy, H. T. Researches in Graphical Statics	8vo,	1 50
— Maximum Stresses under Concentrated Loads	8vo,	1 50
Edgcumbe, K. Industrial Electrical Measuring Instruments	8vo,	*2 50
Eissler, M. The Metallurgy of Gold	8vo,	7 50
— The Hydrometallurgy of Copper	8vo,	*4 50
— The Metallurgy of Silver	8vo,	4 00
— The Metallurgy of Argentiferous Lead	8vo,	5 00
— Cyanide Process for the Extraction of Gold	8vo,	3 00
— A Handbook on Modern Explosives	8vo,	5 00
Ekin, T. C. Water Pipe and Sewage Discharge Diagrams	folio,	*3 00
Eliot, C. W., and Storer, F. H. Compendious Manual of Qualitative Chemical Analysis	12mo,	*1 25
Elliot, Major G. H. European Light-house Systems	8vo,	5 00
Ennis, Wm. D. Linseed Oil and Other Seed Oils	8vo,	*4 00
— Applied Thermodynamics	8vo	*4 50
Erfurt, J. Dyeing of Paper Pulp. Trans. by J. Hubner	8vo,	*7 50
Erskine-Murray, J. A Handbook of Wireless Telegraphy	8vo,	*3 50
Evans, C. A. Macadamized Roads	(In Press.)	
Ewing, A. J. Magnetic Induction in Iron	8vo,	*4 00
Fairie, J. Notes on Lead Ores	12mo,	*1 00
— Notes on Pottery Clays	12mo,	*1 50
Fairley, W., and Andre, Geo. J. Ventilation of Coal Mines. (Science Series No. 58.)	16mo,	0 50
Fairweather, W. C. Foreign and Colonial Patent Laws	8vo,	*3 00
Fanning, J. T. Hydraulic and Water-supply Engineering	8vo,	*5 00
Fauth, P. The Moon in Modern Astronomy. Trans. by J. McCabe	8vo,	*2 00
Fay, I. W. The Coal-tar Colors	8vo (In Press.)	
Fernbach, R. L. Glue and Gelatine	8vo,	*3 00
Fischer, E. The Preparation of Organic Compounds. Trans. by R. V. Stanford	12mo,	*1 25
Fish, J. C. L. Lettering of Working Drawings	Oblong 8vo,	1 00
Fisher, H. K. C., and Darby, W. C. Submarine Cable Testing	8vo,	*3 50
Fiske, Lieut. B. A. Electricity in Theory and Practice	8vo,	2 50
Fleischmann, W. The Book of the Dairy. Trans. by C. M. Aikman	8vo,	4 00
Fleming, J. A. The Alternate-current Transformer. Two Volumes	8vo.	
Vol. I. The Induction of Electric Currents		*5 00
Vol. II. The Utilization of Induced Currents		*5 00
— Centenary of the Electrical Current	8vo,	*0 50
— Electric Lamps and Electric Lighting	8vo,	*3 00
— Electrical Laboratory Notes and Forms	4to,	*5 00
— A Handbook for the Electrical Laboratory and Testing Room. Two Volumes	8vo, each,	*5 00
Fluery, H. The Calculus Without Limits or Infinitesimals. Trans. by C. O. Mailloux	(In Press.)	

Flynn, P. J. Flow of Water. (Science Series No. 84.)	16mo,	0 50
— Hydraulic Tables. (Science Series No. 66.)	16mo,	0 50
Foley, N. British and American Customary and Metric Measures. folio,		*3 00
Foster, H. A. Electrical Engineers' Pocket-book. (Sixth Edition.)	12mo, leather,	5 00
Foster, Gen. J. G. Submarine Blasting in Boston (Mass.) Harbor.	4to,	3 50
Fowle, F. F. Overhead Transmission Line Crossings.	12mo,	*1 50
— The Solution of Alternating Current Problems.	8vo (In Press.)	
Fox, W. G. Transition Curves. (Science Series No. 110.)	16mo,	0 50
Fox, W., and Thomas, C. W. Practical Course in Mechanical Drawing.	12mo,	1 25
Foye, J. C. Chemical Problems. (Science Series No. 69.)	16mo,	0 50
— Handbook of Mineralogy. (Science Series No. 86.)	16mo,	0 50
Francis, J. B. Lowell Hydraulic Experiments.	4to,	15 00
Frye, A. I. Civil Engineers' Pocket-book.	(In Press.)	
Fuller, G. W. Investigations into the Purification of the Ohio River.	4to,	*10 00
Furnell, J. Paints, Colors, Oils, and Varnishes.	8vo,	*1 00
Gant, L. W. Elements of Electric Traction.	8vo,	*2 50
Garcke, E., and Fells, J. M. Factory Accounts.	8vo,	3 00
Garforth, W. E. Rules for Recovering Coal Mines after Explosions and Fires.	12mo, leather,	1 50
Gaudard, J. Foundations. (Science Series No. 34.)	16mo,	0 50
Gear, H. B., and Williams, P. F. Electric Central Station Distributing Systems.	8vo (In Preparation.)	
Geerligs, H. C. P. Cane Sugar and Its Manufacture.	8vo,	*5 00
Geikie, J. Structural and Field Geology.	8vo,	*4 00
Gerber, N. Analysis of Milk, Condensed Milk, and Infants' Milk-Food.	8vo,	1 25
Gerhard, W. P. Sanitation, Watersupply and Sewage Disposal of Country Houses.	12mo,	*2 00
— Gas Lighting. (Science Series No. 111.)	16mo,	0 50
— Household Wastes. (Science Series No. 97.)	16mo,	0 50
— House Drainage. (Science Series No. 63.)	16mo,	0 50
— Sanitary Drainage of Buildings. (Science Series No. 93.)	16mo,	0 50
Gerhardi, C. W. H. Electricity Meters.	8vo,	*4 00
Geschwind, L. Manufacture of Alum and Sulphates. Trans. by C. Salter.	8vo,	*5 00
Gibbs, W. E. Lighting by Acetylene.	12mo,	*1 50
— Physics of Solids and Fluids. (Carnegie Technical School's Text-books.)		*1 50
Gibson, A. H. Hydraulics and Its Application.	8vo,	*5 00
— Water Hammer in Hydraulic Pipe Lines.	12mo,	*2 00
Gilbreth, F. B. Motion Study.	12mo,	*2 00
Gillmore, Gen. Q. A. Limes, Hydraulic Cements and Mortars.	8vo,	4 00
— Roads, Streets, and Pavements.	12mo,	2 00
Golding, H. A. The Theta-Phi Diagram.	12mo,	*1 25
Goldschmidt, R. Alternating Current Commutator Motor.	8vo,	*3 00
Goodchild, W. Precious Stones. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Goodeve, T. M. Textbook on the Steam-engine.	12mo,	2 00
Gore, G. Electrolytic Separation of Metals.	8vo,	*3 50
Gould, E. S. Arithmetic of the Steam-engine.	12mo,	1 00

10 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Gould, E. S. Calculus. (Science Series No. 112.)	16mo,	0 50
— High Masonry Dams. (Science Series No. 22.)	16mo,	0 50
— Practical Hydrostatics and Hydrostatic Formulas. (Science Series No. 117.)	16mo,	0 50
Grant, J. Brewing and Distilling. (Westminster Series.)	8vo (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Gray, J. Electrical Influence Machines	12mo,	2 00
Greenwood, E. Classified Guide to Technical and Commercial Books.	8vo,	*3 00
Gregorius, R. Mineral Waxes. Trans. by C. Salter.	12mo,	*3 00
Griffiths, A. B. A Treatise on Manures.	12mo,	3 00
— Dental Metallurgy.	8vo,	*3 50
Gross, E. Hops.	8vo,	*4 50
Grossman, J. Ammonia and Its Compounds.	12mo,	*1 25
Groth, L. A. Welding and Cutting Metals by Gases or Electricity	8vo,	*3 00
Grover, F. Modern Gas and Oil Engines.	8vo,	*2 00
Gruner, A. Power-loom Weaving.	8vo,	*3 00
Guldner, Hugo. Internal Combustion Engines. Trans. by H. Diederichs.	4to,	*10 00
Gunther, C. O. Integration.	12mo,	*1 25
Gurden, R. L. Traverse Tables	folio, half morocco,	7 50
Guy, A. E. Experiments on the Flexure of Beams.	8vo,	*1 25
Haeder, H. Handbook on the Steam-engine. Trans. by H. H. P. Powles.	12mo,	3 00
Hainbach, R. Pottery Decoration. Trans. by C. Slater.	12mo,	*3 00
Hale, W. J. Calculations of General Chemistry.	12mo,	*1 00
Hall, C. H. Chemistry of Paints and Paint Vehicles.	12mo,	*2 00
Hall, R. H. Governors and Governing Mechanism.	12mo,	*2 00
Hall, W. S. Elements of the Differential and Integral Calculus.	8vo,	*2 25
— Descriptive Geometry	8vo volume and a 4to atlas,	*3 50
Haller, G. F., and Cunningham, E. T. The Tesla Coil.	12mo,	*1 25
Halsey, F. A. Slide Valve Gears.	12mo,	1 50
— The Use of the Slide Rule. (Science Series No. 114.)	16mo,	0 50
— Worm and Spiral Gearing. (Science Series No. 116.)	16mo,	0 50
Hamilton, W. G. Useful Information for Railway Men.	16mo,	1 00
Hammer, W. J. Radium and Other Radio-active Substances.	8vo,	*1 00
Hancock, H. Textbook of Mechanics and Hydrostatics.	8vo,	1 50
Hardy, E. Elementary Principles of Graphic Statics.	12mo,	*1 50
Harper, W. B. Utilization of Wood Waste by Distillation.	4to,	*3 00
Harrison, W. B. The Mechanics Tool-book.	12mo,	1 50
Hart, J. W. External Plumbing Work.	8vo,	*3 00
— Hints to Plumbers on Joint Wiping.	8vo,	*3 00
— Principles of Hot Water Supply.	8vo,	*3 00
— Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage.	8vo,	*3 00
Haskins, C. H. The Galvanometer and Its Uses.	16mo,	1 50
Hatt, J. A. H. The Colorist.	square 12mo,	*1 50
Hausbrand, E. Drying by Means of Air and Steam. Trans. by A. C. Wright.	12mo,	*2 00
— Evaporating, Condensing and Cooling Apparatus. Trans. by A. C. Wright.	8vo,	*5 00
Hausner, A. Manufacture of Preserved Foods and Sweetmeats. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson.	8vo,	*3 00

Hawke, W. H. Premier Cipher Telegraphic Code.....	4to,	*5 00
— 100,000 Words Supplement to the Premier Code.....	4to,	*5 00
Hawkesworth, J. Graphical Handbook for Reinforced Concrete Design.....	4to,	*2 50
Hay, A. Alternating Currents.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Principles of Alternate-current Working.....	12mo,	2 00
— Electrical Distributing Networks and Distributing Lines.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Continuous Current Engineering.....	8vo,	*2 50
Heap, Major D. P. Electrical Appliances.....	8vo,	2 00
Heaviside, O. Electromagnetic Theory. Two Volumes.....	8vo, each,	*5 00
Heck, R. C. H. Steam-Engine and Other Steam Motors. Two Volumes.....		
Vol. I. Thermodynamics and the Mechanics.....	8vo,	*3 50
Vol. II. Form, Construction, and Working.....	8vo,	*5 00
— Abridged edition of above volumes (Elementary).....	8vo (<i>In Preparation.</i>)	
— Notes on Elementary Kinematics.....	8vo, boards,	*1 00
— Graphics of Machine Forces.....	8vo, boards,	*1 00
Hedges, K. Modern Lightning Conductors.....	8vo,	3 00
Heermann, P. Dyers' Materials. Trans. by A. C. Wright.....	12mo,	*2 50
Hellot, Macquer and D'Apligny. Art of Dyeing Wool, Silk and Cotton.....	8vo,	*2 00
Henrici, O. Skeleton Structures.....	8vo,	1 50
Hermann, F. Painting on Glass and Porcelain.....	8vo,	*3 50
Herrmann, G. The Graphical Statics of Mechanism. Trans. by A. P. Smith.....	12mo,	2 00
Herzfeld, J. Testing of Yarns and Textile Fabrics.....	8vo,	*3 50
Hildebrandt, A. Airships, Past and Present.....	8vo,	*3 50
Hildenbrand, B. W. Cable-Making. (Science Series No. 32.).....	16mo,	0 50
Hill, J. W. The Purification of Public Water Supplies. New Edition. (<i>In Press.</i>)		
— Interpretation of Water Analysis.....	(<i>In Press.</i>)	
Hiroi, I. Plate Girder Construction. (Science Series No. 95.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Statically-Indeterminate Stresses.....	12mo,	*2 00
Hirshfeld, C. F. Engineering Thermodynamics. (Science Series No. 45.)	16mo,	0 50
Hobart, H. M. Heavy Electrical Engineering.....	8vo,	*4 50
— Electricity.....	8vo,	*2 00
— Electric Trains.....	8vo,	*2 50
Hobbs, W. R. P. The Arithmetic of Electrical Measurements.....	12mo,	0 50
Hoff, J. N. Paint and Varnish Facts and Formulas.....	12mo,	*1 50
Hoff, Com. W. B. The Avoidance of Collisions at Sea.....	16mo, morocco,	0 75
Hole, W. The Distribution of Gas.....	8vo,	*7 50
Holley, A. L. Railway Practice.....	folio,	12 00
Holmes, A. B. The Electric Light Popularly Explained.....	12mo, paper,	0 50
Hopkins, N. M. Experimental Electrochemistry.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Model Engines and Small Boats.....	12mo,	1 25
Hopkinson, J. Shoolbred, J. N., and Day, R. E. Dynamic Electricity. (Science Series No. 71.).....	16mo,	0 50
Horner, J. Engineers' Turning.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Metal Turning.....	12mo,	1 50
— Toothed Gearing.....	12mo,	2 25
Houghton, C. E. The Elements of Mechanics of Materials.....	12mo,	*2 00
Houllievique, L. The Evolution of the Sciences.....	8vo,	*2 00

12 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Howe, G. Mathematics for the Practical Man.....	12mo,	*1 25
Howorth, J. Repairing and Riveting Glass, China and Earthenware.	8vo, paper,	*0 50
Hubbard, E. The Utilization of Wood-waste.....	8vo,	*2 50
Humber, W. Calculation of Strains in Girders.....	12mo,	2 50
Humphreys, A. C. The Business Features of Engineering Practice. .	8vo,	*1 25
Hurst, G. H. Handbook of the Theory of Color.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Dictionary of Chemicals and Raw Products.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Lubricating Oils, Fats and Greases.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Soaps.....	8vo,	*5 00
— Textile Soaps and Oils.....	8vo,	*2 50
Hurst, H. E., and Lattey, R. T. Text-book of Physics.....	8vo,	*3 00
Hutchinson R. W., Jr. Long Distance Electric Power Transmission. 12mo,		*3 00
Hutchinson, R. W., Jr., and Ihlseng, M. C. Electricity in Mining. 12mo,		(In Press)
Hutchinson, W. B. Patents and How to Make Money Out of Them.	12mo,	1 25
Hutton, W. S. Steam-boiler Construction.....	8vo,	6 00
— Practical Engineer's Handbook.....	8vo,	7 00
— The Works' Manager's Handbook.....	8vo,	6 00
Hyde, E. W. Skew Arches. (Science Series No. 15.).....	16mo,	0 50
Induction Coils. (Science Series No. 53.).....	16mo,	0 50
Ingle, H. Manual of Agricultural Chemistry.....	8vo,	*3 00
Innes, C. H. Problems in Machine Design.....	12mo,	*2 00
— Air Compressors and Blowing Engines.....	12mo,	*2 00
— Centrifugal Pumps.....	12mo,	*2 00
— The Fan.....	12mo,	*2 00
Isherwood, B. F. Engineering Precedents for Steam Machinery....	8vo,	2 50
Ivatts, E. B. Railway Management at Stations.....	8vo,	*2 50
Jacob, A., and Gould, E. S. On the Designing and Construction of Storage Reservoirs. (Science Series No. 6.).....	16mo,	0 50
Jamieson, A. Text Book on Steam and Steam Engines.....	8vo,	3 00
— Elementary Manual on Steam and the Steam Engine.....	12mo,	1 50
Jannettaz, E. Guide to the Determination of Rocks. Trans. by G. W. Plympton.....	12mo,	1 50
Jehl, F. Manufacture of Carbons.....	8vo,	*4 00
Jennings, A. S. Commercial Paints and Painting. (Westminster Series.) 8vo (In Press.)		
Jennison, F. H. The Manufacture of Lake Pigments.....	8vo,	*3 00
Jepson, G. Cams and the Principles of their Construction.....	8vo,	*1 50
— Mechanical Drawing.....	8vo (In Preparation.)	
Jockin, W. Arithmetic of the Gold and Silversmith.....	12mo,	*1 00
Johnson, G. L. Photographic Optics and Color Photography.....	8vo,	*3 00
Johnson, W. H. The Cultivation and Preparation of Para Rubber... 8vo,		*3 00
Johnson, W. McA. The Metallurgy of Nickel..... (In Preparation.)		
Johnston, J. F. W., and Cameron, C. Elements of Agricultural Chemistry and Geology.....	12mo,	2 60
Joly, J. Radioactivity and Geology.....	12mo,	*3 00
Jones, H. C. Electrical Nature of Matter and Radioactivity.....	12mo,	*2 00

Jones, M. W. Testing Raw Materials Used in Paint.....	12mo,	*2 00
Jones, L., and Scard, F. I. Manufacture of Cane Sugar.....	8vo,	*5 00
Joy, G. A., and Thiess, J. B. Toll Telephone Practice.....	(In Press.)	
Joynson, F. H. Designing and Construction of Machine Gearing....	8vo,	2 00
Jüptner, H. F. V. Siderology: The Science of Iron.....	8vo,	*5 00
Kansas City Bridge.....	4to,	6 00
Kapp, G. Alternate Current Machinery. (Science Series No. 96.)..	16mo,	0 50
—— Dynamos, Motors, Alternators and Rotary Converters. Trans. by H. H. Simmons.....	8vo,	4 00
—— Electric Transmission of Energy.....	12mo,	3 50
Keim, A. W. Prevention of Dampness in Buildings.....	8vo,	*2 00
Keller, S. S. Mathematics for Engineering Students. 12mo, half leather.		
Algebra and Trigonometry, with a Chapter on Vectors.....		*1 75
Special Algebra Edition.....		*1 00
Plane and Solid Geometry.....		*1 25
Analytical Geometry and Calculus.....		*2 00
Kelsey, W. R. Continuous-current Dynamos and Motors.....	8vo,	*2 50
Kemble, W. T., and Underhill, C. R. The Periodic Law and the Hydrogen Spectrum.....	8vo, paper,	*0 50
Kemp, J. F. Handbook of Rocks.....	8vo,	*1 50
Kendall, E. Twelve Figure Cipher Code.....	4to,	*15 00
Kennedy, A. B. W., and Thurston, R. H. Kinematics of Machinery. (Science Series No. 54.).....	16mo,	0 50
Kennedy, A. B. W., Unwin, W. C., and Idell, F. E. Compressed Air. (Science Series No. 106.).....	16mo,	0 50
Kennedy, R. Modern Engines and Power Generators. Six Volumes. 4to,		15 00
Single Volumes.....	each,	3 00
—— Electrical Installations. Five Volumes.....	4to,	15 00
Single Volumes.....	each,	3 50
—— Flying Machines; Practice and Design.....	12mo,	*2 00
Kennelly, A. E. Electro-dynamic Machinery.....	8vo,	1 50
Kent, W. Strength of Materials. (Science Series No. 41.).....	16mo,	0 50
Kershaw, J. B. C. Fuel, Water and Gas Analysis.....	8vo,	*2 50
—— Electrometallurgy. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Kershaw, J. B. C. The Electric Furnace in Iron and Steel Production. 12mo,		*1 50
Kingdon, J. A. Applied Magnetism.....	8vo,	*3 00
Kinzbrenner, C. Alternate Current Windings.....	8vo,	*1 50
—— Continuous Current Armatures.....	8vo,	*1 50
—— Testing of Alternating Current Machines.....	8vo,	*2 00
Kirkaldy, W. G. David Kirkaldy's System of Mechanical Testing....	4to,	10 00
Kirkbride, J. Engraving for Illustration.....	8vo,	*1 50
Kirkwood, J. P. Filtration of River Waters.....	4to,	7 50
Klein, J. F. Design of a High-speed Steam-engine.....	8vo,	*5 00
—— Physical Significance of Entropy.....	8vo,	*1 50
Kleinhans, F. B. Boiler Construction.....	8vo,	3 00
Knight, Lieut.-Com. A. M. Modern Seamanship.....	8vo,	*6 00
Half morocco.....		*7 50
Knox, W. F. Logarithm Tables.....	(In Preparation.)	
Knott, C. G., and Mackay, J. S. Practical Mathematics.....	8vo,	2 00

14 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Koester, F. Steam-Electric Power Plants.....	4to,	*5 00
— Hydroelectric Developments and Engineering.....	4to,	*5 00
Koller, T. The Utilization of Waste Products.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Cosmetics.....	8vo,	*2 50
Krauch, C. Testing of Chemical Reagents. Trans. by J. A. Williamson and L. W. Dupre.....	8vo,	*3 00
Lambert, T. Lead and its Compounds.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Bone Products and Manures.....	8vo,	*3 00
Lamborn, L. L. Cottonseed Products.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Modern Soaps, Candles, and Glycerin.....	8vo,	*7 50
Lamprecht, R. Recovery Work After Pit Fires. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 00
Lanchester, F. W. Aerial Flight. Two Volumes. 8vo.		
Vol. I. Aerodynamics.....		*6 00
Vol. II. Aerodionetics.....		*6 00
Larner, E. T. Principles of Alternating Currents.....	12mo,	*1 25
Larrabee, C. S. Cipher and Secret Letter and Telegraphic Code.....	16mo,	0 60
La Rue, B. F. Swing Bridges. (Science Series No. 107.).....	16mo,	0 50
Lassar-Cohn, Dr. Modern Scientific Chemistry. Trans. by M. M. Patti- son Muir.....	12mo,	*2 00
Latimer, L. H., Field, C. J., and Howell, J. W. Incandescent Electric Lighting. (Science Series No. 57.).....	16mo,	0 50
Latta, M. N. Handbook of American Gas-Engineering Practice.....	8vo,	*4 50
— American Producer Gas Practice.....	4to,	*6 00
Leask, A. R. Breakdowns at Sea.....	12mo,	2 00
— Triple and Quadruple Expansion Engines.....	12mo,	2 00
— Refrigerating Machinery.....	12mo,	2 00
Lecky, S. T. S. "Wrinkles" in Practical Navigation.....	8vo,	*8 00
Le Doux, M. Ice-Making Machines. (Science Series No. 46.).....	16mo,	0 50
Leeds, C. C. Mechanical Drawing for Trade Schools.....	oblong 4to,	
High School Edition.....		*1 25
Machinery Trades Edition.....		*2 00
Lefèvre, L. Architectural Pottery. Trans. by H. K. Bird and W. M. Binns.....	4to,	*7 50
Lehner, S. Ink Manufacture. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson.....	8vo,	*2 50
Lemstrom, S. Electricity in Agriculture and Horticulture.....	8vo,	*1 50
Le Van, W. B. Steam-Engine Indicator. (Science Series No. 78.).....	16mo,	0 50
Lewes, V. B. Liquid and Gaseous Fuels. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Lieber, B. F. Lieber's Standard Telegraphic Code.....	8vo,	*10 00
— Code. German Edition.....	8vo,	*10 00
— — Spanish Edition.....	8vo,	*10 00
— — French Edition.....	8vo,	*10 00
— Terminal Index.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Lieber's Appendix.....	folio,	*15 00
— — Handy Tables.....	4to,	*2 50
— Bankers and Stockbrokers' Code and Merchants and Shippers' Blank Tables.....	8vo,	*15 00
— 100,000,000 Combination Code.....	8vo,	*15 00
— Engineering Code.....	8vo,	*10 00
Livermore, V. P., and Williams, J. How to Become a Competent Motor- man.....	12mo,	*1 00

Livingstone, R. Design and Construction of Commutators.....	8vo,	*2 25
Lobben, P. Machinists' and Draftsmen's Handbook.....	8vo,	2 50
Locke, A. G. and C. G. Manufacture of Sulphuric Acid.....	8vo,	10 00
Lockwood, T. D. Electricity, Magnetism, and Electro-telegraph.	8vo,	2 50
— Electrical Measurement and the Galvanometer.....	12mo,	1 50
Lodge, O. J. Elementary Mechanics.....	12mo,	1 50
— Signalling Across Space without Wires.....	8vo,	*2 00
Lord, R. T. Decorative and Fancy Fabrics.....	8vo,	*3 50
Loring, A. E. A Handbook of the Electromagnetic Telegraph.....	16mo,	0 50
— Handbook. (Science Series No. 39.).....	16mo,	0 50
Lowenstein, L. C., and Crissey, C. P. Centrifugal Pumps.....	(In Press.)	
Lucke, C. E. Gas Engine Design.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Power Plants: their Design, Efficiency, and Power Costs.	2 vols.	
	(In Preparation.)	
— Power Plant Papers. Form I. The Steam Power Plant.....	paper,	*1 50
Lunge, G. Coal-tar and Ammonia. Two Volumes.....	8vo,	*15 00
— Manufacture of Sulphuric Acid and Alkali. Three Volumes.....	8vo,	
Vol. I. Sulphuric Acid. In two parts.....		*15 00
Vol. II. Salt Cake, Hydrochloric Acid and Leblanc Soda. In two parts.....		*15 00
Vol. III. Ammonia Soda.....		*15 00
— Technical Chemists' Handbook.....	12mo, leather,	*3 50
— Technical Methods of Chemical Analysis. Trans. by C. A. Keane.		
in collaboration with the corps of specialists.		
Vol. I. In two parts.....	8vo,	*15 00
Vols. II and III.....	(In Preparation.)	
Lupton, A., Parr, G. D. A., and Perkin, H. Electricity as Applied to Mining.....	8vo,	*4 50
Luquer, L. M. Minerals in Rock Sections.....	8vo,	*1 50
Macewen, H. A. Food Inspection.....	8vo,	*2 50
Mackenzie, N. F. Notes on Irrigation Works.....	8vo,	*2 50
Mackie, J. How to Make a Woolen Mill Pay.....	8vo,	*2 00
Mackrow, C. Naval Architect's and Shipbuilder's Pocket-book.	16mo, leather,	5 00
Maguire, Capt. E. The Attack and Defense of Coast Fortifications.....	8vo,	2 50
Maguire, Wm. R. Domestic Sanitary Drainage and Plumbing.....	8vo,	4 00
Mallet, A. Compound Engines. Trans. by R. R. Buel. (Science Series No. 10.).....	16mo,	
Mansfield, A. N. Electro-magnets. (Science Series No. 64.).....	16mo,	0 50
Marks, E. C. R. Construction of Cranes and Lifting Machinery.....	12mo,	*1 50
— Construction and Working of Pumps.....	12mo,	*1 50
— Manufacture of Iron and Steel Tubes.....	12mo,	*2 00
— Mechanical Engineering Materials.....	12mo,	*1 00
Marks, G. C. Hydraulic Power Engineering.....	8vo,	3 50
— Inventions, Patents and Designs.....	12mo,	*1 00
Markham, E. R. The American Steel Worker.....	12mo,	2 50
Marlow, T. G. Drying Machinery and Practice.....	8vo,	*5 00
Marsh, C. F. Concise Treatise on Reinforced Concrete.....	8vo,	*2 50
Marsh, C. F., and Dunn, W. Reinforced Concrete.....	4to,	*5 00

Marsh, C. F., and Dunn, W. Manual of Reinforced Concrete and Concrete Block Construction	16mo, morocco,	*2 50
Massie, W. W., and Underhill, C. R. Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony.	12mo,	*1 00
Matheson, D. Australian Saw-Miller's Log and Timber Ready Reckoner.	12mo, leather,	1 50
Mathot, R. E. Internal Combustion Engines	8vo,	*6 00
Maurice, W. Electric Blasting Apparatus and Explosives	8vo,	*3 50
—— Shot Firer's Guide	8vo,	*1 50
Maxwell, J. C. Matter and Motion. (Science Series No. 36.)	16mo,	0 50
Maxwell, W. H., and Brown, J. T. Encyclopedia of Municipal and Sanitary Engineering	4to,	*10 00
Mayer, A. M. Lecture Notes on Physics	8vo,	2 00
McCullough, R. S. Mechanical Theory of Heat	8vo,	3 50
McIntosh, J. G. Technology of Sugar	8vo,	*4 50
—— Industrial Alcohol	8vo,	*3 00
—— Manufacture of Varnishes and Kindred Industries. Three Volumes.	8vo.	
Vol. I. Oil Crushing, Refining and Boiling		*3 50
Vol. II. Varnish Materials and Oil Varnish Making		*4 00
Vol. III.....	(In Preparation.)	
McKnight, J. D., and Brown, A. W. Marine Multitubular Boilers		*1 50
McMaster, J. B. Bridge and Tunnel Centres. (Science Series No. 20.)	16mo,	0 50
McMechen, F. L. Tests for Ores, Minerals and Metals	12mo,	*1 00
McNeill, B. McNeill's Code	8vo,	*6 00
McPherson, J. A. Water-works Distribution	8vo,	2 50
Melick, C. W. Dairy Laboratory Guide	12mo,	*1 25
Merck, E. Chemical Reagents; Their Purity and Tests	8vo,	*1 50
Merritt, Wm. H. Field Testing for Gold and Silver	16mo, leather,	1 50
Meyer, J. G. A., and Pecker, C. G. Mechanical Drawing and Machine Design	4to,	5 00
Michell, S. Mine Drainage	8vo,	10 00
Mierzinski, S. Waterproofing of Fabrics. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson	8vo,	*2 50
Miller, E. H. Quantitative Analysis for Mining Engineers	8vo,	*1 50
Miller, G. A. Determinants. (Science Series No. 105.)	16mo,	
Milroy, M. E. W. Home Lace-making	12mo,	*1 00
Minifie, W. Mechanical Drawing	8vo,	*4 00
Mitchell, C. A., and Prideaux, R. M. Fibres Used in Textile and Allied Industries	8vo,	
Modern Meteorology	12mo,	1 50
Monckton, C. C. F. Radiotelegraphy. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Monteverde, R. D. Vest Pocket Glossary of English-Spanish, Spanish-English Technical Terms	64mo, leather,	*1 00
Moore, E. C. S. New Tables for the Complete Solution of Ganguillet and Kutter's Formula	8vo,	*5 00
Moreing, C. A., and Neal, T. New General and Mining Telegraph Code	8vo,	*5 00
Morgan, A. P. Wireless Telegraph Apparatus for Amateurs	12mo,	*1 50
Moses, A. J. The Characters of Crystals	8vo,	*2 00
Moses, A. J., and Parsons, C. L. Elements of Mineralogy	8vo,	*2 50

Moss, S. A. Elements of Gas Engine Design. (Science Series No. 121.)	16mo,	0 50
— The Lay-out of Corliss Valve Gears. (Science Series No. 119.)	16mo,	0 50
Mullin, J. P. Modern Moulding and Pattern-making	12mo,	2 50
Munby, A. E. Chemistry and Physics of Building Materials. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Murphy, J. G. Practical Mining	16mo,	1 00
Murray, J. A. Soils and Manures. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Naquet, A. Legal Chemistry	12mo,	2 00
Nasmith, J. The Student's Cotton Spinning	8vo,	3 00
Neilson, R. M. Aeroplane Patents	8vo,	*2 00
Nerz, F. Searchlights. Trans. by C. Rodgers	8vo,	*3 00
Neuberger, H., and Noalhat, H. Technology of Petroleum. Trans. by J. G. McIntosh	8vo,	*10 00
Newall, J. W. Drawing, Sizing and Cutting Bevel-gears	8vo,	1 50
Newlands, J. Carpenters and Joiners' Assistant	folio, half morocco,	15 00
Nicol, G. Ship Construction and Calculations	8vo,	*4 50
Nipher, F. E. Theory of Magnetic Measurements	12mo,	1 00
Nisbet, H. Grammar of Textile Design	8vo,	*3 00
Nolan, H. The Telescope. (Science Series No. 51.)	16mo,	0 50
Noll, A. How to Wire Buildings	12mo,	1 50
Nugent, E. Treatise on Optics	12mo,	1 50
O'Connor, H. The Gas Engineer's Pocketbook	12mo, leather,	3 50
— Petrol Air Gas	12mo,	*0 75
Ohm, G. S., and Lockwood, T. D. Galvanic Circuit. Translated by William Francis. (Science Series No. 102.)	16mo,	0 50
Olsson, A. Motor Control, in Turret Turning and Gun Elevating. (U. S. Navy Electrical Series, No. 1.)	12mo, paper,	*0 50
Olsen, J. C. Text-book of Quantitative Chemical Analysis	8vo,	*4 00
Oudin, M. A. Standard Polyphase Apparatus and Systems	8vo,	*3 00
Palaz, A. Industrial Photometry. Trans. by G. W. Patterson, Jr.	8vo,	*4 00
Pamely, C. Colliery Manager's Handbook	8vo,	*10 00
Parr, G. D. A. Electrical Engineering Measuring Instruments	8vo,	*3 50
Parry, E. J. Chemistry of Essential Oils and Artificial Perfumes	8vo,	*5 00
Parry, E. J., and Coste, J. H. Chemistry of Pigments	8vo,	*4 50
Parry, L. A. Risk and Dangers of Various Occupations	8vo,	*3 00
Parshall, H. F., and Hobart, H. M. Armature Windings	4to,	*7 50
— Electric Railway Engineering	4to,	*10 00
Parshall, H. F., and Parry, E. Electrical Equipment of Tramways. (In Press.)		
Parsons, S. J. Malleable Cast Iron	8vo,	*2 50
Passmore, A. C. Technical Terms Used in Architecture	8vo,	*3 50
Patterson, D. The Color Printing of Carpet Yarns	8vo,	*3 50
— Color Matching on Textiles	8vo,	*3 00
— The Science of Color Mixing	8vo,	*3 00
Patton, H. B. Lecture Notes on Crystallography	8vo,	*1 25
Paulding, C. P. Condensation of Steam in Covered and Bare Pipes	8vo,	*2 00
— Transmission of Heat through Cold-storage Insulation	12mo,	*1 00
Peirce, B. System of Analytic Mechanics	4to,	10 00
Pendred, V. The Railway Locomotive. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Perkin, F. M. Practical Methods of Inorganic Chemistry	12mo,	*1 00

18 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Perrigo, O. E. Change Gear Devices.....	8vo,	1 00
Perrine, F. A. C. Conductors for Electrical Distribution.....	8vo,	*3 50
Petit, G. White Lead and Zinc White Paints.....	8vo,	*1 50
Petit, R. How to Build an Aeroplane. Trans. by T. O'B. Hubbard, and J. H. Ledeboer.....	8vo,	*1 50
Pettit, Lieut. J. S. Graphic Processes. (Science Series No. 76.)...	16mo,	0 50
Perry, J. Applied Mechanics.....	8vo,	*2 50
Philbrick, P. H. Beams and Girders. (Science Series No. 88.)...	16mo,	
Phillips, J. Engineering Chemistry.....	8vo,	*4 50
— Gold Assaying.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Dangerous Goods.....	8vo,	3 50
Phin, J. Seven Follies of Science.....	12mo,	*1 25
— Household Pests, and How to Get Rid of Them.....	8vo (<i>In Preparation.</i>)	
Pickworth, C. N. The Indicator Handbook. Two Volumes... 12mo, each,		1 50
— Logarithms for Beginners.....	12mo, boards,	0 50
— The Slide Rule.....	12mo,	1 00
Plane Table, The.....	8vo,	2 00
Plattner's Manual of Blow-pipe Analysis. Eighth Edition, revised. Trans. by H. B. Cornwall.....	8vo,	*4 00
Plympton, G. W. The Aneroid Barometer. (Science Series No. 35.)	16mo,	0 50
— How to become an Engineer. (Science Series No. 100.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Van Nostrand's Table Book. (Science Series No. 104.).....	16mo,	0 50
Pochet, M. L. Steam Injectors. Translated from the French. (Science Series No. 29.).....	16mo,	0 50
Pocket Logarithms to Four Places. (Science Series No. 65.).....	16mo,	0 50
	leather,	1 00
Pope, F. L. Modern Practice of the Electric Telegraph.....	8vo,	1 50
Poppewell, W. C. Elementary Treatise on Heat and Heat Engines. 12mo,		*3 00
— Prevention of Smoke.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Strength of Materials.....	8vo,	*1 75
Potter, T. Concrete.....	8vo,	*3 00
Practical Compounding of Oils, Tallow and Grease.....	8vo,	*3 50
Practical Iron Founding.....	12mo,	1 50
Pray, T., Jr. Twenty Years with the Indicator.....	8vo,	2 50
— Steam Tables and Engine Constant.....	8vo,	2 00
— Calorimeter Tables.....	8vo,	1 00
Preece, W. H. Electric Lamps..... (<i>In Press.</i>)		
Prelini, C. Earth and Rock Excavation.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Graphical Determination of Earth Slopes.....	8vo,	*2 00
— Tunneling.....	8vo,	3 00
— Dredging. A Practical Treatise..... (<i>In Press.</i>)		
Prescott, A. B. Organic Analysis.....	8vo,	5 00
Prescott, A. B., and Johnson, O. C. Qualitative Chemical Analysis... 8vo,		*3 50
Prescott, A. B., and Sullivan, E. C. First Book in Qualitative Chemistry. 12mo,		*1 50
Pritchard, O. G. The Manufacture of Electric-light Carbons. 8vo, paper,		*0 60
Prost, E. Chemical Analysis of Fuels, Ores, Metals. Trans. by J. C. Smith.....	8vo,	*4 50
Pullen, W. W. F. Application of Graphic Methods to the Design of Structures.....	12mo,	*2 50
— Injectors: Theory, Construction and Working.....	12mo,	*1 50

Pulsifer, W. H. Notes for a History of Lead.....	8vo,	4 00
Purchase, W. R. Masonry.....	12mo,	*3 00
Putsch, A. Gas and Coal-dust Firing.....	8vo,	*3 00
Pynchon, T. R. Introduction to Chemical Physics.....	8vo,	3 00
Rafter G. W. Mechanics of Ventilation. (Science Series No. 33.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Potable Water. (Science Series No. 103.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Treatment of Septic Sewage. (Science Series No. 118.).....	16mo,	0 50
Rafter, G. W., and Baker, M. N. Sewage Disposal in the United States.....	4to,	*6 00
Raikes, H. P. Sewage Disposal Works.....	8vo,	*4 00
Railway Shop Up-to-Date.....	4to,	2 00
Ramp, H. M. Foundry Practice.....	(In Press.)	
Randall, P. M. Quartz Operator's Handbook.....	12mo,	2 00
Randau, P. Enamels and Enamelling.....	8vo,	*4 00
Rankine, W. J. M. Applied Mechanics.....	8vo,	5 00
— Civil Engineering.....	8vo,	6 50
— Machinery and Millwork.....	8vo,	5 00
Rankine, W. J. M. The Steam-engine and Other Prime Movers.....	8vo,	5 00
— Useful Rules and Tables.....	8vo,	4 00
Rankine, W. J. M., and Bamber, E. F. A Mechanical Text-book.....	8vo,	3 50
Raphael, F. C. Localization of Faults in Electric Light and Power Mains.....	8vo,	*3 00
Rathbone, R. L. B. Simple Jewellery.....	8vo,	*2 00
Rateau, A. Flow of Steam through Nozzles and Orifices. Trans. by H. B. Brydon.....	8vo,	*1 50
Rausenberger, F. The Theory of the Recoil of Guns.....	8vo,	*4 50
Rautenstrauch, W. Notes on the Elements of Machine Design, 8vo, boards, Rautenstrauch, W., and Williams, J. T. Machine Drafting and Empirical Design.....	8vo,	*1 50
Part I. Machine Drafting.....	8vo,	*1 25
Part II. Empirical Design.....	(In Preparation.)	
Raymond, E. B. Alternating Current Engineering.....	12mo,	*2 50
Rayner, H. Silk Throwing and Waste Silk Spinning.....	8vo,	*2 50
Recipes for the Color, Paint, Varnish, Oil, Soap and Drysaltery Trades.....	8vo,	*3 50
Recipes for Flint Glass Making.....	12mo,	*4 50
Redwood, B. Petroleum. (Science Series No. 92.).....	16mo,	0 50
Reed's Engineers' Handbook.....	8vo,	*5 00
— Key to the Nineteenth Edition of Reed's Engineers' Handbook.....	8vo,	*3 00
— Useful Hints to Sea-going Engineers.....	12mo,	1 50
— Marine Boilers.....	12mo,	2 00
Reinhardt, C. W. Lettering for Draftsmen, Engineers, and Students.....		
— oblong 4to, boards.....		1 00
— The Technic of Mechanical Drafting.....	oblong 4to, boards,	*1 00
Reiser, F. Hardening and Tempering of Steel. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson.....	12mo,	*2 50
Reiser, N. Faults in the Manufacture of Woolen Goods. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson.....	8vo,	*2 50
— Spinning and Weaving Calculations.....	8vo,	*5 00
Renwick, W. G. Marble and Marble Working.....	8vo,	5 00
Reynolds, O., and Idell, F. E. Triple Expansion Engines. (Science Series No. 99.).....	16mo,	0 50

20 D VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Rhead, G. F. Simple Structural Woodwork.....	12mo,	*1 00
Rice, J. M., and Johnson, W. W. A New Method of Obtaining the Differential of Functions.....	12mo,	0 50
Richardson, J. The Modern Steam Engine.....	8vo,	*3 50
Richardson, S. S. Magnetism and Electricity.....	12mo,	*2 00
Rideal, S. Glue and Glue Testing.....	8vo,	*4 00
Rings, F. Concrete in Theory and Practice.....	12mo,	*2 50
Ripper, W. Course of Instruction in Machine Drawing.....	folio,	*6 00
Roberts, F. C. Figure of the Earth. (Science Series No. 79.)....	16mo,	0 50
Roberts, J., Jr. Laboratory Work in Electrical Engineering.....	8vo,	*2 00
Robertson, L. S. Water-tube Boilers.....	8vo,	3 00
Robinson, J. B. Architectural Composition.....	8vo,	*2 50
Robinson, S. W. Practical Treatise on the Teeth of Wheels. (Science Series No. 24.).....	16mo,	0 50
—— Railroad Economics. (Science Series No. 59.).....	16mo,	0 50
—— Wrought Iron Bridge Members. (Science Series No. 60.)....	16mo,	0 50
Roebbling, J. A. Long and Short Span Railway Bridges.....	folio,	25 00
Rogers, A. A Laboratory Guide of Industrial Chemistry.....	12mo,	*1 50
Rogers, A., and Aubert, A. B. Industrial Chemistry.....	(In Press.)	
Rogers, F. Magnetism of Iron Vessels. (Science Series No. 30.)..	16mo,	0 50
Rollins, W. Notes on X-Light.....	8vo,	*7 50
Rose, J. The Pattern-makers' Assistant.....	8vo,	2 50
—— Key to Engines and Engine-running.....	12mo,	2 50
Rose, T. K. The Precious Metals. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Rosenhain, W. Glass Manufacture. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Ross, W. A. Plowpipe in Chemistry and Metallurgy.....	12mo,	*2 00
Rossiter, J. T. Steam Engines. (Westminster Series.)...8vo	(In Press.)	
—— Pumps and Pumping Machinery. (Westminster Series.)..8vo	(In Press.)	
Roth. Physical Chemistry.....	8vo,	*2 00
Rouillion, L. The Economics of Manual Training.....	8vo,	2 00
Rowan, F. J. Practical Physics of the Modern Steam-boiler.....	8vo,	7 50
Rowan, F. J., and Idell, F. E. Boiler Incrustation and Corrosion. (Science Series No. 27.).....	16mo,	0 50
Roxburgh, W. General Foundry Practice.....	8vo,	*3 50
Ruhmer, E. Wireless Telephony. Trans. by J. Erskine-Murray...	8vo,	*3 50
Russell, A. Theory of Electric Cables and Networks.....	8vo,	*3 00
Sabine, R. History and Progress of the Electric Telegraph.....	12mo,	1 25
Saeltzer, A. Treatise on Acoustics.....	12mo,	1 00
Salomons, D. Electric Light Installations. 12mo.		
Vol. I. The Management of Accumulators.....		2 50
Vol. II. Apparatus.....		2 25
Vol. III. Applications.....		1 50
Sanford, P. G. Nitro-explosives.....	8vo,	*4 00
Saunders, C. H. Handbook of Practical Mechanics.....	16mo,	1 00
	leather,	1 25
Saunniier, C. Watchmaker's Handbook.....	12mo,	3 00
Sayers, H. M. Brakes for Tram Cars.....	8vo,	*1 25
Scheele, C. W. Chemical Essays.....	8vo,	*2 00
Schellen, H. Magneto-electric and Dynamo-electric Machines.....	8vo,	5 00
Scherer, R. Casein. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*3 00

Schmall, C. N. First Course in Analytic Geometry, Plane and Solid.	12mo, half leather,	*1 75
Schmall, C. N., and Shack, S. M. Elements of Plane Geometry . . .	12mo,	*1 25
Schmeer, L. Flow of Water	8vo,	*3 00
Schumann, F. A Manual of Heating and Ventilation	12mo, leather,	1 50
Schwarz, E. H. L. Causal Geology	8vo,	*2 50
Schweizer, V., Distillation of Resins	8vo,	*3 50
Scott, W. W. Qualitative Analysis. A Laboratory Manual	8vo,	*1 50
Scribner, J. M. Engineers' and Mechanics' Companion . . .	16mo, leather,	1 50
Searle, G. M. "Sumners' Method." Condensed and Improved. (Science Series No. 124.)	16mo,	0 50
Seaton, A. E. Manual of Marine Engineering	8vo,	6 00
Seaton, A. E., and Rounthwaite, H. M. Pocket-book of Marine Engineering	16mo, leather,	3 00
Seeligmann, T., Torrilhon, G. L., and Falconnet, H. India Rubber and Gutta Percha. Trans. by J. G. McIntosh	8vo,	*5 00
Seidell, A. Solubilities of Inorganic and Organic Substances	8vo,	*3 00
Sellew, W. H. Steel Rails	4to (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Senter, G. Outlines of Physical Chemistry	12mo,	*1 50
Sever, G. F. Electric Engineering Experiments	8vo, boards,	*1 00
Sever, G. F., and Townsend, F. Laboratory and Factory Tests in Electrical Engineering	8vo,	*2 50
Sewall, C. H. Wireless Telegraphy	8vo,	*2 00
— Lessons in Telegraphy	12mo,	*1 00
Sewell, T. Elements of Electrical Engineering	8vo,	*3 00
— The Construction of Dynamos	8vo,	*3 00
Sexton, A. H. Fuel and Refractory Materials	12mo,	*2 50
— Chemistry of the Materials of Engineering	12mo,	*2 50
— Alloys (Non-Ferrous)	8vo,	*3 00
— The Metallurgy of Iron and Steel	8vo,	*6 50
Seymour, A. Practical Lithography	8vo,	*2 50
— Modern Printing Inks	8vo,	*2 00
Shaw, Henry S. H. Mechanical Integrators. (Science Series No. 83.)	16mo,	0 50
Shaw, P. E. Course of Practical Magnetism and Electricity	8vo,	*1 00
Shaw, S. History of the Staffordshire Potteries	8vo,	*3 00
— Chemistry of Compounds Used in Porcelain Manufacture	8vo,	*5 00
Sheldon, S., and Hausmann, E. Direct Current Machines	8vo,	*2 50
Sheldon, S., Mason, H., and Hausmann, E. Alternating-current Machines	8vo,	*2 50
Sherer, R. Casein. Trans. by C. Salter	8vo,	*3 00
Sherriff, F. F. Oil Merchants' Manual	12mo,	*3 50
Shields, J. E. Notes on Engineering Construction	12mo,	1 50
Shock, W. H. Steam Boilers	4to, half morocco,	15 00
Shreve, S. H. Strength of Bridges and Roofs	8vo,	3 50
Shunk, W. F. The Field Engineer	12mo, morocco,	2 50
Simmons, W. H., and Appleton, H. A. Handbook of Soap Manufacture	8vo,	*3 00
Simms, F. W. The Principles and Practice of Leveling	8vo,	2 00
— Practical Tunneling	8vo,	7 50
Simpson, G. The Naval Constructor	12mo, morocco,	*5 50

Sinclair, A. Development of the Locomotive Engine . . .	8vo, half leather,	5 00
Sindall, R. W. Manufacture of Paper. (Westminster Series.) . . .	8vo,	*2 00
Sloane, T. O'C. Elementary Electrical Calculations.	12mo,	*2 00
Smith, C. F. Practical Alternating Currents and Testing.	8vo,	*2 50
— Practical Testing of Dynamos and Motors.	8vo,	*2 00
Smith, F. E. Handbook of General Instruction for Mechanics . . .	12mo,	1 50
Smith, I. W. The Theory of Deflections and of Latitudes and Departures.	16mo, morocco,	3 00
Smith, J. C. Manufacture of Paint.	8vo,	*3 00
Smith, W. Chemistry of Hat Manufacturing.	12mo,	*3 00
Snell, A. T. Electric Motive Power.	8vo,	*4 00
Snow, W. G. Pocketbook of Steam Heating and Ventilation. (<i>In Press.</i>)		
Snow, W. G., and Nolan, T. Ventilation of Buildings. (Science Series No. 5.)	16mo,	0 50
Soddy, F. Radioactivity.	8vo,	*3 00
Solomon, M. Electric Lamps. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Sothorn, J. W. The Marine Steam Turbine.	8vo,	*5 00
Soxhlet, D. H. Dyeing and Staining Marble. Trans. by A. Morris and H. Robson.	8vo,	*2 50
Spang, H. W. A Practical Treatise on Lightning Protection. . . .	12mo,	1 00
Spangenburg, L. Fatigue of Metals. Translated by S. H. Shreve. (Science Series No. 23.)	16mo,	0 50
Specht, G. J., Hardy, A. S., McMaster, J. B., and Walling. Topographical Surveying. (Science Series No. 72.)	16mo,	0 50
Speyers, C. L. Text-book of Physical Chemistry.	8vo,	*2 25
Stahl, A. W. Transmission of Power. (Science Series No. 28.) . .	16mo,	
Stahl, A. W., and Woods, A. T. Elementary Mechanism	12mo,	*2 00
Staley, C., and Pierson, G. S. The Separate System of Sewerage . .	8vo,	*3 00
Standage, H. C. Leatherworkers' Manual.	8vo,	*3 50
— Sealing Waxes, Wafers, and Other Adhesives.	8vo,	*2 00
— Agglutinants of all Kinds for all Purposes.	12mo,	*3 50
Stansbie, J. H. Iron and Steel. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Stevens, H. P. Paper Mill Chemist.	16mo,	*2 50
Stevenson, J. L. Blast-Furnace Calculations.	12mo, leather,	*2 00
Stewart, A. Modern Polyphase Machinery.	12mo,	*2 00
Stewart, G. Modern Steam Traps.	12mo,	*1 25
Stiles, A. Tables for Field Engineers.	12mo,	1 00
Stillman, P. Steam-engine Indicator.	12mo,	1 00
Stodola, A. Steam Turbines. Trans. by L. C. Loewenstein.	8vo,	*5 00
Stone, H. The Timbers of Commerce.	8vo,	3 50
Stone, Gen. R. New Roads and Road Laws.	12mo,	1 00
Stopes, M. Ancient Plants.	8vo,	*2 00
— The Study of Plant Life	8vo (<i>In Press.</i>)	
Sudborough, J. J., and James, T. C. Practical Organic Chemistry .	12mo,	*2 00
Suffling, E. R. Treatise on the Art of Glass Painting.	8vo,	*3 50
Swan, K. Patents, Designs and Trade Marks. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Sweet, S. H. Special Report on Coal.	8vo,	3 00
Swinburne, J., Wordingham, C. H., and Martin, T. C. Electric Currents. (Science Series No. 109.)	16mo,	0 50
Swoope, C. W. Practical Lessons in Electricity.	12mo,	*2 00

Tailfer, L. Bleaching Linen and Cotton Yarn and Fabrics.....	8vo,	*5 00
Tate, J. S. Surcharged and Different Forms of Retaining-walls. (Science Series No. 7.).....	16mo,	
Templeton, W. Practical Mechanic's Workshop Companion.	12mo, morocco,	2 00
Terry, H. L. India Rubber and its Manufacture. (Westminster Series.)	8vo,	*2 00
Thom, C., and Jones, W. H. Telegraphic Connections.....	oblong 12mo,	1 50
Thomas, C. W. Paper-makers' Handbook.....	(In Press.)	
Thompson, A. B. Oil Fields of Russia.....	4to,	*7 50
—— Petroleum Mining and Oil Field Development.....	8vo,	*5 00
Thompson, E. P. How to Make Inventions.....	8vo,	0 50
Thompson, S. P. Dynamo Electric Machines. (Science Series No. 75.)	16mo,	0 50
Thompson, W. P. Handbook of Patent Law of All Countries.....	16mo,	1 50
Thornley, T. Cotton Combing Machines.....	8vo,	*3 00
—— Cotton Spinning. 8vo.		
First Year.....		*1 50
Second Year.....		*2 50
Third Year.....		*2 50
Thurso, J. W. Modern Turbine Practice.....	8vo,	*4 00
Tidy, C. Meymott. Treatment of Sewage. (Science Series No. 94.)	16mo,	0 50
Tinney, W. H. Gold-mining Machinery.....	8vo,	*5 00
Titherley, A. W. Laboratory Course of Organic Chemistry.....	8vo,	*2 00
Toch, M. Chemistry and Technology of Mixed Paints.....	8vo,	*3 00
—— Pigments and Artistic Painting.....	12mo (In Press.)	
Todd, J., and Whall, W. B. Practical Seamanship.....	8vo,	*7 50
Tonge, J. Coal. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,	*2 00
Townsend, F. Alternating Current Engineering.....	8vo, boards	*0 75
Townsend, J. Ionization of Gases by Collision.....	8vo,	*1 75
Transactions of the American Institute of Chemical Engineers. 8vo.		
Vol. I. 1908.....		*6 00
Vol. II. 1909.....		*6 00
Traverse Tables. (Science Series No. 115.).....	16mo,	0 50
	morocco,	1 00
Trinks, W., and Housum, C. Shaft Governors. (Science Series No. 122.)	16mo,	0 50
Trowbridge, W. P. Turbine Wheels. (Science Series No. 44.).....	16mo,	0 50
Tucker, J. H. A Manual of Sugar Analysis.....	8vo,	3 50
Tumlirz, O. Potential. Trans. by D. Robertson.....	12mo,	1 25
Tunner, P. A. Treatise on Roll-turning. Trans. by J. B. Pearse.	8vo, text and folio atlas,	10 00
Turbayne, A. A. Alphabets and Numerals.....	4to,	2 00
Turnbull, Jr., J., and Robinson, S. W. A Treatise on the Compound Steam-engine, (Science Series No. 8.).....	16mo,	
Turrill, S. M. Elementary Course in Perspective.....	12mo,	*1 25
Underhill, C. R. Solenoids, Electromagnets and Electromagnetic Windings.....	12mo,	*2 00
Urquhart, J. W. Electric Light Fitting.....	12mo,	2 00
—— Electro-plating.....	12mo,	2 00

24 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Urquhart, J. W. Electrotyping.....	12mo,	2 00
— Electric Ship Lighting.....	12mo,	3 00
Universal Telegraph Cipher Code.....	12mo,	1 00
Vacher, F. Food Inspector's Handbook.....	12mo,	*2 50
Van Nostrand's Chemical Annual. Second issue 1909.....	12mo,	*2 50
— Year Book of Mechanical Engineering Data. First issue 1911.....	(In Press.)	
Van Wagenen, T. F. Manual of Hydraulic Mining.....	16mo,	1 00
Vega, Baron Von. Logarithmic Tables.....	8vo, half morocco,	2 50
Villon, A. M. Practical Treatise on the Leather Industry. Trans. by F. T. Addyman.....	8vo,	*10 00
Vincent, C. Ammonia and its Compounds. Trans. by M. J. Salter.....	8vo,	*2 00
Volk, C. Haulage and Winding Appliances.....	8vo,	*4 00
Von Georgievics, G. Chemical Technology of Textile Fibres. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 50
— Chemistry of Dyestuffs. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 50
Vose, G. L. Graphic Method for Solving Certain Questions in Arithmetic and Algebra. (Science Series No. 16.).....	16mo,	0 50
Wabner, R. Ventilation in Mines. Trans. by C. Salter.....	8vo,	*4 50
Wade, E. J. Secondary Batteries.....	8vo,	*4 00
Wadsworth, C. Primary Battery Ignition.....	12mo (In Press.)	
Wagner, E. Preserving Fruits, Vegetables, and Meat.....	12mo,	*2 50
Walker, F. Aerial Navigation.....	8vo,	2 00
— Dynamo Building. (Science Series No. 98.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Electric Lighting for Marine Engineers.....	8vo,	2 00
Walker, S. F. Steam Boilers, Engines and Turbines.....	8vo,	3 00
— Refrigeration, Heating and Ventilation on Shipboard.....	12mo (In Press.)	
— Electricity in Mining.....	8vo,	*3 50
— Steam Boilers, Engines and Turbines.....	8vo,	*3 00
Walker, W. H. Screw Propulsion.....	8vo,	0 75
Wallis-Taylor, A. J. Bearings and Lubrication.....	8vo,	*1 50
— Modern Cycles.....	8vo,	4 00
— Motor Cars.....	8vo,	1 80
— Motor Vehicles for Business Purposes.....	8vo,	3 50
— Pocket Book of Refrigeration and Ice Making.....	12mo,	1 50
— Refrigerating and Ice-making Machinery.....	8vo,	3 00
— Refrigeration and Cold Storage.....	8vo,	*4 50
— Sugar Machinery.....	12mo,	*2 00
Wanklyn, J. A. Treatise on the Examination of Milk.....	12mo,	1 00
— Water Analysis.....	12mo,	2 00
Wansbrough, W. D. The A B C of the Differential Calculus.....	12mo,	*1 50
— Slide Valves.....	12mo,	*2 00
Ward, J. H. Steam for the Million.....	8vo,	1 00
Waring, Jr., G. E. Sanitary Conditions. (Science Series No. 31.).....	16mo,	0 50
— Sewerage and Land Drainage.....		*6 00
— Modern Methods of Sewage Disposal.....	12mo,	2 00
— How to Drain a House.....	12mo,	1 25
Warren, F. D. Handbook on Reinforced Concrete.....	12mo,	*2 50

Watkins, A. Photography. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo	(In Press.)	
Watson, E. P. Small Engines and Boilers.....	12mo,		1 25
Watt, A. Electro-plating and Electro-refining of Metals.....	8vo,		*4 50
— Electro-metallurgy.....	12mo,		1 00
— The Art of Soap-making.....	8vo,		3 00
— Leather Manufacture.....	8vo,		*4 00
— Paper-Making.....	8vo,		3 00
Weale, J. Dictionary of Terms Used in Architecture.....	12mo,		2 50
Weale's Scientific and Technical Series. (Complete list sent on applica- tion.)			
Weather and Weather Instruments.....	12mo,		1 00
	paper,		0 50
Webb, H. L. Guide to the Testing of Insulated Wires and Cables.....	12mo,		1 00
Webber, W. H. Y. Town Gas. (Westminster Series.).....	8vo,		*2 00
Weekes, R. W. The Design of Alternate Current Transformers.....	12mo,		1 00
Weisbach, J. A Manual of Theoretical Mechanics.....	8vo,		*6 00
	sheep,		*7 50
Weisbach, J., and Herrmann, G. Mechanics of Air Machinery.....	8vo,		*3 75
Weston, E. B. Loss of Head Due to Friction of Water in Pipes.....	12mo,		*1 50
Weymouth, F. M. Drum Armatures and Commutators.....	8vo,		*3 00
Wheeler, J. B. Art of War.....	12mo,		1 75
— Field Fortifications.....	12mo,		1 75
Whipple, S. An Elementary and Practical Treatise on Bridge Building. 8vo,			3 00
Whithard, P. Illuminating and Missal Painting.....	12mo,		1 50
Wilcox, R. M. Cantilever Bridges. (Science Series No. 25.).....	16mo,		0 50
Wilkinson, H. D. Submarine Cable Laying and Repairing.....	8vo,		*6 00
Williams, A. D., Jr., and Hutchinson, R. W. The Steam Turbine.....	(In Press.)		
Williamson, R. S. On the Use of the Barometer.....	4to,		15 00
— Practical Tables in Meteorology and Hypsometry.....	4to,		2 50
Willson, F. N. Theoretical and Practical Graphics.....	4to,		*4 00
Wimperis, H. E. Internal Combustion Engine.....	8vo,		*3 00
Winchell, N. H., and A. N. Elements of Optical Mineralogy.....	8vo,		*3 50
Winkler, C., and Lunge, G. Handbook of Technical Gas-Analysis.....	8vo,		4 00
Winslow, A. Stadia Surveying. (Science Series No. 77.).....	16mo,		0 50
Wisser, Lieut. J. P. Explosive Materials. (Science Series No. 70.) 16mo,			0 50
— Modern Gun Cotton. (Science Series No. 89.).....	16mo,		0 50
Wood, De V. Luminiferous Aether. (Science Series No. 85.).....	16mo,		0 50
Woodbury, D. V. Elements of Stability in the Well-proportioned Arch. 8vo, half morocco,			4 00
Worden, E. C. The Nitrocellulose Industry. Two Volumes. 8vo (In Press.)			
Wright, A. C. Analysis of Oils and Allied Substances.....	8vo,		*3 50
— Simple Method for Testing Painters' Materials.....	8vo,		*2 50
Wright, H. E. Handy Book for Brewers.....	8vo,		*5 00
Wright, F. W. Design of a Condensing Plant.....	12mo,		*1 50
Wright, T. W. Elements of Mechanics.....	8vo,		*2 50
Wright, T. W., and Hayford, J. F. Adjustment of Observations.....	8vo,		*3 00
Young, J. E. Electrical Testing for Telegraph Engineers.....	8vo,		*4 00

26 D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY'S SHORT TITLE CATALOG

Zahner, R. Transmission of Power. (Science Series No. 40.)	16mo,	
Zeidler, J., and Lustgarten, J. Electric Arc Lamps.	8vo,	*2 00
Zeuner, A. Technical Thermodynamics. Trans. by J. F. Klein. Two		
Volumes.	8vo,	*8 00
Zimmer, G. F. Mechanical Handling of Material.	4to,	*10 00
Zipser, J. Textile Raw Materials. Trans. by C. Salter.	8vo,	*5 00
Zur Nedden, F. Engineering Workshop Machines and Processes. Trans.		
by J. A. Davenport.	8vo	*2 00

FOSTER

ELECTRICAL

Completely Revised

ENGINEER'S

and Enlarged

POCKET BOOK

Pages 1600 pp. 1128 Ill. 718 Tables

Foster's Pocketbook is the busy engineer's first assistant. When he wants really reliable information, he turns to **Foster** to get it for him, and he gets it. **Foster** places before him data on the latest and best practice in electrical

engineering with a minimum expenditure of time and effort.

The material in **Foster** is logically arranged and is indexed in a full table of contents and a voluminous index that alone covers sixty pages, and to this is added a set of patent thumb index tabs that make reference to any section of the book practically instantaneous. The index is most thorough and reliable. It points right to the spot where the information sought is.

If you ever need information on electricity, you ought to have a copy of the new Sixth Edition, completely revised and enlarged, with *four-fifths* of the old matter replaced by new, up-to-date material, and containing all the excellent features named above, with 1,636 pages, 1,128 illustrations and 718 tables. The price is **\$5.00.**

CIVIL ENGINEERS' POCKETBOOK

Nearly
Ready

By ALBERT I. FRYE, M. Am. Soc. C. E.

A COMPREHENSIVE treatment of Civil Engineering, in seventy sections, comprising about 1,400 pages; with 500 tables and 1,000 illustrations. Also a complete glossary of engineering terms.

Each main subject receives economic consideration and analysis, and is reinforced with excerpts from, and references to the most important cost and other data in our leading technical publications—including hundreds of illustrations of up-to-date engineering structures and details.

"How to design engineering structures economically" has received careful study in the preparation of this work. The fundamental principles laid down can be followed readily by every young engineer, and carried to practical completion in the finished structure.

Most of the tables are new and have been prepared regardless of time and expense. Many of them have been arranged in a novel manner which will appeal especially to engineers; and all have been carefully checked and rechecked to eliminate the possibility of errors.

Graphical methods have been illustrated freely throughout the work, in connection with analytical solutions.

Methods and cost of work have received special attention; and, thus, there is crowded into the 1,400 pages of text, in small type and in pocketbook form, a vast amount of engineering data, formulas and tables, that will be found absolutely indispensable to every engineer, contractor and student.

D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY, Publishers
23 Murray and 27 Warren Sts., NEW YORK

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

FEB 10 1915

SEP 10 1915

~~MAY 1 1916~~

MAY 1 1916

FEB 18 1917

FEB 19 1923

MAR 6 1923

6 JUL '63 DC

REC'D LD

JUL 5 1963

Due end of SPRING Quarter
subject to recall after —

MAY 7 '73

REC'D LD JUN 13 73-2PM 82

30m-6, '14

YC 13088

for the w
350 new

TF615 287912
L5. h ewes

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

